



***Diseases of  
Seawater Netpen-Reared  
Salmonid Fishes***

Dr. Michael L. Kent • Dr. Trygve T. Poppe



Fisheries  
and Oceans

Pêches  
et Océans

Canada

---

2000-10-01 09:00:00

# DISEASES OF SEAWATER NETPEN-REARED SALMONID FISHES

Michael L. Kent  
Department of Fisheries and Oceans  
Biological Sciences Branch  
Pacific Biological Station  
Nanaimo, British Columbia V9R 5K6  
Canada

and

Trygve T. Poppe  
Department of Morphology, Genetics and Aquatic Biology  
Norwegian College of Veterinary Medicine  
P.O. Box 8196 Dep., N-0033 Oslo, Norway



---

**Canadian Cataloguing in Publication Data**

Kent, Michael L.

Diseases of seawater netpen-reared salmonid fishes

Includes bibliographical references and index

ISBN 0-920225-10-1

1. Salmon-Diseases. 2. Fish-culture. I. Poppe, Trygve T.,  
1949- II. Pacific Biological Station. III Title.

SH179.S28K46 1998 639.9'7756 C98-911071-0

Design, layout and printing:

Quadra Printers Ltd.

Nanaimo, B.C. Canada

---

---

# FORWARD

In 1992 one of us (M.K.) published "Diseases of seawater netpen-reared salmonid fishes in the Pacific Northwest." Since this publication, there have been tremendous advances in fish health, particularly in the fields of diagnostics and vaccinology. Furthermore, with the continued growth of salmonid netpen aquaculture in the 1990's, several new (previously unrecognized) diseases have been reported. In this edition, we update the original manual and expand the text to encompass diseases of importance in salmonid seawater netpen culture in general. To accomplish this endeavour, Dr. T.T. Poppe has joined Dr. Kent as a co-author. In addition, we have elicited the expertise of other internationally recognized experts.

We thank the staff of the Fish Health, Parasitology and Genetics Section at the Pacific Biological Station for their assistance with the preparation of this manual. The staff of the Fish Pathology program (Dorothee Kieser, Carl Westby and Karen Mullen) provided a lot of the material that is included in this manual. We also thank Tom McDonald and David Whitaker for providing parasite material, Drs. Leo Margolis, Trevor Evelyn and David Speare (Atlantic Veterinary College, P.E.I., Canada) for review of the manuscript, John Bagshaw and Sheila Dawe for histological preparations, Jon Richard and Chris Whipps with assistance with field collections, and Pat Baglo for assistance with preparation of the manuscript. Sheila Dawe and David Whitaker also provided valuable assistance with the production of illustrations. Special thanks to Dr. Bob Devlin, at our West Vancouver Laboratory. Bob and his group were fundamental in the development of several PCR based diagnostic tests for parasites described in this text.

We thank the veterinarians and other fish health professionals in British Columbia and Washington State for providing material and information that was very helpful for preparing this manual. Most of the material from Washington State was obtained with the assistance of Drs. Ralph Elston and Lee Harrell. In British Columbia, Drs. Mike Beattie, Jim Brackett, Brad Hicks, Sonja Saksida, and Mark Sheppard provided assistance with obtaining material from netpens. We also thank Dr. Craig Stephen for preparing many of the line drawings in the text.

Thanks are also due the many fish farmers in the Pacific Northwest for their assistance and co-operation. Special thanks to Ian Bruce, Jon Carter, Tim Rundle, Bill Vernon, and Myron Roth for their help with material after the publication of the first version of this manual. We also thank Greg Bonicher, Johnny Ellis, David Groves, Mark Lennox, Richard Parker, Kenny Schordine, and Bjorn Skei for their assistance with our research projects and for providing material used in the manual from 1988-1992. The cover photograph was provided by Rick Heinz. Special thanks to Cindy Kent for editorial assistance.

We are particularly indebted to Dr. Leo Margolis, who passed away on 13 January 1997. He provided invaluable editorial and parasitology guidance for this manual.

We also thank our international collaborators, who provided invaluable hands-on experience with specific problems in their respective countries: Drs. P. Bustos, P. Entrala, I. Inostoza (Chile); J. Winton, J. Morrison, and C. Smith (United States); T. Awakura, T. Kimura, K. Nagasawa, S. Urawa, and H. Yokoyama (Japan); B. Munday (Australia).

M.L. Kent  
T.T. Poppe

---

Contributors: T. P.T. Evelyn, Leo Margolis, and G.S. Traxler, J.N.C. Whyte, Aquaculture Division, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo, B.C.; J. Brackett, Syndel Laboratories, Vancouver, B.C.; G. Karreman, CASH Program, Victoria, B.C., C. Stephen, Centre for Coastal Health, Malaspina University College, Nanaimo, B.C.

---

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1	
Introduction - M.L. Kent.....	1
Fish Health in Netpens - General Considerations.....	1
CHAPTER 2	
Outbreak Investigations in Netpens - C. Stephen.....	3
CHAPTER 3	
Necropsy Protocols - M.L. Kent.....	6
CHAPTER 4	
Disease Treatment in Netpen Aquaculture	
J. Brackett, G. Karreman.....	9
CHAPTER 5	
Bacterial Diseases - T.P.T. Evelyn, M.L. Kent, T.T. Poppe.....	17
Bacterial Kidney Disease.....	17
Typical Vibriosis.....	23
Coldwater Vibriosis.....	25
Winter Ulcers.....	26
Furunculosis.....	27
Yersiniosis.....	28
Myxobacteriosis.....	29
Salmonid Rickettsial Septicemia.....	31
Epitheliocystis.....	34
CHAPTER 6	
Viral Diseases - G.S. Traxler, M.L. Kent, T.T. Poppe.....	36
Infectious Hematopoietic Necrosis.....	36
Infectious Pancreatic Necrosis.....	38
Salmon Pancreas Disease.....	40
Infectious Salmon Anaemia.....	40
Hemorrhagic Kidney Disease.....	42
Viral Erythrocytic Necrosis.....	42
Erythrocytic Inclusion Body Syndrome.....	44
Salmonid Herpes Virus 2 Infections.....	45
CHAPTER 7	
Fungi and Related Organisms - M.L. Kent, T.T. Poppe.....	46
Rosette Agent.....	46
<i>Ichthyophonus</i> .....	46
Systemic Mycosis ( <i>Exophiala</i> spp.).....	48

CHAPTER 8	
Protozoa and Myxozoa - M.L. Kent .....	49
Gill Amoebiasis ( <i>Paramoeba pemaquidensis</i> ) .....	51
Flagellates .....	52
Diplomonad flagellates.....	52
<i>Ichthyobodo</i> (= <i>Costia</i> ) gill infections .....	53
Cryptobiosis.....	55
Ciliates - Trichodinids .....	55
Myxosporeans.....	56
Fumagillin.....	57
<i>Parvicapsula</i> sp. ....	58
<i>Kudoa thyrsites</i> .....	59
<i>Myxobolus</i> species .....	60
<i>Chloromyxum truttae</i> .....	61
Nervous Mortality Syndrome.....	62
Microsporidians .....	62
<i>Loma salmonae</i> .....	62
<i>Nucleospora</i> ( <i>Enterocytozoon</i> ) <i>salmonis</i> .....	65
<i>Microsporidium cerebralis</i> .....	67
CHAPTER 9	
Helminth and Molluscan Parasites - M.L. Kent, L. Margolis.....	68
Cestodes (tapeworms) .....	68
<i>Eubothrium</i> spp. ....	69
<i>Gilquinia squali</i> .....	70
Digenean Metacercariae .....	72
Black grub ( <i>Neascus</i> ) .....	73
Black spot ( <i>Cryptocotyle</i> ).....	74
<i>Diplostomum</i> -eye fluke .....	74
<i>Stephanostomum</i> heart infections.....	75
Monogeneans ( <i>Laminiscus strelkowi</i> and <i>Gyrodactyloides bychowskii</i> ) .....	75
Nematodes .....	76
<i>Hysterothylacium</i> .....	77
Larval <i>Anisakis</i> .....	77
Acanthocephala ( <i>Echinorhynchus</i> and <i>Pomphorhynchus</i> ).....	79
Mussel Larvae.....	79
CHAPTER 10	
Crustacean Parasites - S.C. Johnson .....	80
Family Caligidae (Sea Lice) .....	80
Family Ergasilidae .....	87
Family Pennillidae ( <i>Haemobaphes</i> ) .....	88
Isopods ( <i>Ceratothoa</i> , etc.).....	88
Branchiurans ( <i>Argulus</i> ).....	90

## Table of Contents

---

CHAPTER 11	
Harmful Algal Blooms - J.N.C. Whyte, M.L. Kent .....	91
<i>Heterosigma carterae</i> ( <i>akashiwo</i> ) .....	93
<i>Chaetoceros</i> and <i>Corethron</i> spp .....	95
Miscellaneous algae ( <i>Leptocylindrus</i> , <i>Chrysochromulina</i> , <i>Skeletonema</i> , <i>Thalassiosira</i> , <i>Gyrodinium</i> , <i>Prymnesium</i> , <i>Prorocentrum</i> , <i>Alexandrium</i> , <i>Dictyocha</i> ) ....	96
CHAPTER 12	
Idiopathic and Non-Infectious Diseases - M.L. Kent, T.T. Poppe .....	98
Heart Diseases (Cardiomyopathy Syndrome, Coronary Arteriosclerosis, Malformations of the Heart).....	98
Skeletal Deformations .....	100
Cataracts .....	102
Post-Vaccination Peritonitis.....	102
Netpen Liver Disease .....	104
Water Belly (Bloat).....	105
CHAPTER 13	
Neoplastic Diseases and Related Disorders - M.L. Kent .....	106
Plasmacytoid Leukemia.....	106
Lymphosarcoma and Lymphomas.....	110
Swimbladder Sarcoma.....	112
Hepatocellular Carcinoma .....	112
Epidermal Papillomatosis .....	113
Appendix I - Glossary.....	114
Appendix II - Scientific Names of Fishes .....	117
Appendix III - Preservatives and Culture Media .....	118
References.....	119
Index of Diseases and Pathogens .....	136

---

# INTRODUCTION

M.L. Kent

Culture of salmonid fishes in seawater netpens is rapidly expanding at several locations throughout the world. In the past, most research on diseases of salmonids has been directed towards those affecting fish during their freshwater phase of development. With the phenomenal increase in seawater netpen aquaculture in the past 10 years or so, several apparently new marine diseases of salmonid fishes have been recognized. Described here are important diseases and pathogens of salmonid fishes reared in seawater netpens. This text does not address diseases of specific importance in freshwater netpens, and henceforth "netpens" or "pen-reared" denotes seawater netpens. This manual is intended primarily for workers at the netpen sites and field laboratories. Therefore, diagnostic characteristics of each disease that can be obtained by macroscopic observation, simple stains or wet mount preparations are emphasized. Information on more involved laboratory diagnostic techniques that may be required for confirmatory diagnosis are also included. In addition, descriptions of histopathological changes are included to provide an understanding of the pathogenesis of specific diseases. It is expected that the manual will be used mostly by those with basic training in microbiology, parasitology, pathology, and fish health. However, we hope that aquaculturists in general will also make use of the manual, and a glossary is provided in the appendix to familiarize fish farmers with some of the technical terminology used in fish health. Preservative and media formulations, and scientific names of fishes referred to in the text are also listed in the appendix.

An abbreviated description of methods for conducting a disease investigation and a basic necropsy protocol are included. This manual is not intended to be a complete laboratory manual and more detailed descriptions of principles for diagnostics can be obtained in basic fish disease texts (e.g., Kabata 1985; Post 1987; Roberts 1989; Stoskopf 1993; Noga 1995; Bruno and Poppe 1996). Information obtained in the field may be adequate for only presumptive diagnosis, and more in-depth laboratory investigations are often required for positive diagnosis of certain diseases. Therefore, methods for preservation and transport of specimens to a laboratory for further microbiological, histopathological, and chemical examinations are included.

Control of diseases is very important to the economic viability of netpen fish farms, and for each specific disease we

provide information on control and treatment. In addition, Drs. Brackett and Karreman (Chapter 4) present an overview of chemotherapy and vaccines for netpens. Dr. Stephen provides a review of outbreak investigations (Chapter 2). It is hoped that this manual will help fish health practitioners and fish farmers identify diseases in pen-reared salmon, and that in doing so it will provide a sound basis for implementing appropriate control and treatment procedures.

## Fish Health in Netpens - General Considerations

Rearing fish in netpens may be economically expedient because of the relatively low construction costs involved. Also, there is no need for pumping water. However, this form of aquaculture may allow for the exacerbation of certain diseases and presents some unique fish health problems. With uncontrolled exchange of water in netpens, there is the potential for introduction of pathogens, pollution, and noxious algae. Certain pathogens, such as external parasites, are often only a minor problem in hatcheries or ponds because, in most cases, they are quickly eliminated with externally applied therapeutic agents. In contrast, these pathogens can be devastating in netpens because it is extremely difficult to apply and maintain appropriate levels of bath-administered drugs in this situation. For example, external parasitic copepods are one of the most serious problems for pen-reared Atlantic salmon.

Fish in netpens will often feed on naturally-occurring food organisms. These organisms may not normally be eaten by the fish and, when eaten, may result in unusual parasite infections (e.g., metacestodes of *Gilquinia squali* - see page 71). In addition, netpen liver disease (page 104) is apparently caused by feeding on naturally occurring netpen biota.

Although several causes of disease in pen-reared salmonids have been identified, there are few drugs available for their treatment. Therefore, most diseases are controlled by changing husbandry practices that avoid infections or improve the overall health status of the fish. In addition, there are now available vaccines that are very effective for controlling Gram negative bacterial infections. Many important diseases in netpens originate in fresh water (e.g., furunculosis and bacterial kidney disease). Often the best way to control these diseases is to identify fish in fresh water that have subclinical infections and to avoid their introduction into netpens.

Early detection of a disease may be more difficult in netpens

## Introduction

---

than in land-based systems because water visibility is often reduced in the former. Often when a disease problem is recognized by the fish farmer, the disease has advanced to a stage where, even with immediate action, high mortality is unavoidable. In netpens, it may be difficult to detect subtle external lesions on fish or behavioral changes indicative of the onset of disease. Furthermore, moribund or dead fish that accumulate at the bottom of nets may not be detected until they are collected by divers or until the nets are raised. Added to these problems, a certain low-level of mortality is often considered acceptable by some fish farmers; these losses are classified as "natural mortality" and are often ignored. Fish in this category should, however, be examined because catastrophic disease outbreaks can usually only be avoided by early detection of a problem, and these fish sometimes represent the incipient stages of a serious disease. Frequent and consistent examination of "morts" and complete record keeping of mortalities in each stock is essential for preventing disease problems.

When an organism is cultured in a new geographic area it is often subject to diseases that do not affect the indigenous species. The Atlantic salmon is a very desirable species for netpen culture. Because this fish is not native to the Pacific Northwest, it may lack innate resistance to certain indigenous disease agents, to which Pacific salmon are resistant. There are already examples of this phenomenon; Kent et al. (1988b) described a toxic liver disease to which Atlantic salmon are more susceptible than Pacific salmon (see page 104), and a parasitic copepod, *Haemobaphes disphaerocephalus*, was found on pen-reared Atlantic salmon (Kent et al. 1997). This copepod normally infects eulachon in the Pacific Northwest, but has never been observed on Pacific salmon species.

Often previously unrecognized diseases are observed when an organism is reared under new environmental conditions. The rearing of salmonids in netpens is a relatively recent form of aquaculture. It is, therefore, not a surprise that in the past 10 years many "new" diseases have been documented in pen-reared salmon, and it is very likely that more diseases will be observed. Some of these diseases are caused by pathogens that were first recognized in netpens, then were later found to occur in wild or freshwater-reared fish (e.g., the rosette agent and the microsporean *Nucleospora salmonis*). However, the majority of diseases afflicting pen-reared salmon are caused by organisms that were first documented in wild fish or freshwater culture situations (e.g., *Renibacterium salmoninarum* and the IHN virus). A third category includes previously known pathogens, but which appear to be less pathogenic in fresh water or in wild salmon (e.g., *Loma salmonae*). The high

likelihood of encountering an unreported disease in the netpen situation is a problem for the diagnostician because he/she cannot always rely on published references or past experience for making quick disease diagnosis.

# OUTBREAK INVESTIGATIONS IN NETPENS

C. Stephen

The goal of a field investigation is to identify factors that can be manipulated to reduce the prevalence of disease. The occurrence of disease in a group of fish is rarely the result of a single factor and rarely has a simple solution. This is due to the multifactorial nature of disease in which host, agent and environmental factors must interact for a disease to occur. This is true even for infectious diseases where the presence of the infectious agent is often insufficient to result in disease. Experience with terrestrial species has shown that differences in the amount of disease between populations generally do not reflect microbiological difference between groups, but can instead be attributed to differences in host and management conditions (Hancock and Wilkes 1988). The objective of a field investigation is to identify and remove or control the factors that are responsible for the disease. To meet this objective, one must be prepared to conduct a comprehensive review of the pathological, environmental, management and host factors that give rise to the occurrence of the disease being investigated.

The first step of a field investigation is to describe the disease event. The pathological lesions, etiologic agents or environmental samples associated with a disease can often provide vital clues for disease control. It is wise to consult your diagnostic laboratory before embarking on a field investigation to ensure that diagnostic samples are appropriately collected, stored and shipped. Whereas laboratory analyses can be a

valuable component of a field investigation, the costs of extensive testing can be high. Thus, the selection of specific laboratory tests should be directed to answering key questions, particularly those that can lead to disease control decisions. Details of sample collection for pathologic and microbiologic purposes are presented in Chapter 3. Similar care must be taken when selecting water, feed or other environmental samples for analysis.

It is important next to decide which tests and how many tests to use. From a clinical management perspective, a test should not be conducted unless its outcome is likely to affect health management decisions. In some cases, however, it is important to collect samples for research purposes to gain further insight into the causes of the particular disease being investigated. Regardless of the reason for testing, investigators must be aware of the performance characteristics of the tests being used. There are 4 main measures that are used to describe the performance of a test which dichotomize the fish or populations health status (Table 2-1). Each of these measures requires a "gold standard" which can reveal the true health status of the fish. A fifth measure, the kappa value, is a measure of how well two tests agree on the disease classification of a subject and can be used to compare tests when a gold standard does not exist (Martin et al. 1987). An understanding of how the prevalence of disease in the population, the number of tests

performed and the number of individuals sampled per group affect a tests ability to accurately classify a fish or fish populations disease status, which is essential for appropriate interpretation of laboratory results (Martin et al. 1992). Unfortunately, very little information exists on the clinical performance of tests used for salmon.

As important as selecting the appropriate samples for diagnostic tests is the selection of fish to be sampled. Which fish are examined during the investigation will depend

**Table 2-1. Measures of diagnostic test performance.**

	DISEASE PRESENT	DISEASE ABSENT	TOTAL
<b>TEST POSITIVE</b>	True positive (a)	False positive (b)	Total test positive (a+b)
<b>TEST NEGATIVE</b>	False negative (c)	True negative (d)	Total test negative (c+d)
<b>TOTAL</b>	Total number with disease (a+c)	Total number without disease (b+d)	a+b+c+d

Sensitivity: Proportion of fish with the disease that will test positive =  $a/(a+c)$

Specificity: Proportion of fish without disease that will test negative =  $d/(b+d)$

Positive Predictive Value :\*

Proportion of fish that test positive that truly have the disease =  $a/(a+b)$

Negative Predictive Value :\*

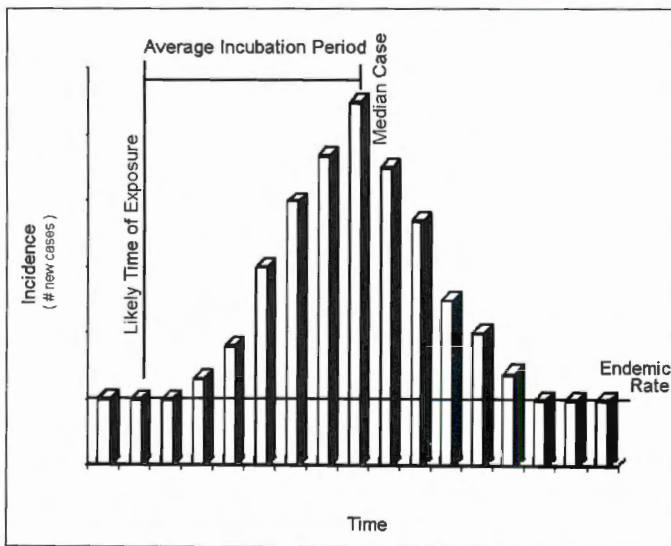
Proportion of fish that test negative that truly do not have the disease =  $d/(c+d)$

\*Influenced by prevalence of disease in the tested population

## Outbreak Investigations in Netpens

upon the questions that must be answered. For example, to establish the prevalence of disease in a group, random samples of the entire population are ideal, whereas investigations solely concerned with establishing the reason for deaths may restrict sampling to recently dead or dying fish. As it is rarely feasible to examine every individual in the affected population, field investigations usually rely upon examination of a sample of the group of interest. Rarely is it possible to obtain truly random samples of cultured fish populations. It is therefore important to understand the nature and magnitude of any biases that are created by relying upon a specific population sub-sample during an investigation. For example, research in chinook salmon seacages in British Columbia has shown that samples of surface accessible moribund fish can overestimate the prevalence of chronic disease in the entire cage (Stephen and Ribble 1995a). In such cases, examination of recently dead fish can provide more accurate estimates of the proportional mortality ratio (Stephen and Ribble 1997).

The second stage of the investigation involves describing the disease at a population level. For any disease to occur, there must be susceptible fish and opportunity for exposure to causal agents. The goal of this portion of the investigation is to identify the time and places where exposure or susceptibility was altered so that the key determinants that caused the disease can be identified. An essential first step of all field investigations is to generate an epidemic curve (Figure 2-1). The epidemic curve not only documents the magnitude of the problem, but also provides important clues as to possible times of exposure to causal agents, key times to check for environmental or management changes, and the nature of spread of the disease. Great care must be taken to verify data that is used to generate an epidemic curve. Particular attention should be placed on evaluating the accuracy and consistency



with which cases were defined and counted. An accurate description of the spatial distribution can identify the potential locations where the susceptibility and/or exposure of the population were altered. Particular attention should be placed on determining where the first cases occurred and the pattern of the spread of disease through the affected population.

It is also important to describe the characteristics of the affected fish. Information to collect includes; (1) the age, sex, species, and strain of affected fish, (2) the performance characteristics of the affected population, such as food consumption and growth rates, and (3) the management history of the fish including their source, pattern of movement or mixing; types and sources of feed and water; and treatment and vaccination history. An attack rate table can be used to help identify potential key determinants or to identify environmental factors that should be further investigated (Table 2-2).

Often management practices or uncontrollable environmental conditions can impose restrictions on the number and nature of factors that can be manipulated to control or prevent disease. The descriptive phase of the investigation helps to assess which host, agent or environmental variables can practically and effectively be altered. In stage three of the field investigation, the information collected from the affected fish must be compared to unaffected fish. Because disease occurs as a result of the interaction of multiple risk factors rarely will a field investigation reveal a single problem. Consequently, we need a way to describe the relative contribution of various risk factors to the particular disease occurrence being investigated. This is done by comparing the characteristics of affected individuals and populations to those that are unaffected. While there exists several mathematical methods for comparing complex interactions of risk factors, they ultimately all try to estimate the relative risk of a particular factor. The relative risk provides a measure of the likelihood that disease will develop under a specific circumstance. The relative risk can be defined as the ratio of the incidence of disease in the affected population to the incidence of disease in the unaffected population. Ratios not significantly different than 1 indicate that the factor is not a causal risk, while those greater than 1 indicate the factor contributes to the risk of developing disease. Great care must be taken in selecting the comparison groups. Particular attention must be taken to correctly determine their disease status to insure they are true controls and not sub-clinical or recovered cases.

After completing the three phases above, hypotheses regarding the key determinants must be generated. These hypotheses can be tested either by mounting experimental or observational studies which can refine our understanding of the

**Table 2-2. Example of an attack rate table.** The attack rate is the proportion of fish with specific attributes or exposures that develop disease. Attack rates are used to identify potential risk factors in disease outbreaks that occur over a short time.

Factor	<u>Fish exposed to factor</u>			<u>Fish not exposed to factor</u>			Differences in Attack Rates
	Cases	Total exposed	Attack Rate(%)	Cases	Total not exposed	Attack Rate (%)	
Surface water	44	92	47.82	15	187	8.02	39.80
Tank 1	59	255	23.13	2	24	8.33	14.80
Feed X	59	265	22.26	2	14	14.28	7.98
Vaccine A	18	105	17.14	42	174	24.13	-6.99

causal relationships or they can be tested by implementing treatment or control programs targeted at hypothesized key determinants. Each approach has advantages and disadvantages. Whereas experimental studies provide the opportunity to more closely control confounding or extraneous variables, they are time consuming and can rarely replicate the interaction of factors present under field conditions. Observational studies (cohort studies, case-control studies and cross-sectional studies) vary in their costs and time needs. Although less able to control extraneous variables than in an experimental study, observational studies better replicate field conditions and can often provide risk reduction recommendations in the absence of precise knowledge of the pathophysiology or etiology of the disease of concern. However, both experimental and observational studies generally do not address the needs of the fish manager who wants to stop the problem now! Therefore, hypotheses generated by field investigations are often tested first by launching a control program. There are, in general, a limited number of ways by which a disease can be controlled or prevented at a population level. They can broadly be divided into actions to reduce susceptibility or actions to reduce exposure (Table 2-3). Key determinants that have been identified as the target for control should be assessed for their economic feasibility and acceptability to fish managers before being selected as key control targets.

Whereas much of this manual details the microbiological and pathological characteristics of diseases of cultured salmon and suggests chemical means for their control, it is essential to remember that disease in populations rarely result from the action of pathogens or parasites alone. Effective disease control or prevention programs must also pay significant attention to the host and environmental factors which affect the susceptibility of fish and probability of exposure to pathogenic agents. And thus to identify methods that can be used to reduce disease incidence in a field setting.

**Table 2-3: General Disease Control Options**

**Reduce Population Susceptibility to Pathogenic Agents**

- Improved husbandry and/or nutrition
- Mass vaccination
- Selective breeding
- Environmental management and hygiene

**Reduce Population Exposure to Causal Factors**

- Depopulation or selective slaughter
- Quarantine or isolation
- Mass treatment
- Environmental management
- Site and water source selection
- Biological controls

**Education**

- Methods of prevention
- Methods of early detection
- Methods of early intervention

---

# NECROPSY PROTOCOLS

M.L. Kent

The mere presence of a pathogen in a sick fish does not necessarily mean that it is the cause of the disease. It is important, therefore, to conduct a thorough investigation, beyond just detecting the presence or absence of known pathogens, to determine the cause of the disease. Histological examinations, in addition to gross necropsies and in vitro culture of microorganisms, are often required to determine the association of the observed pathogens in the disease being investigated. Furthermore, because fish in netpens often have mixed infections, it is often necessary to examine several fish from the affected population to differentiate primary pathogens, opportunistic pathogens, and secondary causes of the disease.

Diagnosis of a disease begins at the farm, and some of the most crucial information can be collected by the farmer by thorough record keeping and careful observations of affected fish (see previous chapter). The following information is important for disease diagnosis and implementing control strategies.

## Background Information

To assist with obtaining an accurate diagnosis, the following information should be obtained: time of seawater entry, origin (stock), smolt producer, vaccine status, previous disease problems in the affected stock in fresh water and in the netpen, diet, medication history, and mortality rate (See Chapter 2 on Outbreak Investigations).

Suboptimal water conditions often exacerbate diseases and, because of lack of control of water movement in netpens, water quality problems may be unavoidable. The following are water quality parameters of particular concern for netpens and should be considered in a disease investigation: dissolved oxygen, temperature, salinity and phytoplankton density.

## Fish Examination

**Behavior.** Fish behavior may be useful for indication of an emerging disease and some behavioral changes are useful for presumptive diagnoses. For example, if fish are flashing (rubbing on nets), this may indicate that they are infected with external parasites. Other indications of disease include: cessation of feeding, lethargy, and abnormal position in the

netpen (e.g., at surface or at the bottom). Abnormal respiratory pattern may indicate gill damage, and whirling or spiralling swimming often indicates neurological damage.

**Selecting fish for Necropsy.** Examinations should be conducted on diseased fish that are collected while still alive (moribund). It is important to determine the primary cause of mortality and to differentiate this from secondary or opportunistic pathogens that may have taken advantage of already diseased fish. To accomplish this, several affected fish should be examined whenever possible. In addition, for unusual diseases, the sample should include apparently normal, asymptomatic fish so that early pathological changes and the underlying cause of morbidity can be determined. Dead fish may be suitable for some parasitological examinations and for observing obvious macroscopic pathological changes. However, bacteriological examinations conducted on dead fish can yield misleading results, and many histological changes are obliterated by post-mortem autolysis.

Moribund fish are usually collected from the surface. However, the pattern of disease in these "slow swimmers" does not always accurately reflect the disease status in the overall population (Stephen and Ribble 1995a). Therefore, very fresh dead or moribund fish collected from the bottom of pens (e.g., by divers) should also be included during a disease examination.

**External Examination.** Note surface abnormalities (e.g., frayed fins, cloudy eyes, ulcers, skin discolorations, parasites, and tumors). Prepare wet mounts of the skin mucus and a few scales by scraping the surface of the fish with a coverslip and placing the coverslip on a glass slide. Some sea water may be added to the preparation so that the area between the slide and the coverslip is completely filled with liquid. Examine the wet mount with a compound microscope, starting with low power. Reducing the light and lowering the condenser will produce higher contrast, which will make microscopic parasites and other pathogens more visible.

**Gills.** Remove the operculum. Note color of gills (pale gills usually indicate anemia). Check for parasites, cysts, excessive mucus, and hemorrhages. A dissecting microscope is useful for detecting larger parasites. Prepare a wet mount of a few filaments and examine for small parasites, fungi, and bacteria

using a compound microscope. Wet mounts of gills are prepared by removing a few filaments with scissors, placing the filaments in a large drop of sea water on a glass slide, and overlaying with a coverslip.

**Internal Examination.** Open the visceral cavity. Note if ascites, hemorrhages or other abnormalities are present. Expose the kidney by removing the swimbladder and note any kidney abnormalities. Many diseases cause enlargement or discoloration of the kidney. Examine the heart for any abnormalities. Remove and open the intestinal tract by cutting length-wise and examine for parasites with a dissecting microscope or magnifying glass. Dissection of the gastrointestinal tract in 0.9% saline is helpful for finding helminth parasites. Examine squash preparations of organs with a compound microscope to detect encysted parasites, fungi or granulomas. Squash preparations are made by removing a small piece of tissue, and gently squashing it between a slide and coverslip so that a thin preparation suitable for examination with a compound microscope or dissecting microscope is made.

**Imprints.** Leishman's Giemsa (see Appendix III) or Diff-Quik (Harleco) stained imprints of kidney, spleen or other affected organs are useful for detection of protozoa and bacteria. Remove a piece of tissue (approximately 0.5 X 0.5 cm<sup>2</sup>), blot on clean paper towel to remove most of the blood, and lightly touch the cut surface of the tissue on a clean glass slide. Several imprints from the same piece of tissue can be made on one slide. Air dry the preparation for approximately 1/2 h. Fix the slide for 5-10 min in absolute methanol for Giemsa stains. The slide can then be stained with Giemsa or Diff-Quik or shipped to a diagnostic laboratory.

**Histology.** It is critical to fix tissues for histology as soon as possible after fish are killed to avoid post-mortem changes. If possible, do not use dead fish from the netpens because significant autolytic changes may occur in 15-20 min after death. Put tissues in formaldehyde based fixative (see Appendix III) for histology. Place small pieces of each organ in the fixative at approximately 1:20 (v/v) tissue to fixative. We have found Davidson's solution to be the best all around fixative for fish tissues for histological examination.

**Electron Microscopy.** All the above principles for histology applies for collecting specimens for electron microscopy, but freshness of tissues at fixation and proper infiltration of tissues is even more critical. Therefore, small pieces of tissue should be minced in cold glutaraldehyde based fixative into cubes

about 3 mm X 3 mm. The fixed tissue is stored overnight in this solution, then transferred to the appropriate buffer solution. Samples in EM fixatives and buffers should be refrigerated. There are many EM fixatives and buffers, and Appendix III provides recipes for those we use in our laboratory. Transmission electron microscopy can be performed with limited success on tissues fixed in neutral buffered formalin, but is very poor with acidic fixatives, such as Davidson's or Bouin's solutions.

**Bacteriology.** Some bacterial diseases, such as bacterial kidney disease, can be identified by simple Gram stains. However, the diagnosis of many bacterial diseases requires isolation of the bacteria in culture. In this case, live fish should be delivered to the laboratory, but this may not be practical in some situations. For this reason, methods for obtaining initial cultures in the field are outlined below. The bacterial cultures can then be sent to a laboratory for complete identification.

Use only freshly sacrificed fish. Dead fish from the pens are essentially worthless. Disinfect the surface of the fish with 70% ethanol, flame-sterilize a scalpel, open the visceral cavity making sure not to cut into the gastrointestinal tract. Push aside the swimbladder with flame-sterilized forceps and insert a sterile swab or loop into the kidney. Streak the specimen on Tryptic Soy Agar and Marine Agar (Difco) bacteriological plates, seal the plates, keep at 15-25 °C, and send the plates to the microbiology laboratory for further diagnosis.

For gliding bacteria (*Cytophaga* and *Flexibacter* spp.), we recommend Marine Agar (Difco). Although the lesions may exhibit massive numbers of gliding bacteria, other bacteria (e.g., *Vibrio* spp.) will usually outgrow the former. Therefore, the best way to obtain pure cultures of gliding bacteria is to homogenize the tissue in sterile sea water, and inoculate plates in serial log dilutions.

Gram-stained preparations may reveal bacteria when they are numerous in infected tissue. Smear or imprint suspect tissues thinly on a glass slide, air dry and fix the slide by gently heating the slide over an open flame for 3-5 seconds. Gram stain kits are available from scientific supply houses and include instructions for their use.

**Virology.** As with bacterial diseases, isolation of viruses in culture may be required to diagnose a viral disease, and culture is best conducted on specimens collected from freshly killed fish. If this is not practical, the fish should be refrigerated for no longer than 24 hr before examination. As a last resort, fish for virus examination can be frozen. The specimens are then transported to a qualified fish virology laboratory.

## Necropsy Protocols

**Molecular Biology.** DNA-based diagnostic tests utilizing polymerase chain reaction (PCR) are increasingly becoming common in fish health diagnostics because they are very sensitive and specific. Because of their extreme sensitivity, great care should be taken when collecting samples in the field to avoid cross contamination between samples. Samples are either frozen immediately or preserved in ethanol; it is usually much more difficult to perform these tests on formalin fixed material. Bleach and wash instruments between samples to avoid cross contamination.

**Transport of Tissues in Fixative.** For shipment of fixed tissues, replace fixative with 70% alcohol and soak overnight. Drain off excessive fluids, wrap tissues in alcohol-soaked paper towels, and seal in a leak-proof container.

**Transport of Frozen Fish.** Freeze fish in a plastic bag and ship in an insulated container with ice packs.

**Transport of Refrigerated Fish.** Place fish in a plastic bag and surround the bag with ice or ice packs. Ship in a leak-proof, insulated container.

### Transport of Specimens

It is not always possible to obtain live or fresh specimens. If only dead fish can be provided for laboratory examination, they should be refrigerated and examined within 24 hr. If fish cannot be delivered to a laboratory within 24 hr, then fish should be preserved by freezing and/or fixation in tissue preservatives (see below). Each method of preservation has certain advantages and disadvantages, as indicated in Table 3-1.

**Table 3-1. Preservation methods of fish tissues and their uses in fish disease diagnostic examinations.**

+++ = optimal; ++ = satisfactory in most cases; + = suboptimal, can be used if no other tissue available; 0 = useless.

	<u>Fresh</u>	<u>Refrigerated</u>	<u>Frozen</u>	<u>Preserved*</u>
Parasitology	+++	++	++	+
Bacteriology culture	+++	+	+	0
Virology culture	+++	++	+	0
Toxicology (chemical analysis)	+++	++	+++	0 to +++
Histology	+++	+	+	+++
Electron Microscopy	+++	+	0	+++
Molecular Biology	+++	+	+++	+++

\*Preserved in formalin-based fixative (e.g., Davidson's solution) for histology, glutaraldehyde-based fixative for electron microscopy, 95% ethanol for molecular biology (e.g., PCR testing). Methanol preservation is suitable for some chemical analyses.

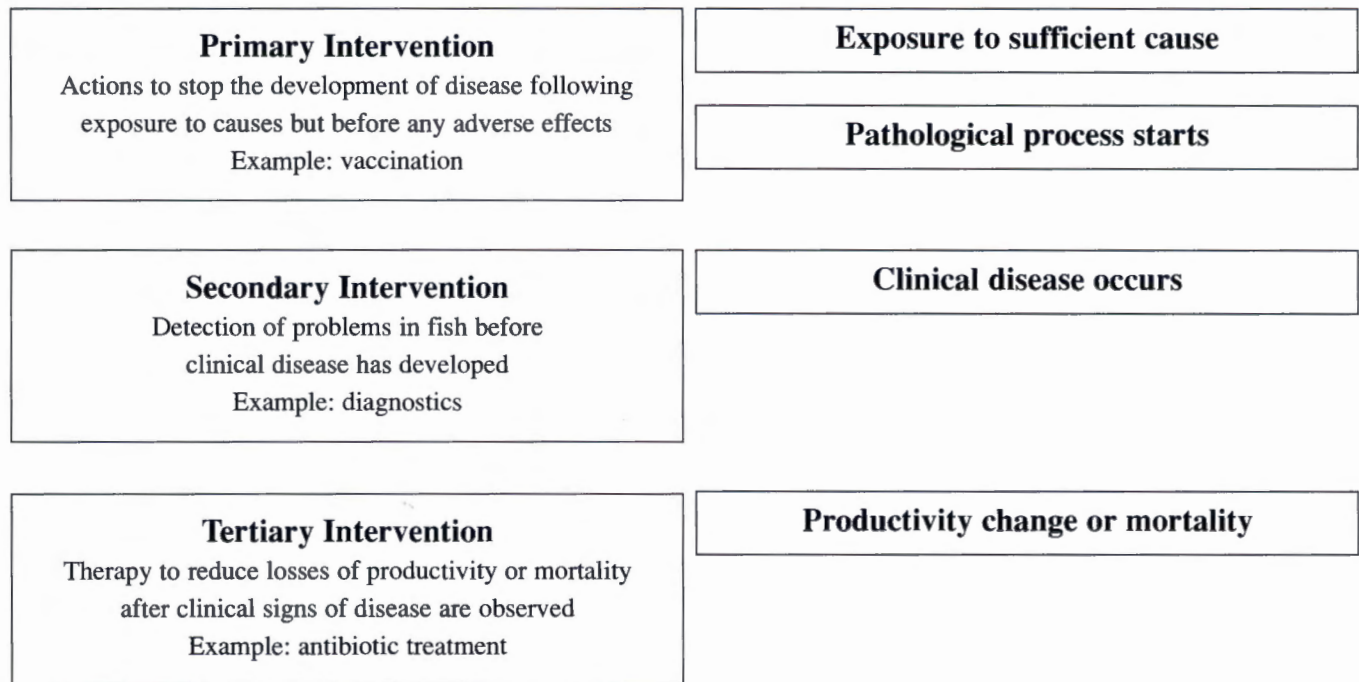
---

# DISEASE TREATMENT IN NETPEN AQUACULTURE

Jim Brackett and Grace Karreman

The goal of disease control, including treatment, in netpen aquaculture is to optimize production. Design of a disease control program is based on assessments of the risks of disease, the available tools to minimize risks or control diseases, and

the cost-efficacy of the potential actions. Disease control can involve a broad spectrum of activities, including intervention in the disease process at different levels (Martin et al. 1987):



Intervention at all levels of the disease process, including treatment, will be required in a comprehensive disease control program.

## Detection of problems

As discussed in the previous chapter, accurate and early detection of a disease problem is important to minimize impacts of the disease. Detection of changes in productivity (e.g., reduced feeding or lowered feed conversion ratios), or survivorship is critical in effective initiation of intervention and disease control. Detection of these changes necessitates complete and accurate records. Fish in netpens are easy to observe compared with wild fish. Netpen fish can be sampled and enumerated regularly, enabling early observation of developing problems. Decisions based on efforts to minimize risk and maximize production require frequent weight sampling and counting to measure performance.

Frequent collection of dead fish from netpens is an important task in disease control. Furthermore, pathogen loading in the

netpen environment is reduced with frequent removal of fish dying from infectious diseases. Collection of dead fish can be accomplished by diving inside each pen and taking the dead fish to the surface for counting, examination for cause of death and proper disposal. Devices to trap and collect the dead fish can be installed at the bottom of each pen, permitting removal without diving in the pen. Dead fish should be removed at least weekly, and more frequently if numbers of mortalities increase.

The number of dead fish from each individual pen should be recorded and compared with the number of fish in the pen to calculate a daily or weekly rate of mortality. Any change from "baseline" mortality rates should be identified quickly and the appropriate response initiated. The pattern of changes in mortality rate over the seasons or over the production cycle can

## Disease Treatment in Netpen Aquaculture

direct modifications in production management and disease control activities.

### Risk factors

Many risk factors may be involved in production of a disease outbreak in pen-reared fish. Identification of these risk factors and determination of their relative importance in the outbreak will help in directing effective treatment and control efforts. Risk factors in production of disease are both intrinsic and extrinsic. Intrinsic factors include the general health of fish, their specific and non-specific immune status, species and age of the fish, etc. Extrinsic risk factors include the water temperature, reservoirs of disease organisms, etc.

The density of the fish in a netpen can be a significant risk factor for infectious diseases. Under some circumstances, density of the fish can affect general health through effects on feeding behaviour, physical trauma of the fish, territorial and social behaviour. For highly infectious diseases, the density of the fish in the netpen may affect the probability of effective contact and, therefore, the likelihood of infection and disease development.

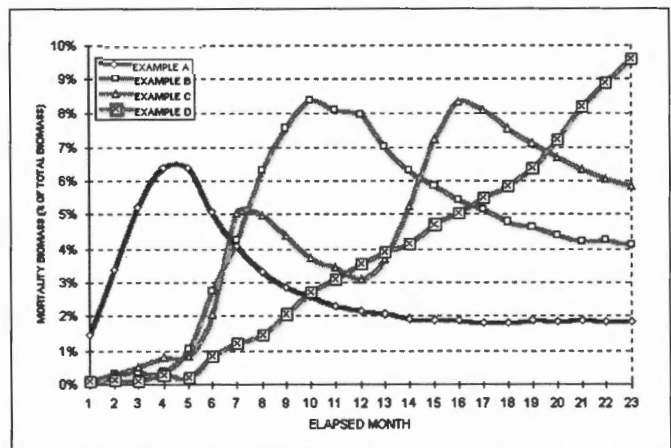
Identification of a reservoir of the causative pathogen is an important component of managing risk factors. Continued exposure to the pathogen source will affect the selection and success of treatment and control measures. Management changes to reduce the exposure to the reservoir of infection will likely be more successful in disease control than repeated treatments. Treatment of a specific disease may have decreased success if other disease agents present significant risks at the same time. In these situations, control of all of the factors may be necessary to achieve satisfactory disease control. Predators can represent important risk factors for many infectious diseases. If exposure to these predators is not restricted, repeated outbreaks of infectious diseases may occur.

### Farm Records and Decision-Making

Farm production records are a primary component of a successful and effective decision-making process for disease treatment. All of the factors discussed previously must be considered in light of the records that should include, at the minimum, descriptions of the growth of the fish and mortality rates. Mortality rate is associated with rate of disease spread but must be interpreted carefully. Most farms have an implicit threshold at which the disease losses are high enough above normal to contact a veterinarian for further assistance (e.g., 1%/month). But more important than the threshold for concern

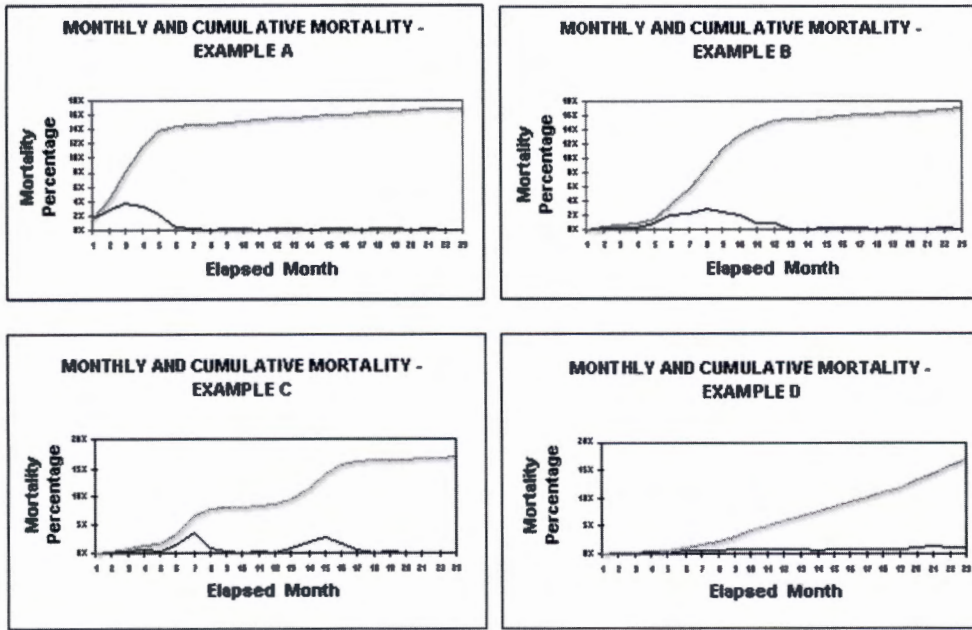
is the pattern of the mortalities and the age of fish in which the losses are occurring.

Figure 4-1 illustrates four patterns of mortality in which the cumulative mortality is identical (17%) but the patterns are very different. The rate at which mortality accumulates is illustrated in the second curve of each graph. These particular examples are based on an actual site at which harvesting commenced at 15 months. Examples A and B suffered most of their losses prior to harvest whereas example C, and particularly D, had ongoing mortalities during the harvesting period.



**Figure 4-1.** Different mortality patterns at farm sites over a 23 months growing cycle. A. Most of the mortalities occur in the first 8 months. B. Mortalities start later but most have occurred before 13 months. C. A bimodal pattern that starts at approximately 4 months and ends after 18 months. D. A steady rate of loss occurring throughout the grow-out cycle.

The percentage of the biomass lost to mortality is heavily influenced by the timing and the pattern of the mortalities. Biomass is the product of fish numbers and weights and is the preferred index for measuring inventory in the water. For this example the growth curve is unchanged though the mortality rate and pattern differs. Figure 4-2 shows the ratio of mortality biomass to total potential biomass (i.e., if there had been no losses due to mortality). The end ratio for example A is slightly less than 2% while that for example D is almost 10% because losses occurred so late in the cycle.

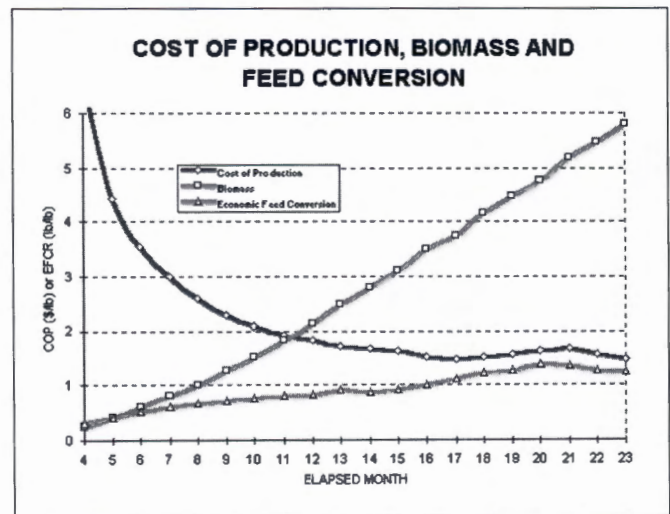


**Figure 4-2.** Mortality by biomass percentage compiled from Figure 4-1.

Providing a treatment for the disease exists, clearly it is beneficial to treat. Primary husbandry should always be addressed—there may be benefit in decreasing the density, to stop feeding for a certain period or decreasing existing stress if it can be properly identified. In cases of diseases that are not zoonoses and have no effect on product quality, early harvest of the pen of fish may represent the most economically reasonable option for disease management. Sometimes the use of chemotherapeutics is indicated, and these are most often administered in feed. These have associated costs: 1) the cost of the medication including milling and transport; 2) medication may decrease the feeding rate and thereby the growth; and 3) the withdrawal period (“drug free” period after treatment) may fall into the period when treated fish would normally be harvested. The cost benefit analysis will also help to direct the choice of treatment when more than one option is available. The lower cost treatment may not be the best choice if a higher cost product can result in more rapid results or greater efficacy.

Estimating the costs vs. benefits of a therapeutic treatment implies knowledge of several economic realities about the site. Figure 4-3 shows the relative shapes of the curves for biomass (the product of the growth and survival curves), cost of production and feed conversion ratio. Each site must know its predicted growth rate and feed conversion ratio’s, as well as the “normal” mortality rate that might continue after treatment is finished. For example, while therapeutics may put fish off their feed during administration, afterwards there may be a rebound, or “compensatory” growth period. More difficult to determine but certainly true in terrestrial livestock, is that

treatment of the entire pen might also help those fish with subclinical disease (i.e., those that have a slightly depressed growth rate but no other outward clinical signs). Finally, and most important, the site must know the desired harvesting schedule, including the predicted market weight and selling price of those fish under that schedule.



**Figure 4-3:** Cost of Production, Biomass and Feed Conversion Ratio Relationships

Table 1 illustrates some of the economic consequences of losses during the production cycle. There are many ways to calculate these numbers. For simplicity in our hypothetical examples, we fixed growth rate, the harvesting pattern and selling prices. In each example we allowed the input costs (feed, smolt cost, labour and others) to vary proportionally to

## Disease Treatment in Netpen Aquaculture

the number of fish left in the pen after the mortalities were taken out each month. Proceeding again from example A to D, there is a rise in cost of sales and corresponding decrease in margins. While our assumptions exaggerate this difference, this indicates the disproportional effect of having to feed large fish toward the end of the cycle which will not make it to harvest. For a 200 metric tonne (450,000 lb.) site, a \$.10/lb difference in margins is worth \$45,000. Whereas most therapeutant treatments are expensive, on this site there would be a favourable cost/benefit ratio for treatment.

**Table 1. Economic Consequences of Losses**

	Example A	Example B	Example C	Example D
<b>Cost of Sales</b>	\$2.29	\$2.34	\$2.37	\$2.45
<b>Gross Margin</b>	\$0.94	\$0.89	\$0.86	\$0.79

### Selection of appropriate treatments

All therapeutants used to treat diseases of fish intended to be harvested for food must be "approved" and used according to federal and provincial legislation. In Canada, drugs regulated federally by the Bureau of Veterinary Drugs and are defined in the Food and Drug Act as "any substance or mixture of substances used in (a) the diagnosis, treatment, mitigation or prevention of a disease, disorder or abnormal physical state, or symptoms thereof, in man or animal." Pesticides are products applied externally to control parasites of fish and are regulated in Canada by the Pest Management Regulatory Agency. Vaccines regulations are administered in Canada by the Canadian Food Inspection Agency. These regulations ensure that the products used in disease control in food fish are safe and effective and do not leave harmful residues in food.

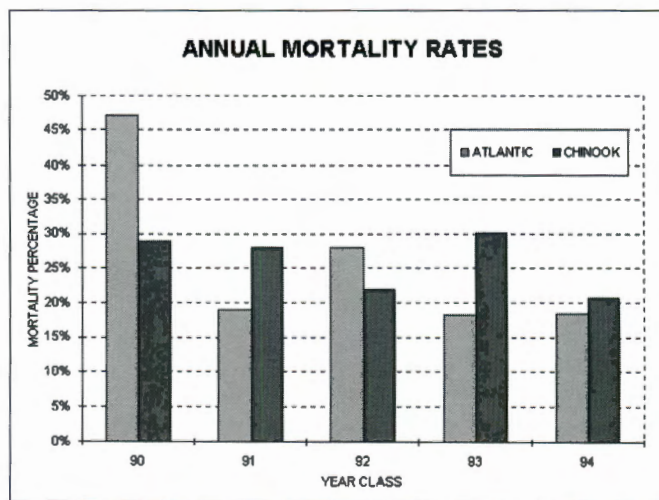
In addition to compliance with all regulations in the country where the fish are grown, the regulatory requirements of the countries to which fish and fish products are exported must be met. While harmonization of drug use legislation and requirements is sought by Canada, the United States and many other countries, there remain different standards that must be considered when selecting treatment choices in fish that might be exported after harvest. Drug use and potential residues are an important component of food inspection procedures in Canada and in the new Hazard Assessment at Critical Control Point (HACCP) program instituted in the United States.

## Antibiotics

As in all animal production, the use of antibiotics to control bacterial infections are an important component of disease control. All animals are frequently confronted with bacterial infections and disease, and in netpen fish culture, treatment with antibiotics might be required to reduce morbidity and mortality to acceptable levels. Usually, antibiotic treatment is a component of a disease control program that also includes preventative actions such as vaccination, disinfection, screening of broodstock and other management practices.

Antibiotic treatments occur when the disease is observed clinically, that is, late in the development of the disease. The goal of producers is to prevent the development of the disease to this stage; however, when disease does occur, treatments are initiated as soon as the disease manifestations can be detected. Early identification and treatment of problems requires close observation, accurate records of mortalities and production rates, along with examination of dead or dying fish.

As netpen culture of salmon progresses, there is a strong trend to lower antibiotic use. This reduction arises from improved husbandry practices, lower mortality rate, faster detection, earlier treatment, prevention of infections by screening, disinfection and protection by vaccines for the most important diseases. Mortality rates in netpen salmon in British Columbia, Canada have dropped by 40 to 60% from 1990 to 1994 (Figure 4-4).



**Figure 4-4.** 1990-1994 mortality rates in chinook and Atlantic salmon in British Columbia

In Norway, losses due to disease have declined from 25% of the 1988 generation of Atlantic salmon to approximately 7% of the 1995 generation, while antibiotic use has declined from 592 grams per tonne of growth in the 1987 generation to 3 grams

per tonne of growth in the 1996 generation. In British Columbia, antibiotic use in feed in 1995 was reduced to 156 grams per tonne of production, a decline of 23% from the previous year (British Columbia Ministry of Agriculture Food and Fisheries 1997)

***Selection of antibiotics.*** Antibiotics commonly used in netpen fish are also used in other animal production industries. There is a long history of safety of these compounds for use in food-producing animals and the efficacy against common pathogens is well-known. The label of an approved antibiotic will indicate the diseases that the antibiotic has been demonstrated to control. Clinical experience of the fish health staff and the prescribing veterinarian will also be helpful.

When pathogenic bacteria are cultured and identified as the cause of a disease problem that requires antibiotic treatment, an antibiotic sensitivity test should be done on the isolate. The sensitivity of the isolate to the antibiotics will guide in the selection of the antibiotic to treat the fish. Laboratory testing for antibiotic sensitivity should be used only as a guide, as clinical results will not always reflect the laboratory findings. Antibiotic sensitivity testing results are affected by many aspects of the testing (Smith et al. 1994). The methodology of the testing, including bacterial incubation, plate preparation, media used, antibiotic discs used and the measurement and interpretation of the zones of inhibition are not standardized among or within diagnostic laboratories and can have an influence on the test results, repeatability and comparisons with results from elsewhere.

***Residues.*** The prevention of residues of an antibiotic in fish intended for human food is the primary consideration for use of a product in food fish. The antibiotics used in netpen fish have been tested to determine an appropriate time between the last use of the compound and harvest of the treated fish ("withdrawal time"). This time will depend on the dose of the drug, the metabolism, distribution and elimination in the fish, and the temperature of the environment during and after treatment. Data is generated for government agencies demonstrating the safety of the compound in humans. The expected amount of time between treatment and planned harvest of the fish will also be a consideration in selection of antibiotics. Antibiotics with a shorter withdrawal time would be a better choice in larger fish that are closer to the time of harvest.

***Rotation of drugs.*** When more than one antibiotic is available and likely to be successful in treating a disease, rotation of the products for subsequent outbreaks in a pen or on a farm is

recommended. This is common practice in human and animal medicine, and is intended to help reduce problems of resistant populations of bacteria. Repeated use of the same antibiotic places selective pressure on the bacterial population and encourages expression of antibiotic resistance in bacteria. This resistance is not permanent and will disappear when the selective pressure is removed, but may restrict the success of disease control efforts, especially if the number of antibiotics available for use is limited.

***Medicated feed.*** Delivery of drugs in medicated feeds is the most common method of treating fish in netpens. It is the least labour intensive and least stressful for fish. Antibiotics are most commonly added to the feed during milling at the end of the pellet manufacturing or can be hand mixed at the farm site. Care must be taken when mixing medicated ingredients to ensure proper safe handling and calculation of proper dosages. Mixing instructions are provided on product labels and designated in the requirements for licensed production of medicated feeds. In Canada, guidelines and instructions are contained in the Medicating Ingredients Brochure for feed mills. Commercially prepared medicated feeds are available from a variety of manufacturers and require a veterinary prescription (for prescription drugs).

There are, however, disadvantages associated with administration of antibiotics in feed that can impact on the effectiveness of antibiotic treatment. Unhealthy fish are often reluctant to accept feed resulting in variation in the total amount of feed consumed and the dose administered for treatment. Palatability problems have been encountered with certain antibiotics and can exacerbate this problem, further reducing the effectiveness of treatment. Inaccurate accounting of the number of fish per pen and inaccurate estimation of the average weight of the fish at the time of treatment can also affect the effectiveness of the therapeutic regime. When calculating the total amount of therapeutant for a population of fish, several factors should be considered. In most cases the antibiotic is provided as a pre-mix and not in its pure form. Calculating the correct dose requires a knowledge of the total biomass of the population and rate of administration of feed per body weight. Some antibiotic formulations interact with components of the feed or elements in the marine environment which decrease the bioavailability and efficacy of treatment. When choosing an antibiotic for treatment of a bacterial infection, consideration should be given to these factors to maximize the effectiveness of treatment.

### DRUGS USED IN NETPEN AQUACULTURE

#### Antibiotics

**Oxytetracycline.** This is the most commonly used antibiotic in netpen culture in Canada. This compound has a long history of use in animal production and is effective in the control of common bacterial infections of fish. It is approved for use in food fish in Canada (TM Aqua, Pfizer). Common uses of oxytetracycline in netpen salmon culture include the treatment of furunculosis (*Aeromonas salmonicida*) (Groman et al. 1992; Mitchell 1992) and vibriosis caused by various *Vibrio* spp. Another use for oxytetracycline is the treatment of bacterial kidney disease (*Renibacterium salmoninarum*). These treatments are delivered orally by incorporating the drug premix in the feed. Injection of oxytetracycline into the dorsal sinus or into the peritoneal cavity of netpen fish has been used in some circumstances, but is limited by the difficulties and risks associated with the handling of an entire pen of fish for injection procedures at a time when a disease is causing problems. Oxytetracycline is also used to help control bacterial kidney disease and furunculosis in broodstock fish not intended for food. These treatments are by injection of a long-acting oxytetracycline product into the dorsal sinus.

Bacteria commonly develop resistance to oxytetracycline following repeated use in salmon. This phenomenon is also seen with disease treatment with oxytetracycline in other species as well. The resistance is temporary and rotation of other drugs into a treatment regime, and ensuring proper dosage and consumption of all of the medicated feed by the fish will minimize problems associated with resistance.

A potential problem with the use of oxytetracycline in fish treatments is the ability of calcium and other cations in the feed and water to bind with the oxytetracycline molecule. This binding will reduce the bioavailability of the drug and could affect clinical results. In spite of this low bioavailability, positive clinical results with oxytetracycline are observed.

**Potentiated Sulfonamides.** These consist of a mixture of two active ingredients: sulfadimethoxine and ormetoprim (Romet 30, Roche) or sulfadiazine and trimethoprim (Tribrissen, Schering). The two active ingredients attack bacteria at sequential metabolic processes, increasing efficacy and decreasing the potential for development of resistance. Both Romet 30 and Tribrissen have been accepted for use in food fish in Canada. They are commonly used for treatment of furunculosis and vibriosis by delivery in feed (Mitchell 1992; Maestroni, 1984). Both of these products can be used in rotation

with oxytetracycline for these applications, although the similarity of the two potentiated sulfonamides means that bacterial resistance to one of them will also preclude the use of the other. Under some conditions, potentiated sulfonamide products may inhibit feed consumption in treated fish. This reduced feeding can make it difficult to deliver the entire course of treatment to affected fish and can reduce treatment efficacy.

**Florfenicol.** A newly approved antibiotic in netpen aquaculture in Canada is florfenicol (Aqua Flor, Schering). Aqua Flor has shown good efficacy for treatment of furunculosis and other diseases (Nordmo et al. 1994, Sheppard et al. 1994). It is administered in the feed. Florfenicol is a valuable product to use in rotation with oxytetracycline and the potentiated sulfonamides because of low levels of resistance observed in pathogens and because cross-resistance induced by other antibiotics is unlikely.

**Erythromycin.** This antibiotic is commonly used for the control of bacterial kidney disease. In netpen culture, the most common method of use is by dorsal sinus injection in broodstock (Evelyn et al. 1986a; Brown et al. 1990; Lee and Evelyn 1994). The compound is concentrated in the developing eggs during a time window prior to spawning, resulting in levels that persist through egg development to help reduce infection in the eggs. Oral treatment with erythromycin is not commonly carried out in netpen fish. Problems with palatability with erythromycin salts and damage to the compound during feed manufacturing have been limiting factors. Furthermore, erythromycin treatment can be relatively expensive, making cost-efficacy a significant issue.

#### Parasiticides

The most common parasites causing problems in netpen salmon aquaculture are sea lice (*Lepeophtheirus* sp. and *Caligus* sp.). Parasiticides are used to control the parasites when their numbers reach levels that result in problems. Control and treatment considerations are discussed in depth in the section on sea lice.

In Canada, sea lice have been treated with Azamethiphos (Salmosan, Ciba Geigy) under a limited registration. The compound is administered by bath treatment. Ivermectin products can be used for oral treatment under veterinary prescription. Insect growth regulators which inhibit chitin synthesis are currently under investigation for oral treatment. Risk factors for sea lice problems and non-therapeutic control measures are the focus of investigations in the industry and an Integrated Sea Lice Management program is under

development in Canada in collaboration among producers, support industries, academic institutions and government agencies.

Formalin (Parasite S, Western Chemicals, Syndel) is used for the control of fungal egg infections and external parasites in fresh water, but has had only limited use in sea water applications. Attempts to control costiosis with formalin after transfer to salt water have not been successful. Furthermore, management of bath treatments with formalin in netpens is problematic.

There are no compounds commercially available for treatment of systemic protozoal infections. However, fumagillin has been used experimentally in the laboratory and in limited field trials. Fumagillin treatments are discussed further in pages 57–58.

### Anesthetics

Anesthetics are an important tool in effective management of netpen fish production. In netpens, they are most commonly used for weight sampling and for handling of broodstock for sorting and for spawning. As indicated earlier, accurate information on size and growth is essential in optimizing netpen production. In some circumstances, for example, the identification of a new disease risk, or availability of a new vaccine, netpen fish are anesthetized for vaccination in saltwater. Obviously, the disease risk and expected vaccine efficacy must outweigh the expense and risks of handling fish in the netpens.

Fish in a netpen can be introduced to an anesthetic bath by crowding them into a smaller volume and then pumping or netting the fish to deliver them to the anesthetic. In all cases, gentle and careful handling is required to avoid damage and reduce stress. Because it is not easy to observe fish during recovery in netpens, a recovery tarp suspended just below the surface is recommended to assist in monitoring recovery.

**Tricaine Methanesulfonate.** Tricaine methanesulfonate (TMS Powder, Syndel) is the most commonly used anesthetic for netpen fish in Canada. The dose can be adjusted to achieve the desired time for induction and for recovery of the fish. Because treated fish can be harvested 5 days after treatment, the product can be used even with large fish and can be used to assist in developing harvest plans.

**Metomidate.** This compound marketed as Marinil (Wildlife, Syndel) is used for sedation and anesthesia of fish. It is approved in Canada for several non-food fish species. In netpen aquaculture, it is used for sedation of smolts during

delivery to saltwater sites. At low doses, it reduces activity and stress in the transported fish. Higher doses produce general anesthesia. Marinil is used for weight sampling, similarly to tricaine methanesulfonate. Fish are crowded and placed in anesthetic bath tanks. Following handling, fish are returned to recovery tanks or to shallow netpens for observation until recovery is complete. The dose of Marinil, and its sedative or anesthetic effect on the fish, can be easily and accurately adjusted to achieve the desired results.

**Benzocaine.** This is similar in activity to tricaine methanesulfonate but is not soluble in water. Organic solvents are required to dissolve benzocaine before mixing in the anesthetic bath. Benzocaine effects on fish are almost identical to tricaine methanesulfonate. Benzocaine is not approved for use on fish in Canada.

### Vaccines

Injection vaccination of salmonids has dramatically reduced losses caused by several diseases in netpen culture. An excellent review of the status of vaccines for fish as of 1996 is found in Gudding et al. (1997). Commercial vaccines at this time are derived from killed, whole cell antigens. However, there have been recent advancements in the development of vaccines using recombinant DNA technologies (Leong et al. 1997). Furunculosis and vibriosis, including cold water vibriosis, are well-controlled throughout the entire sea water production phase following vaccination of smolts in fresh water prior to moving to netpens. In almost all cases, a single injection of oil-based emulsion vaccine containing a mixture of bacterins for the common diseases is adequate for protection for two years or more.

Additional vaccines under development or in limited use during development include products for the control of infectious hematopoietic necrosis, infectious pancreatic necrosis, bacterial mouthrot, bacterial kidney disease, and rickettsia infections. Efforts are underway to improve efficacy and reduce potential adverse effects of existing products. Enhanced production of antigens and changes in adjuvant systems are among the areas of development.

Vaccines used in Canada are licensed for use by the Canadian Food Inspection Agency, similar to government agencies in other countries. Products must meet stringent standards for potency and safety to satisfy licensing requirements. There are ongoing efforts to harmonize regulatory standards for fish vaccines in several countries to permit more rapid and cost-effective commercialization of vaccines.

In some cases, vaccination of fish in netpens is

## **Disease Treatment in Netpen Aquaculture**

---

recommended. This situation usually arises when a new vaccine becomes available after fish have already been moved to sea water. Fish are crowded, placed into anesthetic baths and vaccinated by crews on barges or boats beside the netpens. Obviously, the risks of handling the fish and the costs of administration of the anesthetic and vaccine must be weighed against the potential reduction in losses due to the disease in question.

Chinook salmon in netpens can be vaccinated by immersion to enhance protection to vibriosis. Fish are crowded in the netpen and placed into a tank containing the vaccine, then returned to the netpen. This vaccination is a booster for previous immersion vaccinations performed while the fish were in fresh water. The repeat vaccination is timed so that the fish have had time to adjust to the move to sea water, but before the expected challenge by *Vibrio* spp. a few weeks post-transfer.

The decision to vaccinate is based on assessment of the risks of encountering the diseases and the expected protection provided by the vaccine. The costs of the vaccine and the vaccination process, generally less than \$Can 0.15 to 0.20 per fish, must be compared with the potential costs of mortality, reduced growth and disease treatment.

Vaccines and vaccination may induce adverse effects in vaccinated fish. Adverse reactions can include reduced growth due to post-vaccination anorexia, peritoneal adhesions or melanization from vaccine-induced inflammation (see page 102). Other adverse reactions include post-handling problems such as fungal dermatitis or clinical outbreaks of other diseases in carrier or sub-clinically diseased fish. These adverse effects and the associated costs of reduced production must be considered in the cost-benefit analysis performed to assist in design of vaccination programs and selection of vaccines.

The protection provided by vaccines can be overwhelmed if fish are exposed to large challenges or are immunologically compromised by factors such as poor nutrition or sub-optimal rearing conditions. The important risk factors for diseases must be reduced and farm management practices must be optimized in disease control programs that include vaccination.

---

# BACTERIAL DISEASES

T. P. T. Evelyn, M. L. Kent, T.T. Poppe, and P. Bustos

A number of bacterial diseases cause serious and recurring losses in pen-reared salmon; others are emerging diseases of some concern. One of the important diseases, bacterial kidney disease (BKD), is caused by *Renibacterium salmoninarum*, a Gram-positive bacterium. The other important or emerging bacterial diseases of pen-reared salmon are caused by Gram-negative bacteria: typical vibriosis, caused by *Vibrio anguillarum* and *V. ordalii*; cold-water vibriosis or Hitra disease caused by *V. salmonicida*; winter ulcers caused by *Vibrio* spp.; furunculosis, caused by *Aeromonas salmonicida*; yersiniosis, caused by *Yersinia ruckeri*; myxobacteriosis, caused by *Cytophaga-Flexibacter* spp.; and systemic diseases such as salmonid rickettsial septicemia or piscirickettsiosis, caused by rickettsias, in particular *Piscirickettsia salmonis*. All salmon species reared in netpens are susceptible to these bacterial diseases, but some diseases are more problematic in certain species than in others. For example, chinook, coho, and sockeye salmon appear to be more susceptible to BKD than Atlantic salmon, whereas furunculosis and myxobacteriosis are more of a problem in Atlantic salmon than in Pacific salmon species.

Bacterial diseases probably cause more mortality in pen-reared salmon than diseases due to other infectious agents. However, unlike most other diseases of fish, there are commercially-available drugs that may be effective for treating bacterial diseases. In addition, BKD and furunculosis can be managed to a certain extent by screening fish and avoiding infections, and efficacious vaccines are available for vibriosis, furunculosis, and yersiniosis.

## Bacterial Kidney Disease

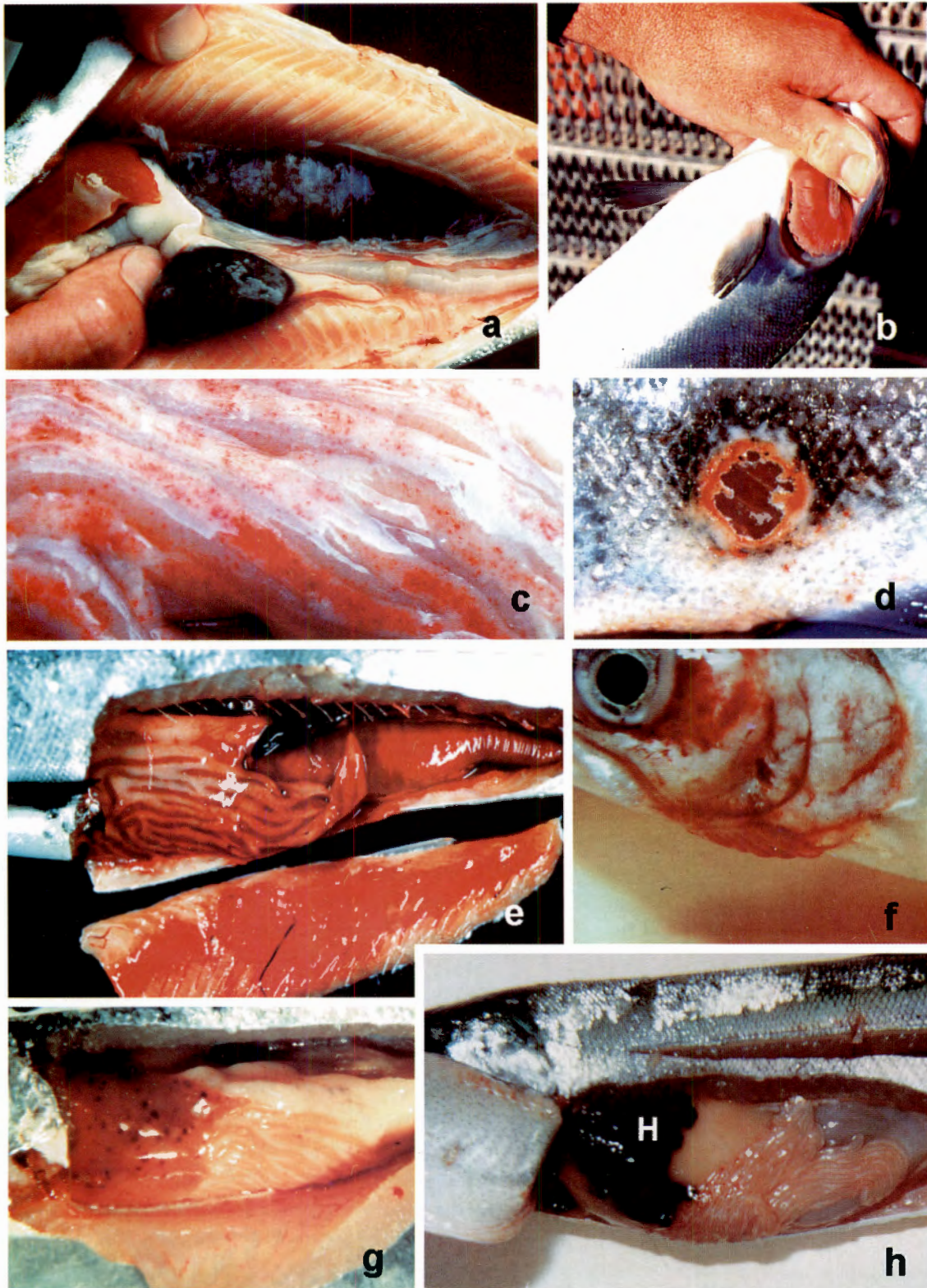
Bacterial kidney disease is probably the most significant cause of mortality in pen-reared chinook and coho salmon, but Atlantic salmon are also susceptible to the disease, although to a lesser degree (Brackett et al. 1991). In addition, sockeye, pink, and chum salmon are extremely susceptible to BKD (Brett et al. 1978; Evelyn 1988a), but these species have thus far been reared in netpens mostly on an experimental basis. The causative agent, *Renibacterium salmoninarum*, is a non-motile Gram-positive bacterium that infects inflammatory cells, primarily macrophages, and produces a systemic infection. It induces severe, chronic inflammation in the kidney, other visceral organs, the eye, brain, and to a lesser extent the muscle.

All ages of salmon are susceptible to BKD. The bacterium is

transmitted vertically through the egg (Bullock et al. 1978; Evelyn et al. 1988a). Clinical disease may occur in fresh water. In addition, fish can carry the infection with them to sea water, and may serve as a source of infection for their cohorts. In netpens, these fish may show clinical disease shortly after introduction to netpens. However, most epizootics start in the first winter following the introduction of the fish to netpens, and peak in the following spring. These epizootics are probably due to horizontal transmission of the pathogen from heavily infected older fish that are already on the farm when multiple year classes are reared at the same site. The seasonality of BKD appears to be diminishing, and outbreaks have been observed throughout the year.

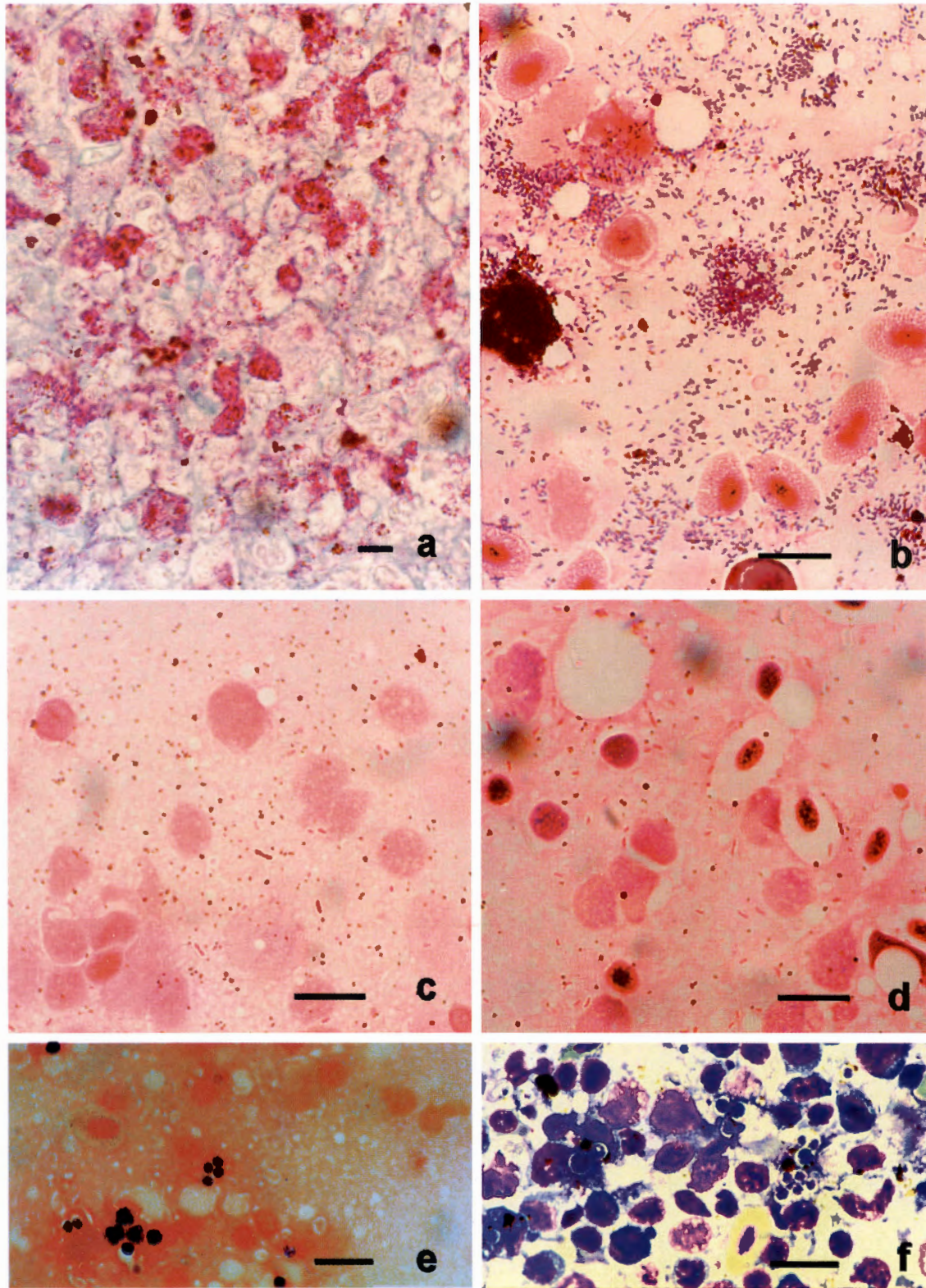
**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Fish with BKD can exhibit a variety of macroscopic changes, often depending on whether the disease is present in acute or chronic form, or on the primary location of the infection. Affected fish may be dark, lethargic, and exhibit a swollen abdomen due to ascites. Some fish may exhibit exophthalmus and other eye lesions, and multiple blood-filled blisters may be present on the skin. The latter are particularly common on fish undergoing sexual maturation, and is often referred to as "spawning rash" (Fig. 5-5). The gills are usually pale due to anemia (Fig. 5-1b). Internal examination usually reveals multifocal, greyish-white nodules in the kidney; these lesions may also occur in the spleen and liver (Fig. 5-1a). Some fish may exhibit only a few, very large granulomas, whereas others show miliary lesions throughout the viscera. Formation of a white, diffuse membranous layer (pseudocapsule) over the spleen and heart is also a frequent finding (Fig. 5-1a). In acute cases, where the lesions are very diffuse, the granulomas may not be visible to the naked eye. The kidney and spleen are usually enlarged, and serosanguineous or cloudy fluid often accumulates in the visceral cavity. Hemorrhages are often observed in the liver, intestine, pyloric fat, and muscle. Large, focal, cystic cavities may also occur in the skeletal muscle. In some cases, the meninges are the only tissues in the fish that are severely affected (Speare et al. 1993; Speare 1997). These fish usually exhibit spiralling or whirling swimming behavior, and usually show no macroscopic changes in the viscera.

## Bacterial Diseases



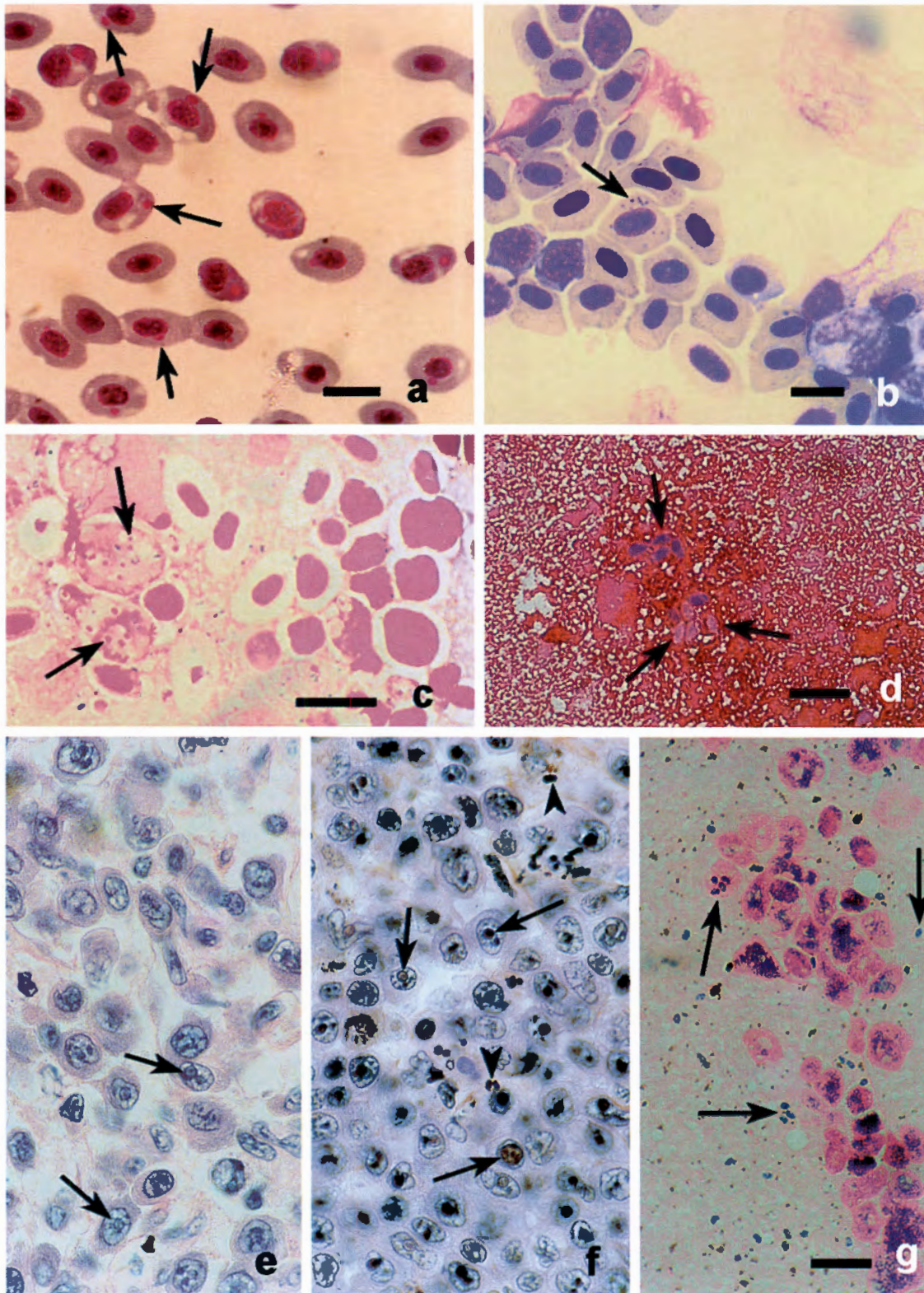
**Figure 5-1. a and b, Coho salmon with BKD.** a. The kidney is enlarged and has focal, white, granulomatous lesions, and a pseudocapsule covers the enlarged spleen b. Pale gills due to anemia. **c-e. Bacterial diseases in Atlantic salmon.** c. *Vibrio salmonicida* infection. Note petechial hemorrhage in the perivisceral fat between the pyloric caeca. d. Winter ulcer in

Atlantic salmon skin. e. Furunculosis. The viscera exhibits extensive hemorrhage and the lower intestine is enlarged. **f-h. Chinook salmon post-smolts with vibriosis.** f. Hemorrhages in the skin on the head and operculum. g. multifocal hemorrhages in the liver. h. large, coalescing hematomas (H) in the liver.



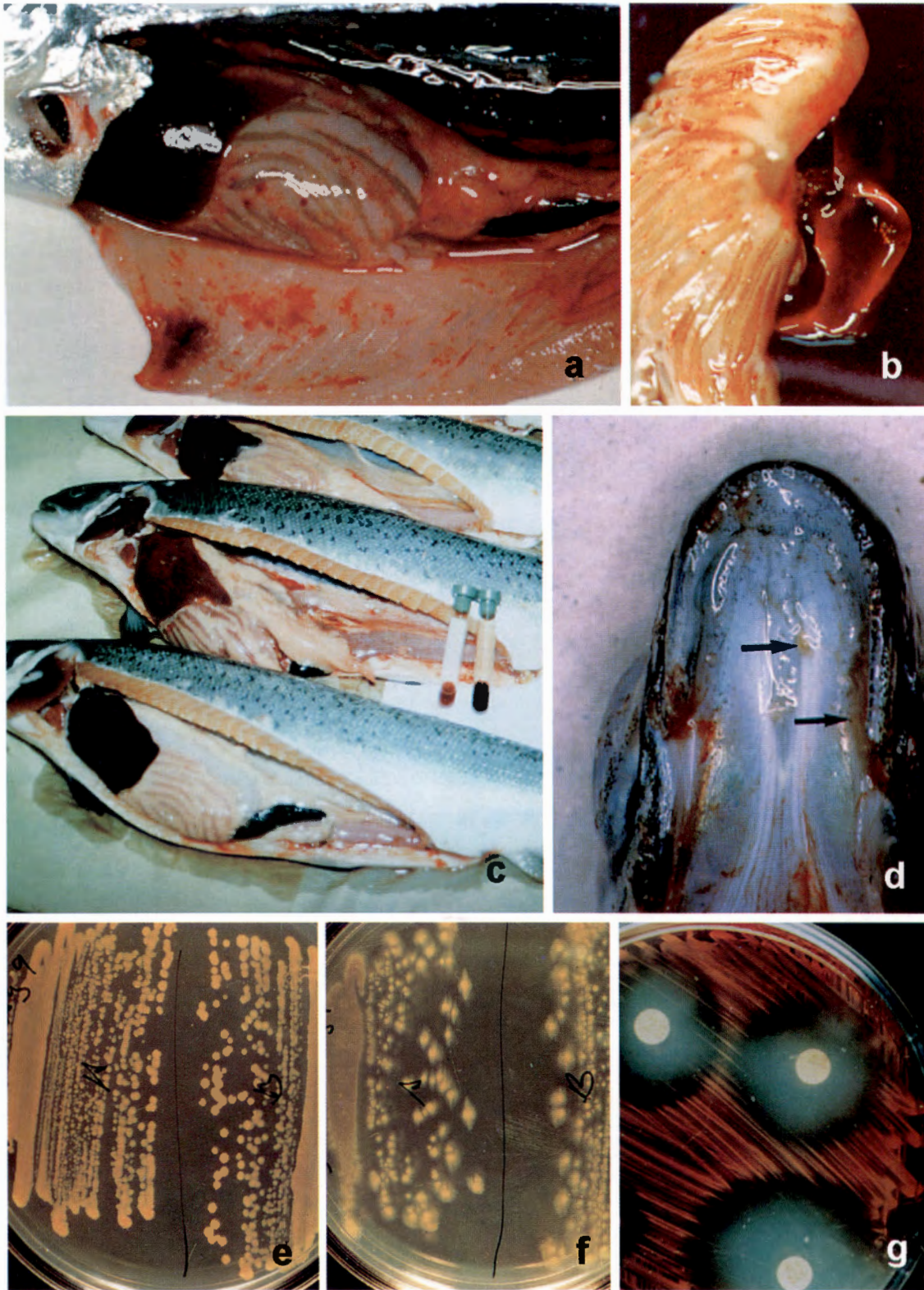
**Figure 5-2. Microbial pathogens of pen-reared salmon in tissue smears, imprints stained or histological sections from kidneys.** Bar = 10  $\mu$ m a. kidney section of chinook salmon with BKD stained with Periodic acid-Schiff (PAS). Note the PAS-

positive (red) bacteria in phagocytes in the kidney interstitium. b. *Renibacterium salmoninarum*, Gram. c. *Vibrio anguillarum*, Gram. d. *Aeromonas salmonicida*, Gram. e. rosette agent, Gram. f. rosette agent, Giemsa.



**Figure 5-3. Microbial pathogens (arrowheads) of pen-reared salmon in blood smears, imprints stained or histological sections.** Bar = 10  $\mu$ m. a. VEN inclusions in red blood cells, Giemsa. b. EIBS inclusions in red blood cells, Giemsa. c. *Piscirickettsia salmonis*, Gram stain of kidney imprints.

d. Spores of *Loma salmonae*, Gram stain of kidney imprints. e, f. *Nucleospora salmonis* in histological sections (arrows) e. H&E. f. Warthin-Starry/H&E. Arrowheads = spores. g. *Nucleospora salmonis*, Gram stain of kidney imprint.



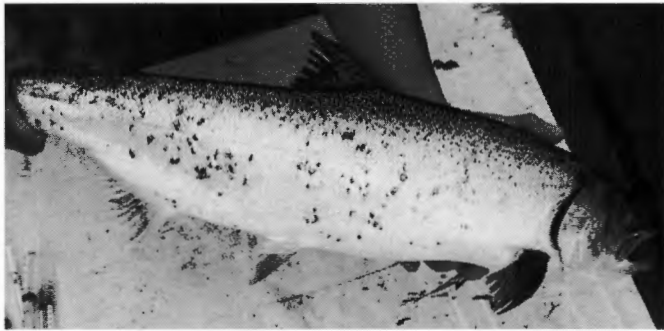
**Figure 54. Microbial infections and bacteria culture plates.**

a. IHN infection in Atlantic salmon. Note visceral hemorrhages.  
 b. Petechial hemorrhage in peripancreatic fat around pyloric caeca in Atlantic salmon with pancreas disease.  
 c. ISA in Atlantic salmon. Note dark livers of affected fish (upper and lower) compared to normal fish (middle).

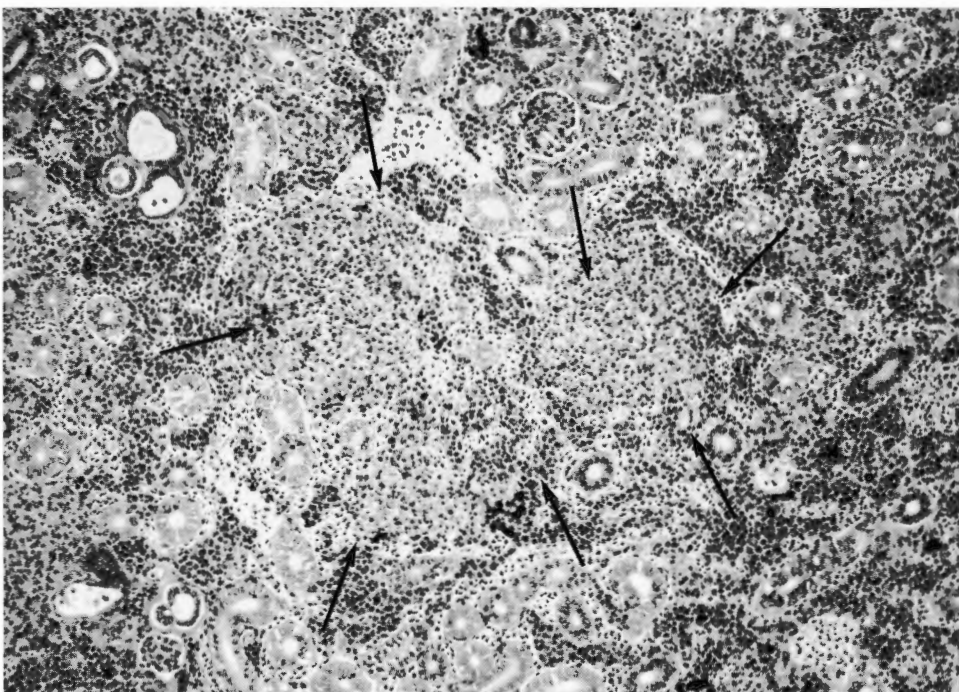
d. Myxobacterial "mouth rot." Note focal yellow nodules (arrows).  
 e f. Myxobacteria (*Cytophaga* sp.) from Atlantic salmon skin lesions.  
 e. Bacteria grown on Marine Agar (Difco).  
 f. Bacteria grown on Seawater *Cytophaga* medium.  
 g. *Aeromonas salmonicida* grown on tryptic soy agar. Note the diffusible, brown pigment.

## Bacterial Diseases

**MICROSCOPY.** Gram-stained smears of infected organs from fish with clinical BKD exhibit numerous, small (0.5 X 1  $\mu$ m) Gram-positive bacilli, many of which occur in aggregates within phagocytic cells (Fig. 5-2b). Histologically, BKD is best described as a bacteremia, characterized by systemic, diffuse chronic inflammation (Wolke 1975; Bruno 1986). Multifocal, coalescing granulomas are found in all affected tissues (Fig. 5-6). In Pacific salmon, the granulomas are diffuse with poorly defined borders, whereas the granulomas in Atlantic salmon are more encapsulated and contain numerous epithelioid cells. Caseation may occur in the centers of older granulomas, giving rise to cystic lesions. Tissue sections stained with Periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) will readily reveal the organism within phagocytic cells in the granulomas (Fig. 5-2a). With brain infections, the bacterium localizes in the meninges where it occurs in ependymal cells (Speare et al. 1993).



**Figure 5-5.** Sexually maturing chinook salmon with "spawning rash" caused by *Renibacterium salmoninarum* (Courtesy of D. Elliott).



**Figure 5-6.** Tissue section of kidney from a chinook salmon with BKD. Note the granulomas (demarcated by arrows) in the kidney interstitium demarcated by arrows. H & E.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Presumptive diagnosis is achieved by observing the characteristic granulomatous lesions in affected fish. However, other pathogens may cause granulomatous lesions (e.g., *Ichthyophonus hoferi*, *Ceratomyxa shasta*, encysted metazoan parasites). In addition, not all fish with BKD exhibit macroscopically visible granulomas. Therefore, confirmatory diagnosis of the disease is based on the detection of the bacterium in either Gram-stained smears or PAS-stained tissue sections along with the characteristic histological changes.

A number of diagnostic tests have been developed to detect the bacterium in subclinical infections. Serological methods such as the indirect and direct fluorescent antibody tests (IFAT and DFAT) (Bullock and Stuckey 1975a; Bullock et al 1980) have been used to screen smolts for the infection before their transfer to sea water, and the ovarian fluid or kidney tissue of ripe females has been examined using these methods to avoid the taking of infected eggs. Elliott and Barila (1987) described a membrane filtration technique to enhance the detection of the bacterium from coelomic fluid. This test is extremely sensitive, and is about 100 times less likely to overlook the presence of the pathogen in the coelomic fluid than the serological tests mentioned above (Lee and Evelyn, unpubl. data). Cvitanich (1994) developed a quantitative DFAT test (QFAT) which has been used by several fish farms in British Columbia to assess the status of *R. salmoninarum* infections in selected populations.

An ELISA test to detect *R. salmoninarum* antigens in fish tissues has also been developed by Pascho and Mulcahy (1987). This test and its many variants are very sensitive and are particularly well adapted for screening large numbers of fish for the presence of the pathogen. The test has proved useful for selecting brood stock or smolts that are free of *R. salmoninarum*, and provides the basis for avoiding infections with the bacterium (Pascho et al. 1991).

More recently, tests based on the polymerase chain reaction (PCR), have been developed for detecting the bacterium in fish tissues. The PCR tests, although not yet used

routinely for this purpose, appear to be highly sensitive and specific (see for example, Brown et al. 1994; Brown et al. 1995; Pascho et al. 1998). Interestingly, our recent studies using kidney samples from moribund chinook salmon to compare the sensitivity of ELISA and PCR have shown them to yield comparable results. The occasional fish negative by PCR but positive by ELISA turned out to have only brain infections (Kent et al. unpubl. data). In addition, some low or borderline positives by ELISA are proving negative by PCR. The ELISA test detects a soluble antigen produced by the bacterium (the p57 protein), and Pascho et al. (1997) demonstrated that this antigen can persist in salmon for many months in the absence of the bacterium. This observation may also account for discrepancies seen between the ELISA and PCR. Until this discrepancy is resolved, it is probably best to be conservative and to regard such samples as positive.

*Renibacterium salmoninarum* can be cultured on enriched media, such as KDM-2 (Evelyn 1977) or charcoal agar (Daly and Stevenson 1985). Evelyn et al. (1989; 1990) developed special culture techniques for enhancing the growth of this fastidious and slow-growing bacterium, thus greatly increasing the speed and sensitivity with which the bacterium can be cultured. Notwithstanding this, culture cannot be recommended as a routine method for detecting the infection. It is a lengthy procedure and overgrowth of the culture plates with fast-growing contaminating bacteria and fungi often occurs even when antibiotics for suppressing these contaminants are included in the culture medium (Austin et al. 1983).

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT:** Elliott et al. (1989) and Evelyn (1993) recently reviewed control strategies for BKD. Vaccines affective against BKD are lacking and the disease is difficult to treat with antibiotics. Oral treatment with erythromycin phosphate is efficacious for BKD (Groman and Klontz 1983; Austin 1985), but does not eliminate the infection from all fish (Wolf and Dunbar 1959; Austin 1985). In addition, fish may reject feed medicated with erythromycin, which may reduce the effectiveness of the drug (Schreck and Moffitt 1987). Furthermore, this drug is too expensive to use for production fish in netpens and it is not licensed for use in food fishes. Because of cost-considerations, oral treatment with oxytetracycline has routinely been used to treat BKD in netpens throughout the Pacific Northwest. However, reports on well-controlled studies to evaluate the efficacy of oxytetracycline for controlling BKD in netpens appear to be lacking.

Injection of erythromycin is useful for controlling BKD in brood stock and for preventing egg-mediated parent-to-

progeny (vertical) transmission of the bacterium (Lee and Evelyn 1994). Fish are injected medially between the epaxial muscles, just anterior to the dorsal fin, with 80 mg erythromycin/kg fish 9 - 57 d before spawning. Eggs from female treated in this manner contain levels of antibiotic sufficient to kill the bacterium in eggs. As an additional precaution, eggs from treated broodstock should be surface-disinfected with an iodophore (100 ppm iodine for 15 min) to eliminate the pathogen on the egg surface.

To summarize, the best way to control BKD is to avoid the infection. Ideally, eggs from infected females should not be used. In addition, because no diagnostic test will detect all infected brood stock, the females serving as sources of eggs should be injected with erythromycin as described shortly before spawning. Resulting fry should be reared in freshwater that is not contaminated by infected fish, and, if practical, only smolts that are apparently free of the pathogen should be transferred to netpens.

Avoiding horizontal transmission in the netpens is also very important. Bacterial kidney disease is transmissible in sea water (Evelyn 1988a; Murray et al. 1992), and many smolts probably contract the infection from heavily infected fish of the previous year class that are maintained on the same site. Therefore, it is highly advisable to maintain single year class sites.

### Vibriosis

(caused by *Vibrio anguillarum* and *V. ordalii*)

Vibriosis is a systemic disease that affects many marine fishes and invertebrates (Anderson and Conroy 1970; Colwell and Grimes 1984; Egidius 1987). Frerichs and Roberts (1989) considered vibriosis to be the most significant disease of wild and cultured marine and brackish water fishes. In salmonids, typical vibriosis is caused by *Vibrio anguillarum* or *V. ordalii*. Diseases caused by other vibrios (e.g., cold-water vibriosis or Hitra disease, caused by *V. salmonicida*, and winter ulcers disease caused by *Vibrio* spp.) are dealt with separately under their own headings.

*Vibrio anguillarum* accounts for almost all of the outbreaks of vibriosis in farmed salmon worldwide, but in the Pacific Northwest and New Zealand where *V. ordalii* also occurs, infrequent and sporadic outbreaks of vibriosis due to this bacterium have been reported (Evelyn 1971; Harrell et al. 1976; Novotny 1978; Schiewe et al. 1981; Wards et al. 1991). *Vibrio ordalii* has also been reported from diseased fish in Japan (Muroga et al. 1986), but to date it has not been reported there as a problem in pen-reared salmon.

*Vibrio anguillarum* has been intensively studied for many

## Bacterial Diseases

years because it is a major cause of vibriosis in a wide range of fish species worldwide. Unlike *V. ordalii*, strains which form a homogenous group, *V. anguillarum* strains show much heterogeneity. This heterogeneity is both phenotypic (Tajima et al. 1985) and serotypic (Kitao et al. 1984; Tajima et al. 1985; Sorenson and Larsen 1986). Fortunately, the strains of *V. anguillarum* that cause vibriosis in pen-reared salmon worldwide represent only one or two serotypes (based on the "O" antigens present). This greatly facilitates serological identification of the organism in disease outbreaks and it also simplifies the formulation of anti-vibriosis vaccines for controlling vibriosis.

Vibriosis can cause high, acute mortality in unvaccinated smolts, and mortalities as high as 90% have been reported (Cisar and Fryer 1969). Although all *Vibrio* species, except *V. cholera*, are considered to be marine bacteria, outbreaks of vibriosis occasionally occur in freshwater-reared salmon. The source of the bacterium in freshwater situations is not always clear, but in some instances it was obviously a diet that was formulated with marine products (reviewed by Evelyn 1988b). Vibriosis outbreaks are favored by temperatures between about 15 and 21 °C, and most outbreaks occur in smolts during their first summer in sea water. Vibriosis in the Pacific Northwest is mainly a problem of Pacific salmon (e.g., chinook and coho), but Atlantic salmon are also susceptible. Interestingly, however, all cases of vibriosis due to *V. ordalii* in pen-reared salmon reported to date have involved Pacific salmon.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Mortality caused by vibriosis may be very severe and rapid, and moribund fish in such cases may exhibit no gross pathological changes other than darkening and lethargy. Hemorrhagic abscesses are often seen in Atlantic salmon with vibriosis in Europe. As typical of septicemias caused by Gram-negative bacteria, fish with vibriosis may exhibit erythema at the base of the fins, petechiae in the skin, and frank hemorrhages on the body surface (Fig. 5-1f). Fish may also exhibit bilateral exophthalmia and frayed fins. Internally, congestion and petechiae are usually evident in the visceral organs, particularly in the gut and liver (Fig. 5-1g). Large, multiple coalescing hematomas in the liver (piliosis hepatis) are often seen in vibriosis (Fig. 5-1h). These lesions are very characteristic of vibriosis, but may also occur with a few other diseases (e.g., ISA). Affected fish also exhibit pallor of the gills (due to anemia) and enlargement of the spleen and kidney.

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological changes are consistent with septicemia caused by Gram-negative bacteria. With *V.*

*anguillarum*, the bacterium occurs as single cells that are distributed throughout the vasculature. Necrosis and edema are associated with the infection in well-vascularized organs such as the liver, kidney, and spleen. Increased deposition of hemosiderin may be observed in the kidney interstitium and spleen. Fish may also exhibit severe cardiomyopathy. *Vibrio ordalii* infections, on the other hand, are characterized by focal lesions, and large colonies of the bacterium may be observed in the affected tissues.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Presumptive diagnosis is possible by macroscopic examination if the characteristic hematomas in the liver are present (Fig. 5-1h), and the causative Gram-negative bacilli are usually easy to detect in Gram-stained kidney smears (Fig. 5-2c). The other gross and clinical changes are not specific to vibriosis and are associated with a number of bacterial or viral systemic diseases. Confirmatory diagnosis is based on culture and identification of the causative organism from the kidney of suspect fish. Both *V. anguillarum* and *V. ordalii* are easily cultured on Tryptic Soy Agar with 1.5 % NaCl or on Marine Agar (Difco) at room temperature. Bacterial colonies are round, raised, and off-white in color. *Vibrio ordalii* grows more slowly than *V. anguillarum* and forms smaller colonies. Pure cultures of the suspect bacteria can be distinguished from one another using biochemical tests (Schiewe et al. 1981; Tajima et al. 1985; Scalati and Kusuda 1986). API-20E test strips (Analytab Co., Analytab Products, Plainview, NY, USA) can be used for rapid and easy identification of marine vibrios from fish (Kent 1982; Grisez et al. 1991). Using the API-20E test, *Vibrio anguillarum* is distinguished from other Gram-negative bacteria causing disease in fish by the following criteria: the bacterium yields positive oxidase, Voges-Proskauer, and gelatinase reactions; ferments sucrose, sorbitol, and arabinose; does not grow at 40 °C; and does not produce gas. *Vibrio ordalii*, in contrast, is Voges-Proskauer negative and does not ferment sorbitol or arabinose. Both bacteria are sensitive to the vibriostatic compound O/129 vibriostat (2:4 diamino 6:7 diisopropyl pteridine). These bacteria can also be identified serologically using slide agglutination tests. Rabbit antisera required for the tests are available commercially (Microtek-Bayer, Sidney, British Columbia). Interestingly, immunofluorescence tests applied directly to vibrio-infected tissues cannot be used for rapid diagnosis of the disease (Evelyn, T. P.T., unpubl. data). Apparently salmonid tissues (including tissues from naive fish) contain substances that block receptor sites on the vibrios that would normally react with the vibrio-specific antibodies in the diagnostic antisera.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Vibriosis in pen-reared salmon is best controlled by prevention, and vaccines for this purpose are commercially available. Vaccination is best carried out on fish that have attained immunocompetent size (at least 5-10 g) and before they are introduced to netpens. The vaccines are conveniently administered by immersion methods, and if applied properly, they afford excellent protection (Evelyn 1984; 1988b). Failures of protection in vaccinated Pacific salmon, particularly with chinook, have occurred at a number of fish farms in British Columbia. The precise cause of these failures has not been determined, but the most likely explanation is that the fish may have been vaccinated before they were immunocompetent. Some farms have gone to revaccinating fish shortly after introduction to netpens, and results with revaccination in sea water have been promising. Revaccination should, however, be conducted with caution because the handling of fish shortly after their introduction to sea water may be very stressful. Although vaccination by immersion is feasible, the most recent trend is to administer the vaccine by intraperitoneal injection, usually in combination with other vaccines, e.g., with furunculosis vaccines which are most effective when injected. Injection of Atlantic and coho salmon smolts prior to seawater introduction has never been a problem because the smolts are large enough to be readily handled. However, until the technology for producing chinook salmon "super smolts" was widely available, the injection of chinook smolts was problematic. Multivalent vaccines administered by injection are being increasingly used because they can be formulated to protect against the particular diseases of concern and to contain adjuvants and immunomodulators which help to ensure that the vaccines produce a strong and durable protection.

Antibacterial drugs incorporated in feed are available for treating vibriosis, e.g., oxytetracycline, potentiated sulphonamides, quinolones, and florfenicol. Treatment is usually efficacious if the disease is recognized early, if the fish are still actively feeding, and if care is taken to select a drug to which the pathogen is still sensitive. However, in some countries not all of the drugs have been approved for use in fish intended for human consumption. Thus control of vibriosis should be effected primarily via an anti-vibriosis vaccination program.

### **Coldwater vibriosis (Hitra Disease)**

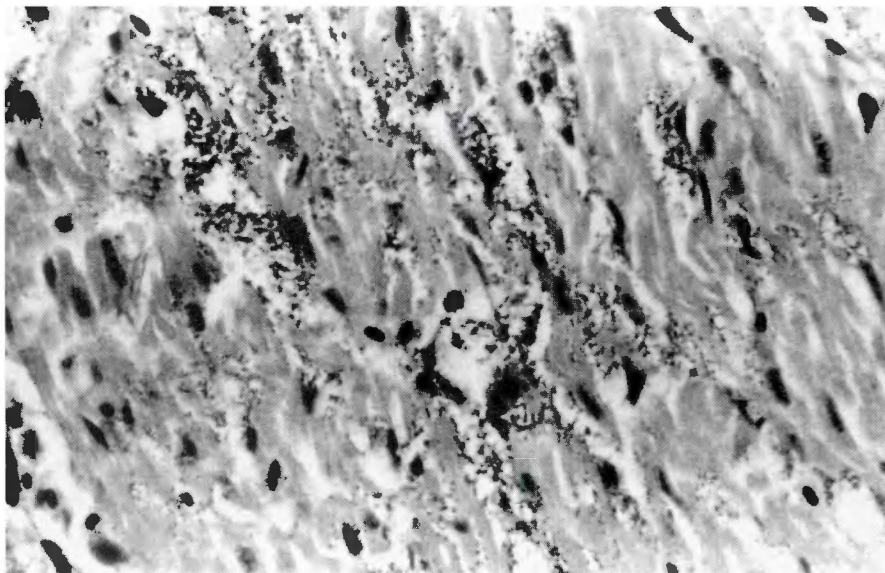
Coldwater vibriosis is a bacterial septicemia caused by the psychrophilic *Vibrio salmonicida*. After its first occurrence in farmed Atlantic salmon in northern Norway in 1977 (Egidius et

al. 1981), it has since been diagnosed in most fish-farming areas in Norway as well as in salmon-producing countries surrounding the North Atlantic (Bruno et al. 1986) and eastern Canada and the United States (O'Halloran and Henry 1993). The disease is also known as "Hitra disease" after severe outbreaks occurred in the Hitra region in Mid-Norway in the early eighties. The most severe outbreaks typically occur at low temperatures during the winter months, but may occur throughout the year. Although no toxins have been identified, the role of *V. salmonicida* in the etiology of the disease is unquestionable, but the role of environmental stress and nutrition should not be neglected. Although the bacterium may cause disease in other fish, such as Atlantic cod (Jørgensen et al. 1989), serious losses were first noted in farmed Atlantic salmon.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Clinical signs may be unspecific, but usually include lethargy and cessation of feeding. Affected fish turn darker, exhibit exophthalmia, a swollen vent, and pin-point hemorrhages along the belly and at the base of the pectoral, pelvic, and anal fins. The gills are usually pale. Internally, ascites and petechial hemorrhage in perivisceral fat, pyloric caeca, peritoneal surfaces, liver, and swimbladder are typical findings (Fig. 5-1c). The swimbladder may be filled with a blood-tinged fluid and the liver typically has a yellowish discoloration, sometimes with hemorrhage. In chronic cases, skin ulceration, fin rot, and a pseudomembranous peritonitis and epicarditis may also be found. The spleen is usually slightly lighter than normal in color. Hemorrhagic discoloration of the posterior gut occurs frequently.

**MICROSCOPY.** Direct microscopy using phase contrast from ascitic fluid, swim-bladder contents, and blood reveals motile rod-shaped bacteria. The bacteria are also commonly seen in histological sections (Fig. 5-7). The bacterium may be found in high numbers in muscle and heart where it typically occurs between the outer compact and the inner spongy myocardium, but also in organs like kidney, spleen, and liver. There is usually extensive myocardial and muscle degeneration where the bacteria are found as loose aggregates or individual cells with the Giemsa stain (Fjølstad and Heyeraas 1985). There is also hemorrhage and necrosis with sloughing of the gut mucosa.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis is based on isolation of *V. salmonicida* on 1.5 or 2% NaCl supplemented blood agar or TSA at 15 °C. Standard biochemical tests, including sensitivity



**Figure 5-7.** *Vibrio salmonicida* in Atlantic salmon. Histological section showing bacteria in necrotic muscle. Giemsa.

to the vibriostatic agent 0/129 and novobiocin usually identify the bacterium (Holm et al. 1985). The diagnosis is confirmed serologically using fluorescent antibody tests or agglutination. Microscopical demonstration of the bacterium in Giemsa-stained smears and muscle sections and immunohistochemistry (Evensen et al. 1991b) are useful for locating the organism.

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL.** *Vibrio salmonicida* is not considered as a very pathogenic bacterium and a massive exposure is required to infect the fish. As with other diseases, optimization of the environment and reduction of stressors, in particular during the winter months, are important measures to avoid outbreaks. Multivalent vaccines protecting against furunculosis, vibriosis, and cold-water vibriosis give excellent protection provided the vaccination programs are carried out in a proper way. Nevertheless, outbreaks do occur in properly vaccinated fish, particularly in northern Norway. Although the bacterium occurs commonly in the water and sediments close to cages, its numbers escalate during outbreaks and it is therefore important to isolate diseased fish from healthy fish (Enger et al. 1989).

The bacterium will normally respond to several antimicrobials, but it is important to start medication early, particularly during the winter months when the appetite is low and the fish go off the feed very easily. The sensitivity profile of the bacteria in the farm should be monitored regularly in order to start feeding with the best medicated feed as soon as possible.

### Winter Ulcers

Winter ulcers is a serious problem in farmed Atlantic salmon, particularly in smolts put to sea in the autumn. This condition

may lead to severe mortality during the first winter in seawater, but also causes considerable losses due to downgrading or rejection during processing. The sores typically occur during the cold winter months, but may also be observed at other times of the year. Although two vibrios have been associated with the disease (*Vibrio vulnificus* and *V. wodanis*), reduced osmoregulatory abilities at low temperatures obviously plays an important role in the development of the disease. Thrombosis of capillaries at low temperatures with subsequent vesicle formation and later disruption have also been shown to be involved in the pathogenesis (Salte et al. 1994).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Mortality may be slightly elevated in affected stocks. In advanced stages, the fish may become lethargic and congregate near the corners of the cages. The size of the ulcers may vary from pin-head to hand-sized and are typically located on the flanks of the fish (Fig. 5-1d). The transition zone towards normal skin may be hyperemic or hemorrhagic. When the ulcers heal with increasing temperatures, a white granulation tissue may grow in from the margins.

**MICROSCOPY.** Histology of exposed subcutaneous tissue or muscle shows with moderate to pronounced infiltration of inflammatory cells in loose connective tissue. There is often extensive muscle degeneration of the exposed muscle and numerous bacteria may be seen in the connective tissue and degenerated muscle close to the ulcers.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis is based upon the characteristic ulcers that should be differentiated from physically inflicted wounds and ulcers caused by other bacteria.

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL.** Treatment with medicated feeds alleviates the problem temporarily, but mortalities tend to increase again some time after cessation of the medication. Recent results show that the addition of urea to the feed reduces the osmotic stress on the salmon in winter indicating that osmoregulatory dysfunction may be an important component of the disease.

**Furunculosis**

Furunculosis is a septicemic disease caused by the Gram-negative bacterium *Aeromonas salmonicida*. Excellent reviews (McCarthy and Roberts 1980; Paterson 1982; Austin and Austin 1987; Hastings 1988) and a new book (edited by Bernoth et al. 1997) on the disease and the causative agent are available. The disease has long been recognized as a serious problem in freshwater-reared salmonids. With the increase in netpen farming, it has also become a serious disease of salmonids reared in sea water, particularly in Atlantic salmon. Like BKD, infected fish can carry the infection into sea water, and horizontal transmission can occur in netpens (Smith et al. 1982). The disease is favored by high or rising temperatures, but it has occurred in netpens in the Pacific Northwest at temperatures as low as 6 °C. *Aeromonas salmonicida* has been reported from a large number of fishes, including marine species, and it is generally held that infected fish are the chief reservoirs of infection. This view is supported by the fact that fish may be cultured without the disease if water supplies to the culture facility are free of fishes that carry the pathogen. Notwithstanding this, survival of the pathogen outside of the host in fresh water, freshwater sediments, and sea water can be quite extensive (Rose et al. 1989, 1990). These properties of the bacterium probably explain why horizontal infections in fresh and sea water occur, even when the sites involved are separated (Munro et al. 1990). The overwhelming body of evidence indicates that the bacterium is not transmitted from parent to progeny via the eggs (vertically transmitted).

Three subspecies of the bacterium are currently recognized in Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology, all of them having been reported as causing infections in

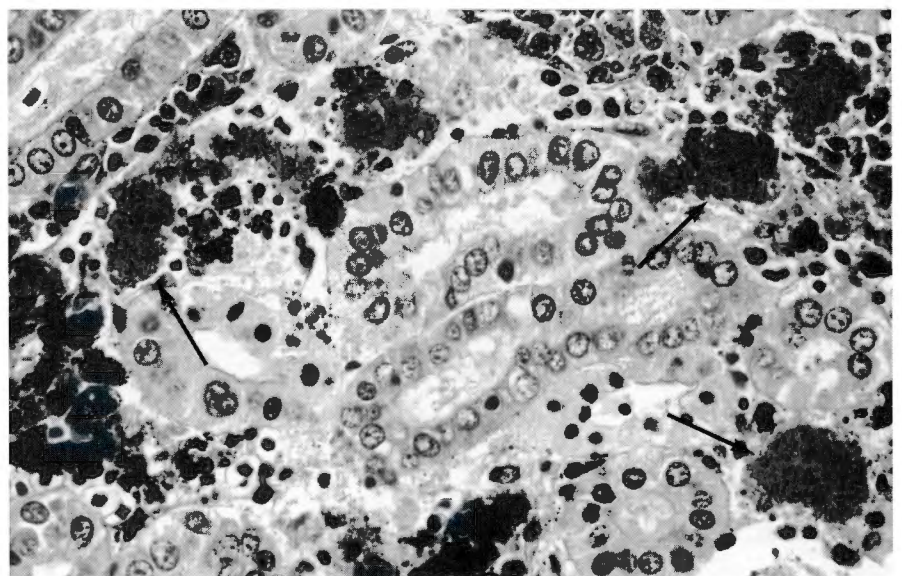
salmonids. In pen-reared salmon in the Pacific Northwest, however, only one subspecies has thus far been encountered as a problem: *A. salmonicida* subsp. *salmonicida*. This subspecies is the one most frequently involved in furunculosis outbreaks in pen-reared salmon world-wide. It produces a diffusing brown pigment when cultured on Tryptic Soy Agar (Fig. 5-4g), a property that helps with the diagnosis of furunculosis.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Fish with furunculosis may exhibit a wide spectrum of clinical and gross pathological changes, largely depending on whether the infection occurs in acute or chronic form. Early in more acute forms of the disease, fish may exhibit anorexia, darkening of the skin and lethargy. Later, fish exhibit hemorrhages and reddening of the skin and fins. In more chronic cases, fish exhibit "furuncles" (i.e., vesicles containing serosanguineous fluid that underlie the skin) or large, bloody ulcers.

Internally, fish exhibit diffuse reddening, hemorrhages in the visceral organs, and enlargement of the spleen (Fig. 5-1e).

**MICROSCOPY.** The most striking histological change in furunculosis is the lack of an inflammatory response to the infection. Colonies of the causative bacterium, associated with focal necrosis, are readily detected in the spleen, liver, kidney interstitium, myocardium, and gills (Fig. 5-8).

**DIAGNOSIS.** The presence of large, focal colonies of short bacilli in tissue sections can be used as a strong presumptive diagnosis of furunculosis. However, diagnosis of furunculosis is most often achieved by isolation of *A. salmonicida* from the kidney or other suspect fish tissues followed by serologic or phenotypic identification of the isolated bacterium. The



**Figure 5-8.** Colonies of *Aeromonas salmonicida* (arrows) in the kidney of chinook salmon. H & E.

## Bacterial Diseases

widespread use of this rather slow diagnostic approach is probably due to the fact that the bacterium is easily cultured and one normally has to await the results of antibiotic sensitivity testing (which requires culturing the bacterium) if decisions are to be made on the antibiotic of choice for treating infections with the bacterium. Alternatively, the diagnosis may be more rapidly accomplished by a variety of sensitive and specific tests, applied directly to suspect fish tissues. For example, immunofluorescence techniques, ELISAs (see, for example, Yoshimizu et al. 1993; Hiney et al. 1994), and PCR assays (see, for example, Miyata et al. 1996; Hoie et al. 1997) have been developed by a number of laboratories for detecting the pathogen, but the procedures have usually been employed in connection with specialized environmental or epizootiological studies involving the pathogen rather than for the routine diagnosis of *A. salmonicida* infections.

*Aeromonas salmonicida* subsp. *salmonicida* grows readily on Tryptic Soy Agar, producing visible growth within 2-3 days at room temperature along with a characteristic brown pigment that diffuses into the growth medium (Fig. 5-4g). Serological identification of the isolate can be achieved using a latex bead agglutination kit (Microtek R & D, Ltd, Victoria, B.C.). Also, the standard slide agglutination technique has been frequently employed for this purpose but its use is contraindicated because the bacterium autoagglutinates (i.e., is self agglutinating even in the absence of *A. salmonicida* antiserum). Phenotypic features for identifying the isolate are as follows: it is a short (approximately 1 X 2  $\mu$ m), Gram-negative, non-motile rod; ferments glucose with the production of acid and gas; is oxidase positive; and does not grow at 37 °C.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Furunculosis is a difficult disease to control. Significant protection against the disease can, however, be achieved using vaccination, and this is the method of choice for controlling the disease. The vaccines that have proved most effective are ones that are intraperitoneally injected. These vaccines are commercially available, are usually formulated to contain oil-based adjuvants and/or immunomodulators, and are often administered along with other vaccines, e.g., anti-vibriosis and/or anti-coldwater vibriosis vaccines, as appropriate.

Despite vaccination, farmers sometimes have to resort to chemotherapy to control furunculosis. However, the pathogen often becomes resistant to antibiotics routinely used for treating the disease (Romet-30, oxytetracycline, and oxolinic acid) (Hastings and McKay 1987), and outbreaks often recur shortly after treatment has terminated. In addition, mixed infections can occur, in which some fish are infected with antibiotic

sensitive strains of *A. salmonicida*, while others from the same population are infected with resistant bacteria. Therefore, the search for antibacterial agents effective against the bacterium is a continuing one (Inglis and Richards 1992) and it is important to culture several fish in an affected population when determining the antibiotic of choice for treating a particular outbreak.

Probably the best way to control furunculosis is to avoid using smolts with a history of the infection, and to place these smolts on farms where they represent the only year class present. Smolts free of the pathogen can be produced by using surface-disinfected eggs and by raising the fry in water from a source that does not contain wild or cultured fishes. (Note: the pathogen is not transmitted within salmonid eggs; surface disinfection of the eggs is used to avoid the possibility that the eggs may be surface-contaminated with the pathogen). As an additional precaution, apparently healthy smolts may be tested for absence of the bacterium prior to seawater introduction with a stress test (Bullock and Stuckey 1975b; McCarthy and Roberts 1980). The test facilitates detection of the pathogen in healthy "carrier" fish and involves injecting the fish with an immunosuppressive compound (e.g., prednisolone acetate) and holding the fish for 3 wk at 18°C before attempting to isolate the bacterium.

## Yersiniosis

Yersiniosis or enteric redmouth disease (ERM) caused by the Gram-negative bacterium *Yersinia ruckeri* has been a well-known problem to the trout-farming industry in the USA since 1950 (Bullock et al. 1971), and has since been described from at least 20 countries. The bacterium is described from several different fish species under different environmental conditions indicating a widespread occurrence. Although initially regarded as a problem in freshwater aquaculture, yersiniosis has also caused considerable problems in seawater netpens.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** In seawater, the characteristic hemorrhages in the mouth and jaw areas are usually lacking and the disease manifests itself as a rather unspecific septicemic condition. Affected fish may be darker than normal and show reduced activity. Skin hemorrhage and exophthalmos may also be evident. Additional gross signs may include congestion, ascites, splenomegaly, and pin point hemorrhages in visceral fat, muscle and on serosal surfaces. The gut contents may be watery or blood-tinged.

**MICROSCOPY.** Necrosis of hematopoietic tissue in the kidney and spleen occurs frequently as in other septicemic diseases. Focal necroses, venous and capillary congestion and hemorrhage may be seen in most affected organs, and bacterial colonies may be found subepithelially in the gills, in the myocardium (particularly between the outer compact and the inner spongy myocardium). Purulent epicarditis and meningitis have been found in isolated cases.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Isolation and identification of *Yersinia ruckeri*, a Gram-negative facultative anaerobic motile rod, is usually easily performed using standard bacteriological techniques (Austin and Austin 1993; Ewing et al. 1978; Waltman and Shotts 1984) or using a selective medium (Rodgers 1992). The diagnosis can also be based on immunohistochemistry techniques on formalin-fixed tissues from diseased fish.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Medicated feed with standard antibacterials commonly used in fish farming are usually effective. Sensitivity tests should be performed before treatment is started. The main source of infection is latent carriers, both among feral and farmed fish.

Effective vaccines are available, but their use has been abandoned in Norway as yersiniosis no longer represents a major problem. As the bacterium is very widespread in the aquatic environment, it is difficult to avoid contact. However, outbreaks are usually related to unfavourable environmental conditions, and clinical disease is not likely to occur as long as these are kept under control.

### **Myxobacteriosis**

*Cytophaga* and *Flexibacter* spp. are important bacterial pathogens of cultured fishes and usually cause external lesions in freshwater and marine species (Anderson and Conroy 1969; Pacha and Ordal 1970). *Flexibacter columnaris* and *C. psychrophila* (now *Flavobacterium columnare* and *Fl. psychrophilum*) (Bernardet et al. 1996) are well recognized pathogens of fishes reared in fresh water (Pacha and Ordal 1970; Snieszko and Bullock 1976). In marine aquaculture, infections by *Flexibacter maritimus* have been observed in Japanese flounder and sea breams (family Sparidae) in Japan (Baxa et al. 1986, 1987; Hikida et al. 1979; Masumura and Wakabayashi 1977; Wakabayashi et al. 1984, 1986) and Europe (Bernardet et al. 1990). In Tasmania, Handlinger et al. (1997) identified *F. maritimus* associated with skin and gill lesions in pen-reared Atlantic salmon and rainbow trout.

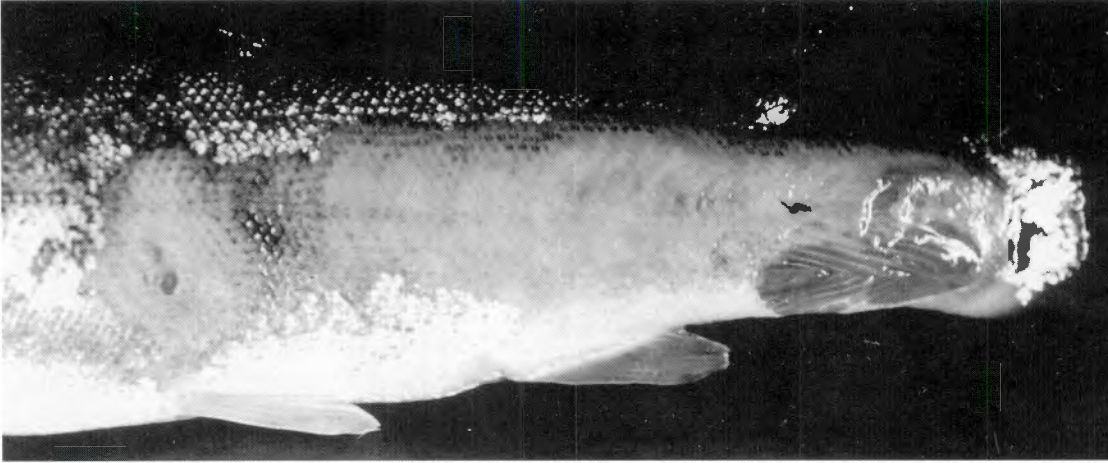
Proper taxonomic identifications have not been conducted on many *Cytophaga* and *Flexibacter* spp. that have been associated with disease in marine fishes. However, the study by Bernardet et al. (1996) which included a number of marine species, including *Flexibacter maritimus*, concluded that none of the marine forms belonged to the genus *Flavobacterium*. These bacteria are usually referred to as 'myxobacteria' by fish health workers and aquaculturists, but this is technically incorrect because these bacteria belong to the order Cytophagales, not the order Myxobacteria. It would, therefore, be more appropriate to refer to the marine forms using collective terms such as "cytophaga-flexibacter-like bacteria" or "gliding bacteria". However, to remain consistent with the common terminology and to avoid confusion, we continue to refer to these bacteria as myxobacteria in this text.

Myxobacteria have been associated with skin lesions in seawater-reared salmonids for many years (Borg 1960; Rucker 1963; Anderson and Conroy 1969; Wood 1974; Sawyer 1976). These bacteria have at times been identified as *Sporocytophaga* sp. However, the presence of microcysts (an important diagnostic feature of this genus) has not been clearly demonstrated in these isolates.

Two types of myxobacterial infections have been associated with high mortality in pen-reared Atlantic salmon in the Pacific Northwest; one type causes large skin ulcers, and the other causes lesions primarily in the mouth. Myxobacteria infections are also seen in pen-reared Pacific salmon, but are not usually associated with severe epizootics. In Pacific salmon, myxobacteria are usually associated with frayed fins and erosion of the tail.

### **Myxobacterial skin lesions in Atlantic salmon**

A *Cytophaga* sp. causes large skin lesions in Atlantic salmon smolts shortly after seawater entry (Kent et al. 1988a). Very similar skin lesions associated with *F. maritimus* infections were observed in pen-reared Atlantic salmon and rainbow trout in Tasmania (Handlinger et al. 1997). In the Pacific Northwest, lesions and associated mortalities usually peak at about 1-3 wk after introduction, and based on our observations, the disease subsides after about 3-4 wk. There appears to be a seasonality to the disease, and fish introduced later in the spring and summer usually exhibit fewer skin lesions. Infections are restricted to the skin and muscle. Fish with large lesions exhibit elevated plasma sodium levels (Kent et al. 1988a), which suggests that affected fish may ultimately die from an osmotic imbalance.



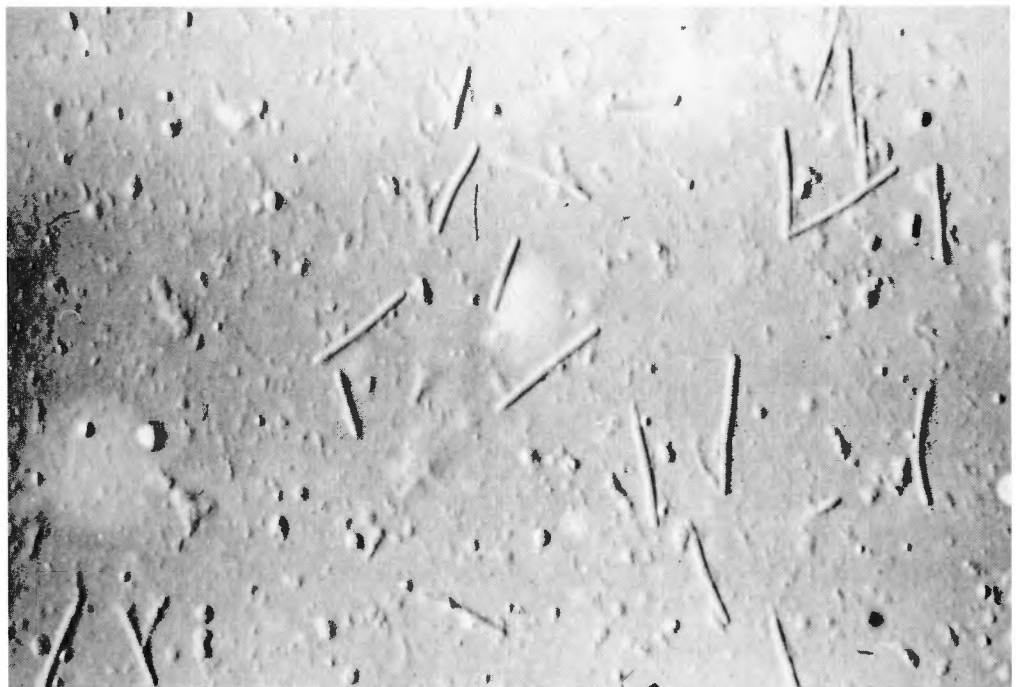
**Figure 5-9.** Myxobacterial skin infection; the dermis is exposed throughout on the flanks and the underlying muscle is exposed at the caudal peduncle.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Moribund fish exhibit large, white patches on the caudal peduncle and posterior region of the flanks when the dermis is intact. Infected fish may also exhibit more severe lesions in which areas of the skin are completely destroyed and the underlying muscle is exposed (Fig. 5-9).

**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mounts of the lesions reveal masses of filamentous bacteria (0.5-0.7 X 4-20  $\mu\text{m}$ ) (Fig. 5-10). Tissue sections of lesions where the skin is present reveals accumulations of filamentous bacteria on the surface of the skin, and throughout the epidermis and dermis. In more severely involved areas, large mats of filamentous bacteria replace the skin, and the bacteria invade deep into the underlying musculature. Affected muscle is hemorrhagic and necrotic, but little inflammation is observed. The bacterium is observed only in the muscle and skin, and tissue sections of the gills and visceral organs have revealed no bacteria or significant pathological changes (Kent et al. 1988a).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis of myxobacterial infections can usually be accomplished by observing large numbers of filamentous bacteria in wet mount preparations. Further

identification of bacteria can be accomplished by culture on either Cytophaga Medium (see Appendix III) made with 50% sterile sea water or Marine Agar (Difco), and incubation at approximately 15 °C. Isolation of myxobacteria in pure culture may be difficult from skin lesions due to contamination with other faster growing bacteria (e.g., vibrios). However, the lesions usually contain very large numbers of the myxobacteria and serial dilutions of affected tissue in sterile 50% sea water facilitates the isolation of the culprit bacteria in pure culture. The myxobacteria form small yellow-green, diffuse, rhizoid colonies on Cytophaga Medium (Fig. 5-4f), and yellow-orange, smooth colonies with entire margins on Marine Agar (Fig. 5-4e). More information on the characteristics of the myxobacteria isolated from Atlantic salmon skin lesions is found in Kent et al. (1988a). Reichenbach (1988) describes the characteristics of *Cytophaga* and *Flexibacter* spp. in general.



**Figure 5-10.** Myxobacteria (*Cytophaga* sp.) in a wet mount from a skin lesion of an Atlantic salmon.

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL.** External treatments with antibiotics are often used to control myxobacterial infections in fresh water, but such treatments are not usually practical in seawater netpens. These bacterial infections are often initiated in the skin where there are abrasions. Physical trauma during transport of smolts may allow the bacteria to establish an infection. Observations from fish farmers indicate that improved transport techniques and careful handling of fish greatly reduces the prevalence of the disease.

### **Myxobacterial Stomatitis in Atlantic salmon**

Infections of the mouth and snout by myxobacteria have been observed in Atlantic salmon smolts during their first summer in sea water. The condition has occurred at many netpen sites in the Pacific Northwest, and is often associated with high mortalities (Hicks 1989; Frelier et al. 1994; Anonymous 1996). Pen-reared Arctic char have also been afflicted with the infection. The infection appears to begin around the teeth. It has been suggested that the infection is initiated in periodontal tissue that has been abraded by feeding on spiny crustaceans such as crab larvae and *Caprella* amphipods. Other potential predisposing factors suggested by farmers that may lead to the infection are 1) feeding on hard pellets, 2) fish biting net surfaces, and 3) stress-induced lesions in the mouth. Fish farmers in British Columbia report the condition is particularly troublesome at farms with high salinity water.

Based on culture characteristics, the myxobacterium from mouth lesions appears to be a different organism than the myxobacterium causing skin lesions. A similar myxobacterial stomatitis has been observed in wild Atlantic cod in the North Sea (Hilger et al. 1991).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Infected fish are lethargic, emaciated, and anorexic, and some affected fish may exhibit flashing or head shaking. Early in the infection, examination of the mouth reveals focal, yellow bacterial mats around the palate and teeth, including the vomer (Fig. 5-4d). The lesions may be single, but the opposing surface is often affected (Frelier et al. 1994). As the disease progresses, affected fish show multiple ulcers in the mouth with large bacterial mats overlying the lesions. The lesions may extend to the branchial arches and proximal oesophagus, and the lower and upper jaw may be completely eroded in very severe cases. Severely affected fish do not feed and their stomach is devoid of food.

**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mounts of the lesions reveal numerous filamentous myxobacterial cells. Histological examination of

affected tissue reveals masses of the causative bacterium associated with focal ulcers, necrosis of the underlying bone, and a mixed inflammatory infiltrate (Frelier et al. 1994).

**DIAGNOSIS.** The disease can usually be diagnosed by observation of the distinctive yellow patches in the mouth of the affected fish. Positive diagnosis is achieved by observing filamentous bacteria in the mouth lesions.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There are unconfirmed reports that the disease can be controlled by feeding potentiated sulfonamides.

### **Salmonid Rickettsial Septicemia or Piscirickettsiosis**

A rickettsia-like organism, the recent subject of reviews (Fryer and Lannan 1996; Almendras and Fuentealba 1997), has been shown to be the cause of a severe septicemia in pen-reared salmon in Chile (Branson and Nieto Diaz-Munoz 1991; Cvitanich et al. 1991; Garcés et al. 1991). The name proposed by Cvitanich et al. (1991) for the disease in Chile is salmonid rickettsial septicemia. Following the naming of the causative organism as *Piscirickettsia salmonis* by Fryer et al. (1992), the disease has also been widely referred to as piscirickettsiosis. In British Columbia, an essentially identical disease was first observed in seawater-reared pink salmon, held for experimental purposes, at the Pacific Biological Station in 1970. Because the causative organism involved in Chile and British Columbia proved morphologically, serologically, and culturally indistinguishable, it was concluded that the same organism was involved in both locations. More recently, infections of Atlantic salmon with rickettsia-like organisms have been reported from Norway (Olsen et al. 1997), Ireland (Rodger and Drinan 1993), Atlantic Canada (Jones et al. 1998) and Scotland (European Association of Fish Pathologists, undated). A PCR method developed by Mauel et al. (1996) for detecting and identifying the pathogen showed that the isolates from Norway, Ireland, Canada, and Chile were likely all *P. salmonis*, although it was clear that at least two variants of the pathogen occurred in Chile. The Scottish isolate was not included in the above PCR study but it may be a different rickettsia, because unlike the isolates from the other countries, it apparently does not cross-react with sera prepared against *P. salmonis*. House et al. (1998) showed that the strain from Chile was more pathogenic than those from British Columbia and Norway, which is consistent with field observations.

## Bacterial Diseases

After the first record of the disease in 1970, we observed the condition in pink salmon (1978), in chinook (1983, 1984, 1986), and coho (1984), but always incidental to more important disease problems. Until an outbreak of the disease in 1991 in a production farm in British Columbia (Brocklebank et al. 1992), the disease was regarded as of academic interest only in British Columbia. At this time, the disease has been detected at in chinook and Atlantic salmon at several netpen farms in British Columbia. In this region, the infection is usually coincidental to other infectious diseases (e.g., BKD) in the population, but may occasionally cause epizootics in which it is the primary cause of mortality.

In contrast, piscirickettsiosis is the most important infectious disease of pen-reared salmonids in Chile, where it caused about US\$ 48 million losses in 1995. In Chile, the disease was at first most problematic in coho salmon, but now is also common in both rainbow trout and Atlantic salmon. Several outbreaks of the disease may occur in the same population of fish during its seawater grow out, particularly with coho salmon.

Information to date on the epizootiology of the organism suggests that it is normally acquired in sea water from a marine source. However, a marine reservoir has yet to be identified, although certain salmon ectoparasites, such as *Caligus* sp. and *Ceratothoa gaudichaudii*, may be involved in the transmission, perhaps serving as vectors (Garcés et al. 1994). Furthermore, Cvitanich et al. (1991) found possible evidence of the organism in crustaceans and molluscs around netpens based on histology and serology. Regardless if vectors or non-salmonid fishes reservoirs are involved with the disease, it can be easily transmitted directly from fish to fish in sea water (Cvitanich et al. 1991; T.P.T. Evelyn unpubl. data). Many organisms occur in the intestine of infected salmon, suggesting that the agent is released in the feces (Cvitanich et al. 1991), and the gills and gut appear to be the portal of entry for the infection (Almendras 1996; Almendras et al. 1997). *Piscirickettsia salmonis* survives well in sea water, which may be important for its transmission in netpens (Almendras 1996).

The disease may also occur in brackish water with low salinity, and the infection has recently been reported in rainbow trout and coho salmon held in fresh water (Bravo 1994; Cvitanich et al. 1995; Gaggero et al. 1995). However, *P. salmonis* survives very poorly in fresh water (Lannan and Fryer 1994). Nevertheless, *P. salmonis* can be transmitted by cohabitation in fresh water (Almendras et al. 1997). Bustos et al. (1994) conducted field trials that suggested that vertical transmission may occur in the natural condition, and Larenas et al. (1996) detected the infection in 10% of fertilized ova from infected fish. This may explain its occurrence in fresh water.

However, the relative poor survivability of the organism in fresh water may explain the rarity of the infection seen before fish are introduced to sea water.

Husbandry practices (such as grading and net changes), storms and rapid temperature changes predispose fish to outbreaks of the infection (V. Palma, Chile, pers. comm.). In addition, infections by other pathogens apparently predispose salmon to the infection. In Chile, mixed infections with *R. salmoninarum* in both fresh water and sea water have been reported (Cvitanich et al. 1991; Gaggero et al. 1995; Smith et al. 1995). Mixed infections with *Nucleospora salmonis* have been seen in Chile (Enríquez 1997) and in British Columbia.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Clinical and gross pathological changes associated with *P. salmonis* infections have been outlined by Cvitanich et al. (1991), Branson and Nieto Diaz-Munoz (1991) and Brocklebank et al. (1992). Affected fish are lethargic, anorexic, exhibit pallor of the gills due to anemia, are dark in color, and may swim near the surface. There are marked differences in clinical signs between salmonid species. For example, with rainbow trout it is hard to find "slow swimmers" at the surface, while many dead fish are collected from the bottom of the pens. In Atlantic and coho salmon the nervous system is often affected, with flashing and side swimming being common in the former. Multiple, small white spots and petechiae occur in the skin. Ulcerations often occur on the skin with coho salmon and rainbow trout, whereas this is rare with Atlantic salmon in Chile. However, Atlantic salmon with the disease from Norway occasionally showed skin lesions - e.g., raised nodules or white spots (Olsen et al. 1997).

Hallmark internal lesions of the disease are found in the liver. The liver of affected fish usually exhibit large, whitish or yellow, multifocal, coalescing, granulomatous nodules (Fig. 5-11). These lesions often rupture, resulting in shallow crater-like cavities in the liver. Internal examination also reveals ascites, an enlarged spleen and a grey, enlarged kidney. The spleen is extremely enlarged in infected pink salmon. Pallor (suggesting anemia) and petechiae are observed in the visceral organs and muscle, and a whitish pseudomembrane may cover the heart.

**MICROSCOPY.** Giemsa-stained or Gram-stained imprints of infected tissues, especially the kidney and liver, reveal pairs or aggregates of basophilic coccoid organisms, about 0.5 - 1.5  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter (Fig. 5-3c). The organism is Gram-negative and is frequently found in the cytoplasm of macrophages.

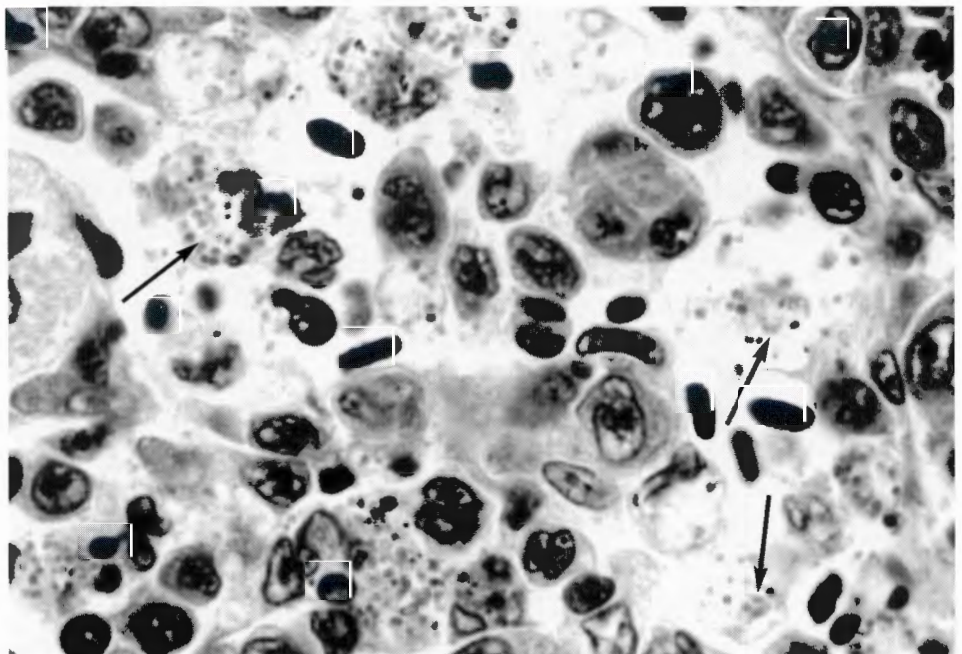
Cvitanich et al. (1991) and Branson and Nieto Diaz-Munoz



**Figure 5-11.** Salmon with *Piscirickettsia salmonis*. Note white, focal lesions in the liver.

(1991) described the histopathological changes in infected coho from Chile, and these changes are essentially the same as those seen in salmon from British Columbia (Brocklebank et al. 1993). The disease causes prominent tissue damage, and the liver, kidney, and spleen are the most severely affected organs. The liver exhibits large foci of necrosis and inflammation, and vasculitis and thrombi. High magnification reveals aggregates of the organism in the cytoplasm of degenerated hepatocytes and in macrophages, including melano-macrophages. Infected macrophages are usually hypertrophied and replete with cellular debris. The kidney interstitium exhibits generalized necrosis and prominent infiltration of macrophages. Vasculitis and thrombi are often found in the kidney. As with the liver, high magnification reveals the rickettsia in macrophages (Fig. 5-12). These macrophages occur in large accumulations in the thrombi, or more diffusely throughout the kidney interstitium. The spleen exhibits similar histological changes as those seen in

the kidney. In tissue sections stained with hematoxylin and eosin, the organism appears as basophilic or amphophilic spheres. Special stains showed that the organism is Gram, acid-fast, and PAS-negative, and they stain blue with Machiavello's and toluidine blue (Brocklebank et al. 1993). We have found that the methylene blue stain is the best stain for showing the organism in tissue sections.



**Figure 5-12.** Kidney of chinook with *Piscirickettsia salmonis* infection. Macrophages are enlarged and the spherical organism (arrows) are found in the cytoplasm. H & E.

## Bacterial Diseases

**DIAGNOSIS.** Presumptive diagnosis can be achieved by observing the distinctive crater-like lesions and nodules in the liver. Reasonably definitive diagnosis can be achieved by observing the organism within phagocytic cells in Giemsa, Gram or methylene blue-stained imprints of the liver or kidney, or in macrophages in tissue sections along with the distinctive histological changes described above. Acridine orange-stained tissue smears are also useful for demonstrating the organism (Lannan and Fryer 1991). Confirmatory diagnosis is based on isolation of the organism in cell culture using CHSE-214 cells (Fryer et al. 1990; Cvitanich et al. 1991), by an indirect fluorescent antibody test (Lannan et al. 1991) or by PCR (Mauel et al. 1996). A commercial ELISA test developed by Microtek Ltd-Bayer (Sidney, British Columbia) has been used extensively by Chilean farmers in a brood stock segregation program.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Various antibiotics, such as oxolinic acid, flumequine, and oxytetracycline, have been used in attempt to control the infection with limited success. In extreme cases some Chilean farmers have resorted to employing injectable treatments with fluoroquinolones with some success. Control of salmonid rickettsial septicemia is handicapped by the uncertainties regarding the source of the infection and its mode of spread. This is compounded by the intracellular nature of the organism, which in part, may explain why antibacterial agents, administered with the feed, have been less than satisfactory in controlling the disease. To compound the difficulties, the pathogen has exhibited an obvious ability to develop resistance to the antimicrobial agents used in its control.

Ideal control would be by means of a vaccine (Smith et al. 1995). However, the likelihood of a vaccine for controlling the pathogen appears a long way off. For one thing, the pathogen has to be grown in tissue culture, thus vaccine production by this means would be very expensive. For another, little is known about the virulence factors that might be used as the basis of a vaccine. Thus the outlook for a vaccine based on a genetically engineered virulence factor or based on "injected" DNA coding for such a factor is presently rather remote. For the time being, it appears that rearing at lower densities, fallowing of farms in a given region, and the holding of single year classes on any given site within a region might offer a degree of control. In addition, if ectoparasites are involved as reservoirs and /or vectors of the pathogen, measures to control the parasites might be worthwhile. Finally, although the role of vertical transmission is unknown, the techniques used for preventing vertical transmission of BKD (e.g., brood stock screening) is being employed in Chile.

## Epitheliocystis

Although Koch's postulate has not been completed, epitheliocystis is characterized as a condition caused by rickettsia- or chlamydia-like organisms. The severity of the disease may be variable and there is uncertainty whether several species are involved or not. The first description of the disease is by Plehn (1920) and the disease through the years has been described in several wild and farmed fishes. The infection has also been observed in salmonids from both fresh and salt water (Rourke et al. 1984; Carvajal et al. 1990a; Bruno and Poppe 1996; Kent et al. 1998). The term epitheliocystis was introduced by Hoffman et al. (1969). In salmonids, the most severe consequences of infection have been seen in sea-water reared Atlantic salmon in Europe. Concurrent viral infections may be of importance for the outcome of the infection (Bradley et al. 1988).

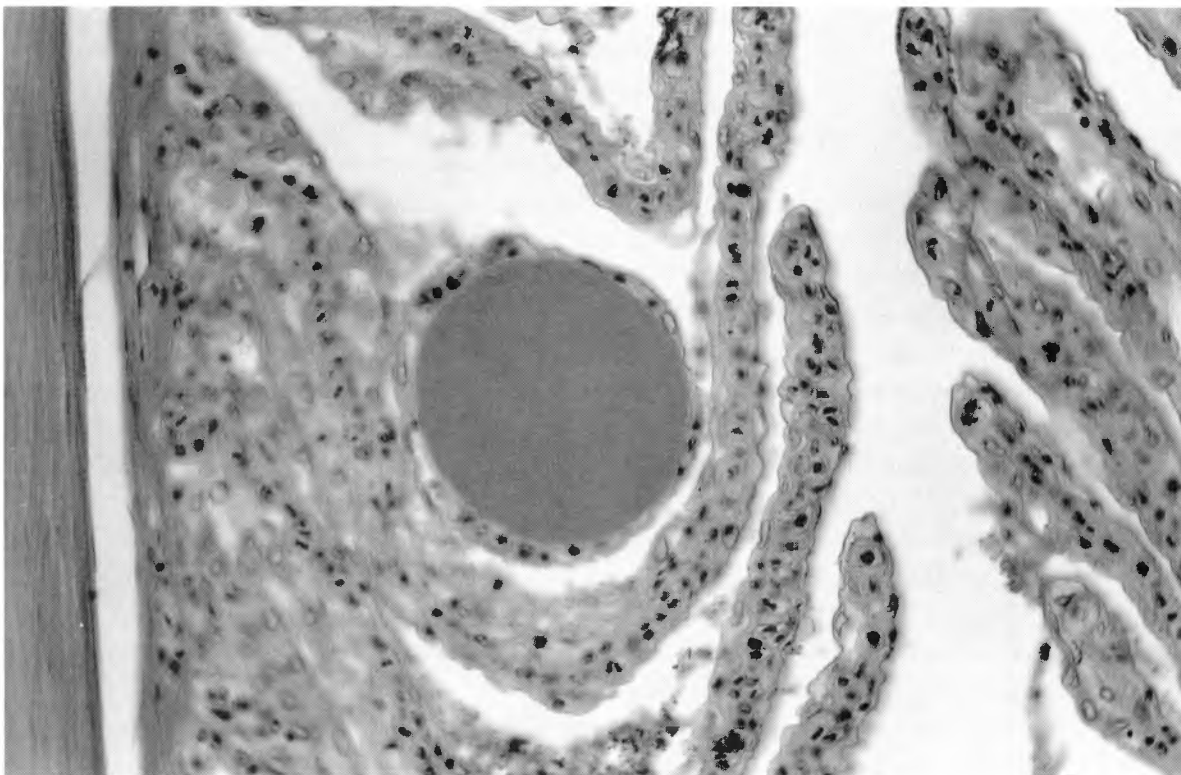
**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** The clinical signs may be unspecific, but may include emaciation, respiratory stress, dark coloration and increased susceptibility to secondary infections, e.g., IPN virus. In Atlantic salmon post-smolts mortality may reach 10% per cage per day. Gross lesions are few, but may include flared opercula and pale gills.

**MICROSCOPY.** Typical lesions are granulated, basophilic cytoplasmic inclusions in epithelial cells where the nucleus is flattened and peripherally located (Fig. 5-13). Although most infected cells are found in the gill epithelium, inclusions may also be found in the skin. Infected cells are hypertrophic and the inclusions constitute the majority of the cell volume. Heavily infected cells will degenerate and necrotize, thereby releasing the microorganisms. The response in surrounding tissue may be variable, in post-smolts there is often extensive hyperplasia and fusion of secondary lamellae.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis is based on observation of the characteristic cytoplasmic colonies and a peripherally dislocated and flattened/crescent-shaped nucleus in the lamellar epithelium of the gills. These may have some similarities to colonies of *Aeromonas salmonicida* subspecies *salmonicida* in furunculosis (McArdle et al. 1986, Turnbull et al. 1989), but these colonies are usually located deep in the pillar cells and vessels and will be easily identified using immunohistochemistry techniques. Using this technique, Groff et al. (1996) demonstrated epitheliocystis organisms from various fish species react positively with antibodies to chlamydia. Presently, there is no method available for culture of the causative organism.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** As the reservoir of the organism(s) is unknown, little can be done to avoid outbreaks of the disease. Experience from Norwegian sea-farms indicates that mortalities may be kept low if concurrent infections can be kept under control. Although the organism(s) probably are susceptible to oxytetracycline, most treatments have been ineffective and no clinical experiments have been done. Minimalization of stressors and a good environment are important factors for reducing the mortality associated with epitheliocystis.

**Figure 5-13.** Gill with epitheliocystis inclusions. H & E.



---

# VIRAL DISEASES

G. S. Traxler, M. L. Kent, and T. T. Poppe

Several viruses are important pathogens of salmonid fishes, particularly during the early development of the fish in fresh water (Wolf 1988a). Viral diseases of fishes have historically been of great concern to fish health managers because they can cause high mortality. In contrast to bacterial diseases, there is only one commercially-available vaccine for viruses of salmon (i.e., IPN virus), and no drugs are available for their control. In addition, the mere presence of certain viruses in a population may be an economic hardship due to restrictions on transfer or sale of these fish. At least six viral diseases are of serious concern for pen-reared salmon: infectious hematopoietic necrosis (IHN), infectious pancreatic necrosis (IPN), salmon pancreas disease (SPD), infectious salmon anemia (ISA), salmonid herpesvirus 2 infections, and erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome (EIBS). The erythrocytic necrosis virus has the potential to infect salmon in sea water, but has yet to be recognized as a serious problem. Plasmacytoid leukemia (PL), also known as marine anemia, of chinook salmon is another infectious disease that has caused significant losses in netpens in the Pacific Northwest. This disease may be caused by an oncogenic retrovirus, the salmon leukemia virus (Eaton and Kent 1992; Kent and Dawe 1993), but the etiology of PL has not yet been firmly established. Therefore, PL, along with other neoplastic diseases of possible viral etiology, are dealt with under Neoplastic Diseases and Related Disorders.

## Infectious Hematopoietic Necrosis (IHN)

Infectious hematopoietic necrosis is one of the most costly viral diseases of cultured salmon and trout in North America (Pilcher and Fryer 1980; Wolf 1988a, b). Losses have also been reported in wild populations of fish. The virus is capable of causing extensive losses in young susceptible fish, with most of the losses occurring within days of onset. Initial losses can occur within 4 days post exposure, with the majority occurring within the next 10 days. Larger fish may show more chronic losses occurring over a period of several months. Natural salmonid hosts for IHN are sockeye/kokanee, chinook, and Atlantic salmon, and rainbow/steelhead trout. Other susceptible species are chum, and masou salmon. Whereas coho salmon are considered resistant to IHN, adults have been reported as carriers of the virus when being held at the same facility as chinook salmon adults with IHN (LaPatra et al. 1989a). Experimentally, cutthroat, brook, and brown trout have

been demonstrated to be susceptible to IHN. Recently the virus has caused high mortalities in pen-reared Atlantic salmon in British Columbia.

The virus is enzootic along the Pacific coast of North America. It has been transported to several central and eastern states in the USA through shipments of fish or eggs, but fortunately was quickly eradicated following its detection. The virus has also been transferred to Asia and more recently to Europe, where it has spread from France to Italy and Germany. It has become established in Japan where it causes losses among wild fish stocks. In British Columbia, sockeye fry migrating from spawning channels have suffered high mortality due to IHN (Traxler and Rankin 1989). The losses observed in the fry do not have a high correlation with the virus titers measured in the spawning adults. Other factors such as density and environmental stressors seem to be an important influence in determining losses in the fry.

Certain aspects of the epizootiology of the IHN virus are still unresolved, including the possibility of vertical or egg-associated transmission. There are years of data from sockeye production in Alaska where IHN occurrences in fry can only be attributed to vertical transmission (Meyers et al. 1990). In spite of other anecdotal information implying vertical transmission, no controlled laboratory experiment has yet confirmed this method of viral transmission. Virus was not detected in eggs or progeny from random matings of sockeye salmon adults naturally infected with varying amounts of IHN virus and treated with fish culture water, iodophore, or added IHN virus (Traxler et al. 1996). Horizontal transmission of IHN readily occurs in both fresh and salt water (Wolf 1988 a,b; Traxler et al. 1993).

The infrequent detection of the virus in wild stocks of salmonids, except during the susceptible fry stage and at spawning, may be due to a carrier state or subclinically infected fish. Various hypothesis such as the virus being reactivated from asymptomatic carriers, viral latency, and the existence of defective interfering particles have been suggested. There is also some evidence to support the view that uninfected fish become re-infected with IHN at a later life stage (Amos et al. 1989; Meyers 1998). The possibility of a seawater reservoir for IHN virus has been suggested since the virus has been detected in wild sockeye salmon in sea water (Traxler and Roome 1993).

The first confirmed report of IHN in pen-reared Atlantic salmon in British Columbia occurred in 1992 (Armstrong et al.

1993; Traxler et al. 1993). Since this initial finding, IHN has been reported at numerous netpen farm sites and has become a major disease concern on Atlantic salmon farms in British Columbia. Affected sites tend to be concentrated in the Campbell River/Quadra Island area of the Province. No confirmed cases of IHN affecting Atlantic salmon have been reported in the northern or western region of Vancouver Island where there is also extensive salmon farming. The infection has not been detected in Atlantic salmon freshwater hatcheries, and field observations suggest that the Atlantic salmon in netpens may become infected in sea water.

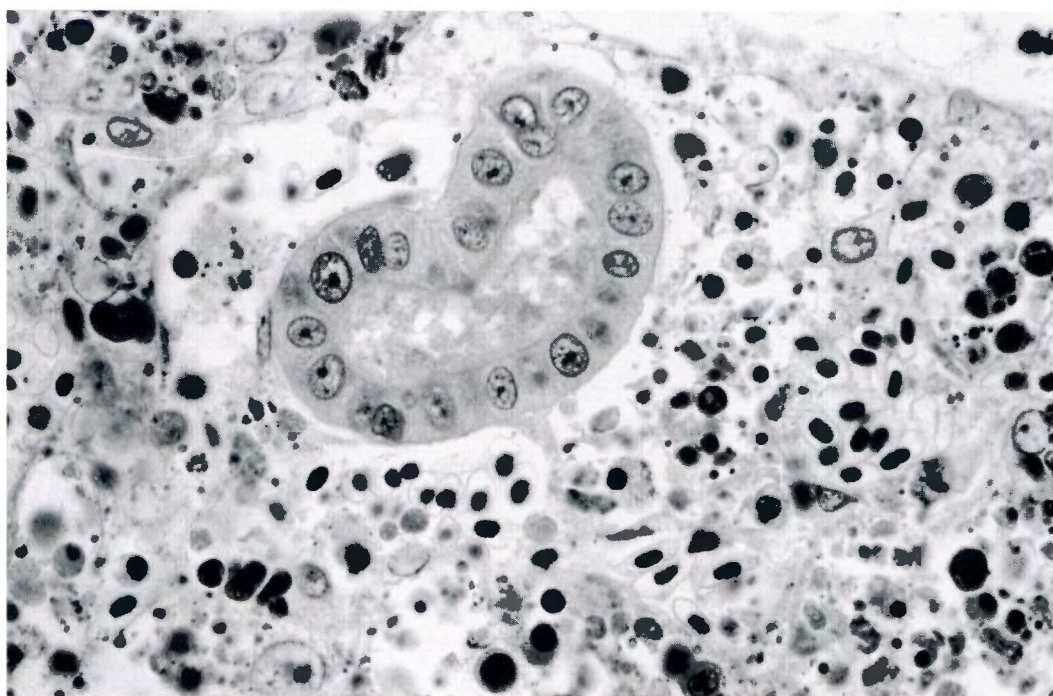
In addition to infection of the kidney, spleen, and intestinal submucosa, the virus is found in high titer in the mucus and feces of IHN infected fish. The presence of high levels of virus in the mucus of farmed Atlantic salmon indicates a possible mechanism of rapid and efficient transmission during handling whenever fish are concentrated and fish to fish contact occurs.

A concern is the existence or establishment of marine hosts or reservoirs of IHNV that may serve as sources of the virus at grow-out sites. To determine whether fish that inhabit areas in and around net pens can become virus reservoirs, the susceptibility of three such marine fishes to IHNV was tested (Traxler and Richard 1996). Tubesnout, shiner perch, and Pacific herring were susceptible when injected with the virus, with losses in excess of 50% occurring in all species of fish tested. When exposed by immersion, herring were the most susceptible, with 25% of the exposed fish dying due to IHNV. Furthermore, Traxler and Richard (1996), found high titers of the virus in tubesnout and shiner perch collected at a fish farm

undergoing an IHN epizootic. We have also isolated IHN virus from one Pacific herring that was collected well away from fish farms. However, how long the virus can persist in these species and the role they play as marine reservoirs for the infection is unknown.

Using polyclonal antisera, only a single serotype of IHN virus has been identified. However, several electropherotypes have been recognized based upon the molecular weights of the structural proteins (Leong et al. 1981). Several strains were identified and tended to be from distinct geographical regions and have a degree of species specificity. Monoclonal antibodies have also been used to differentiate between isolates from different locations (Winton et al. 1988; Ristow & Arnzen 1989). Kurath et al. (1995) developed a RNase protection assay capable of determining genetic diversities between isolates of IHNV. This technique will be very useful for understanding the relatedness of IHNV isolates from different organs, individuals, watersheds, host species, and geographic areas.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** In netpens, swimming behavior can vary from lethargy to rapid erratic flashing motions. Externally, affected fish are usually dark and exhibit hemorrhages at the base of the fins. The gills and liver may be pale, indicating anemia, and affected fish show ascites, and petechial and ecchymotic hemorrhages throughout the viscera (Fig 5-4a). The digestive tract may be filled with a yellowish mucus-like fluid. Certain chronic affects, such as scoliosis, have been attributed to the virus (Amend et al. 1969).



**Figure 6-1.** Tissue section of the kidney of a sockeye salmon with IHN. Note severe necrosis in the hematopoietic cells in the kidney interstitium. H & E

**MICROSCOPY.** The hematopoietic tissues of the kidney and the spleen are the most severely affected (Yasutake 1970). In the early stages of infection these tissues exhibit focal necrosis, which progresses to severe, diffuse necrosis and degeneration of these tissues (Fig. 6-1). The gills, pancreas, liver, and submucosa of the alimentary tract may also exhibit diffuse necrosis.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Presumptive diagnosis of IHN can be achieved by observing severe, diffuse necrosis in the hematopoietic tissue, which can be detected in histological sections or tissue imprints (Yasutake 1978). The standard method of detecting the virus relies upon isolation of the virus using cell cultures derived from fish tissues (Anonymous 1984; Amos 1985). Cell cultures inoculated with IHN virus usually show characteristic cytopathic effect (CPE) within 10 days at 15 °C. The CPE is fairly distinctive with margination of the chromatin and rounding of the cells into clusters which retract from the center of the plaque. Frequently used confirmatory tests include virus neutralization, fluorescent antibody tests, ELISA (enzyme linked immunosorbent assay), and the DNA probe (Winton 1991). A polymerase chain reaction (PCR) test with sensitivity approaching that of cell culture is now being more widely used as a method to detect the presence of the viral genome (Arakawa et al. 1990). The use of serological tests to detect the presence of humoral antibodies to fish viruses may become a useful technique for determining past exposure to viral pathogens and in epizootiological studies (LaPatra 1996).

The gross pathological changes in Atlantic and sockeye salmon infected with IHN virus in sea water (Fig. 5-4a) are essentially indistinguishable from those caused by Gram-negative bacterial septicemias (Traxler et al. 1991b). Therefore, diagnosticians should consider conducting virus assays on fish with generalized internal hemorrhaging that are not consistently infected with known bacterial pathogens.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** In freshwater hatcheries, IHN is controlled by avoiding the infection. This is usually accomplished using eggs from IHN virus-free females, disinfecting eggs with iodophores, and rearing eggs and fry in IHN virus-free water (Winton 1991). Rearing Atlantic salmon and chinook in netpens in freshwater lakes before seawater entry has been employed by some fish farmers in the Pacific Northwest. The virus is prevalent in sockeye salmon and kokanee in some of these lakes, which could be a potential source of transmission to pen-reared fish. Therefore, until the risk of transmission of IHN virus is assessed in this situation, we suggest that these lakes be avoided or that fish reared in

such pens be tested for the presence of the virus before they are transferred to sea water. In addition, only smolts free of the virus should be transported to netpen sites because the disease can be transmitted in sea water.

Circumstantial evidence suggest that a marine reservoir is the primary source of the infection for outbreaks in seawater netpens. If this is the case, then avoidance of the infection in netpens would be very difficult. Marine-phase chinook salmon may harbour the virus for several months with no signs of the disease, and the virus has been found in healthy chinook reared at netpen farms that have experienced IHN outbreaks in Atlantic salmon (S. St. Hilaire, Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo, British Columbia, pers. comm.). Therefore, chinook salmon may act as a subclinical reservoir for the virus when they are reared with Atlantic salmon.

Several types of vaccines have been developed that are effective in experimental situations (see review by Winton 1997), but the efficacy of these vaccines in netpen situations has yet to be clearly demonstrated. Anderson et al. (1996) developed a DNA vaccine against IHN for rainbow trout, which also protects Atlantic salmon.

### Infectious Pancreatic Necrosis (IPN)

The viruses (several serotypes) responsible for causing infectious pancreatic necrosis (IPN) in cultured salmonids belongs to the family Birnaviridae. Viruses in the Birnaviridae have a widespread geographic and host range with isolations reported from numerous species of freshwater and marine fishes, and from many species of marine invertebrates (McAllister 1983). However, IPN-like virus isolates from non-salmonids are usually non-pathogenic for salmonids. The classification of this group of viruses is complex and their organization is dependent upon the methods used for comparison (Caswell-Reno et al. 1989; Hill and Way 1995).

The most susceptible species of fish appear to be rainbow trout, brook trout, brown trout, and Atlantic salmon. Younger fish usually suffer acute infections resulting in losses often exceeding 90%. Fish over 6 months old are usually more resistant to IPN infections. Survivors of IPN outbreaks may become carriers, shedding virus throughout their life and acting as a source of re-infection. Although IPN has been considered a typical fry and fingerling disease, the virus now causes tremendous problems in sea-water netpens as well.

The infection is prevalent in pen-reared Atlantic salmon in Norway (Krogstad et al. 1989) and has caused problems in Scotland (Smail et al. 1992, 1995). For many years, the virus was extremely widespread in Norwegian netpen farms (Melby

et al. 1991) without causing clinical disease. In recent years, however, clinical IPN has become an increasing problem in sea-farmed Atlantic salmon. Most commonly, outbreaks occur a few weeks up to a couple of months after transfer to sea water (Jarp et al. 1995), but outbreaks up to one year post sea-transfer also occur frequently (Smail et al. 1992). The disease may be the most important infectious disease of farmed fish in Norway, accounting for losses of approximately NOK 400 million/year (Christie 1996). In Scotland, significant mortality has been associated with the infection, particularly in combination with salmon pancreas disease. Vertical transmission of IPN virus has been well documented (Wolf et al. 1963; Bullock et al. 1976; Fijan and Giorgetti 1978), and has occurred in groups of eggs that had been treated with iodophores.

In 1989 a birnavirus was isolated from a group of Atlantic salmon post-smolts from a seawater netpen site in British Columbia. Tests conducted to identify the isolate concluded that the virus was most similar to, but not identical with, a strain of IPN virus isolated from brook trout in British Columbia (Kieser et al. 1989). This isolate, referred to at the time as IPN virus, proved to be non-pathogenic to fry of chinook, coho, and Atlantic salmon, and rainbow trout (Traxler and Evelyn 1991). In view of the failure of the isolate to cause IPN in the tested salmon, the virus would more appropriately have been identified as a birnavirus than an IPN virus.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** In fry and fingerlings, the initial sign of IPN are often a sudden increase in mortality. Moribund fish may be unable to swim against the current, are usually dark in color, and show abdominal distension and exophthalmos. Post-smolts may show very few clinical signs, but stop feeding and show nervous symptoms. The most significant losses may sometimes be attributed to the long-term effects of reduced or completely ceased feeding. Internal organs are often pale, and the digestive tract may be devoid of food and filled with a whitish mucus due to sloughing of the intestinal epithelium (Wolf 1988b). In older fish (e.g., post-smolt Atlantic salmon), hyperemia and petechial hemorrhage in the visceral fat and in the pyloric caeca are common findings.

**MICROSCOPY.** As the name implies, IPN virus causes necrosis of the exocrine pancreas. Intracytoplasmic inclusions have been reported (Yasutake 1970). Lesions have also been reported in the hematopoietic and excretory tissues of the kidney, the mucosal cells of the digestive tract, and the liver parenchymal cells (Wolf 1988b).

**DIAGNOSIS.** A definite diagnosis of IPN is based upon isolation of the virus in tissue culture and a neutralization test, along with observation of the described pathological changes (Bruno and Poppe 1996). The cell lines of choice are RTG-2 and CHSE-214 and they should be incubated at a temperature of 15 °C. The use of two or more dilutions of the inoculum are recommended in order to quantify the virus present. This approach allows the diagnostician to determine whether carrier or lethal levels of the virus are present. It also helps to reduce toxicity of the tissue extracts for the cell cultures and helps to avoid inhibition of IPN virus due to high concentrations of fish tissue homogenates (Dixon 1987). Positive identification of the virus is accomplished by serological methods such as serum neutralization or fluorescent antibody techniques.

Salmon pancreas disease is an important differential diagnosis for IPN, and the two diseases can be difficult to distinguish, both clinically and pathologically. Characteristic lesions that react positively with IPN antisera using immunohistochemistry techniques are strongly indicative of IPN, while chronic lesions may be impossible to separate as the virus disappears from the lesions.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** An epidemiological study of IPN in post-smolts has shown that the risk of clinical disease was related to the mixing of smolts from several suppliers at the same sea site (Jarp et al. 1995). A consequence of this would therefore be to buy smolts from as few producers as possible. It has been shown that smolts with no history of IPN in fresh water, but with specific humoral immunity against IPNV prior to smoltification, were protected against clinical IPN up to 4 months after transfer to sea water (Jarp et al. 1996).

Because IPN virus can be vertically transmitted and infected fish can excrete virus for the rest of their life, the only effective control method is avoidance. The use of IPN virus-free broodstock, rearing progeny in virus-free water, and restricting the movement of fish are measures that can reduce the spread of IPN virus.

A multivalent vaccine, which includes *E. coli*-expressed IPNV proteins, protected presmolt Atlantic salmon against natural exposure to IPN (Christie 1996). This vaccine is now licensed in Norway, and results from the 1996 season are very promising as mortalities due to IPN have been reduced considerably.

### Salmon Pancreas Disease (SPD)

Salmon pancreas disease of pen-reared Atlantic salmon is an important disease in Scotland, Ireland, and Norway (Munro et al. 1984; Ferguson et al. 1986; McVicar 1987; Menzies et al. 1996). The disease has also been observed in pen-reared Atlantic salmon in Washington State (Kent and Elston 1987), and has occurred rarely in British Columbia. The cause of the disease has been controversial. Laboratory transmission studies indicate that the disease is caused by an infectious agent, probably a virus (McVicar 1990; Pringle et al. 1992; Raynard and Houghton 1993; McLoughlin et al. 1995, 1996), whereas the clinical and histopathological changes observed in affected fish were suggestive of a vitamin E - selenium deficiency (Ferguson et al. 1986). Bell et al. (1987) concluded that the depletion of vitamin E and selenium observed in affected fish is probably an effect of the disease rather than its cause.

Nelson et al. (1995) isolated a toga-like virus from fish with SPD, and McLoughlin et al. (1996) experimentally reproduced the disease with the virus. Therefore, the evidence is essentially conclusive that the cause of the disease is this virus, referred to as Salmon Pancreas Disease Virus (SPDV). McLoughlin et al. (1998) suggested that the virus may occur in all major salmon producing countries in Europe.

Salmon pancreas disease only occurs in salmon after they have been transferred to sea water and has not been linked to the freshwater environment or stock origin. Based on these observations, McVicar (1987) concluded that SPD is purely a marine disease. Fish usually start to exhibit clinical SPD about 6 to 12 wk after introduction to netpens, but fish that have been in pens as long as two years may be affected (McVicar 1987). Often close to 100% of a population is affected, but most fish recover and return to normal feeding and growth in a few months (Munro et al. 1984; McVicar 1987). In these cases, overall mortality due to SPD is usually low, but surviving fish may grow poorly and may be more susceptible to other diseases (McVicar and Munro 1987). In other cases, mortality as high as 50% has been attributed to the disease (Wheatley 1994).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish are anorexic, lethargic and hang listlessly at the sides of cages near the surface. Fish with SPD are usually emaciated. Internal examination often reveals hemorrhages in the pancreatic tissue and fat between the pyloric caeca (Fig. 5-4b), or the tissue between the pyloric caeca may be severely atrophied.

**MICROSCOPY.** Fish with SPD exhibit acute and generalized necrosis of the pancreatic acinar cells. The pancreatic tissue is markedly reduced and may be replaced by a marked increase in cellularity, suggestive of inflammation, stromal condensation, and fibrosis (Ferguson et al. 1986). Some fish may also exhibit degenerative changes in the heart, with coagulative necrosis of the ventricular myocardium (Ferguson et al. 1986). Lesions in the skeletal muscle may also occur about 3-5 wk after infection (McCoy et al. 1994). In the post-acute (recovery) phase, fish may exhibit islets of regenerating acinar tissue amongst fibrotic tissue (Munro et al. 1984).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Hemorrhages in tissues associated with the pyloric caeca in emaciated Atlantic salmon smolts, along with the absence of other infectious agents (e.g., IHN or IPN viruses, *A. salmonicida* or *Vibrio* spp.), is indicative of SPD. Confirmation of the disease is based on observation of the histological changes described above, or by isolation of SPDV from affected fish. The latter can be achieved by co-cultivation of kidney tissues on CHSE-214 cells at 15 °C in which cultures are blind passed after 28 days (Nelson et al. 1995). In the second passage, CPE may be observed after about 10 days. A significant decrease in *p*-aminobenzoic acid may also be useful for diagnosing SPD (Pringle et al. 1992).

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** No treatment is known for SPD. Reports from Scotland indicate that reducing stressors (e.g., transport and handling) during the acute phase of the disease may enhance recovery. In addition, some farmers have reported that keeping fish on a smaller pellet size lessens anorexia and reduces the overall mortality associated with the disease. Recovered fish exhibit strong protection to reinfection (Houghton 1994), which provides hope that a vaccine could be produced against the virus.

### Infectious Salmon Anaemia (ISA)

The first case of the disease today known as infectious salmon anaemia (ISA) occurred in a smolt farm in southwestern Norway in 1984. During the following 10 years, the disease spread to most fish farming areas along the coast, but only seawater farms or freshwater farms that used some sea-water (to increase temperature, reduce stress during smoltification or as a buffer in acidified areas) have experienced natural outbreaks (Thorud and Djupvik 1988). However, the disease can be experimentally transmitted in fresh water as well. Although a viral etiology has been suspected from the beginning, it was not until 1995 that a virus

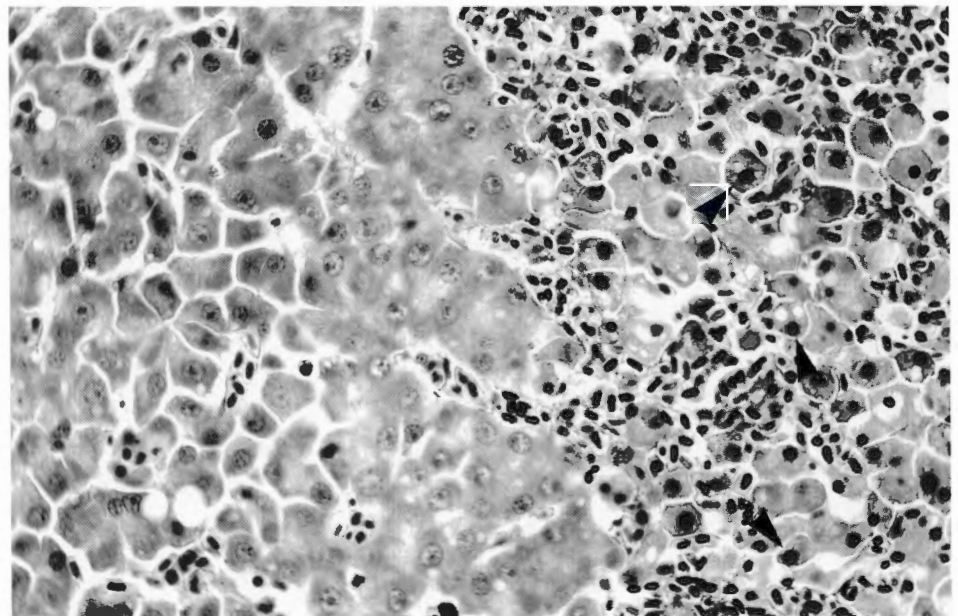
was isolated and classified as the causative agent of ISA by Dannevig et al. (1995). Recent experiments indicate that the virus resembles the orthomyxovirus group. Virus is shed from infected carriers before they develop clinical signs of the disease through skin mucus, urine and feces. Electron microscopy has revealed that early colonization of the causative virus occurs in the pillar cells of the gills and the endocardium indicating that the gills are the most likely port of entry (Totland et al. 1996). Natural outbreaks have occurred in Atlantic salmon only, but other salmonids may harbour the virus (Nylund and Jakobsen 1995). A virus very similar to the ISA agent has recently been isolated from salmon in Atlantic Canada with hemorrhagic kidney disease (see below), and ISA has recently been observed in Scotland (Rodger et al. 1998). Extensive measures have been taken to eradicate the disease from Norwegian aquaculture and presently (1997) only a few farms are affected by the disease.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Most clinical cases have occurred during rapid temperature increments in the spring, but outbreaks may also occur in the late autumn. Initially, the fish go off the feed, are listless and tend to sink to the bottom or rest near the edges of the cages. These are different strains of the virus and thus the manifestation of the disease may be variable (see hemorrhagic kidney disease). Mortality may vary from 15 to 100%. An outbreak may last for several months, but is normally of shorter duration if temperatures are above 10-12°C. Macroscopically, distended abdomen, exophthalmos, skin edema and hemorrhage are typical findings. The gills and heart may be extremely pale. Congestion in internal organs (e.g., liver, spleen and foregut), punctate hemorrhage in perivisceral fat and on peritoneal surfaces are typical lesions. In some cases the liver may appear extremely congested and almost black in colour (Fig. 5-4c). Hematocrit values may drop to as low as 1% or less in severely affected fish.

**MICROSCOPY.** In the liver, light microscopical lesions include multifocal hemorrhagic necrosis, dilatation and congestion of the sinusoids (Fig. 6-2). The liver lesions typically develop into anastomosing, confluent haemorrhagic necrosis with a characteristic pattern leaving the area closest to the central veins intact. There is often pronounced congestion of the foregut with diffuse hemorrhage to the stratum proprium (Evensen et al. 1991a, b).

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis is based upon characteristic gross pathology and light microscopical changes, negative bacteriology and anaemia (low hematocrit values). The isolation and propagation of a causative agent in salmon head kidney (SHK-1) cells will allow the production of specific antibodies and diagnostic kits based on an indirect fluorescent antibody test (IFAT) (Falk and Dannevig 1995). A PCR test for the virus is also available (Mjaaland et al. 1997).

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** No treatment is known for ISA. Nevertheless, the eradication program for ISA has been successful indicating that the viral pathogen is not very invasive in the marine environment. After the implementation of several measures to reduce the impact and spread of the disease, a steady decrease in new outbreaks has been recorded. These measures include mandatory health control in smolt farms, disinfection of sea water used in freshwater farms, disinfection of processing water from slaughtering facilities, and isolation of infected sites and fallowing sites after slaughtering of infected stocks.



**Figure 6-2.** Liver of Atlantic salmon with ISA. Note areas of anastomosing, zonal hemorrhage and necrosis. Arrowheads = necrotic hepatocytes.

### Hemorrhagic Kidney Disease (HKD)

A newly-recognised disease of pen-reared Atlantic salmon has been observed in Atlantic Canada. The disease, referred to as "mystery disease" or "hemorrhagic kidney disease" was first observed in 1996. HKD has been devastating at some farms, causing up to 5% mortality/day. Some farms have experienced concurrent BKD problems with HKD, but the pathologic changes are distinctly different in these two diseases. The disease is clearly transmissible, and a virus very similar to ISA has been isolated from affected fish (Mullins et al. 1998). Therefore, the consensus among most fish pathologists at this time is that HKD is caused by a variant of the ISA virus.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish exhibit an enlarged kidney and ascites.

**MICROSCOPY.** Byrne et al. (1998) described the pathology of HKD. The hallmark of HKD is massive, diffuse hemorrhage of the kidney, resulting in massive pooling of erythrocytes in the renal interstitium (Fig. 6-3). Renal tubule necrosis is also common. In the spleen we have seen severe congestion, and Byrne et al. (1998) reported that the spleen may also exhibit erythrophagocytosis, ceroid accumulation and other changes. Other organs may show minor pathological changes. As with typical ISA, some fish may exhibit liver necrosis.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis is based on histological examination and observation of severe hemorrhage in the kidney interstitium.

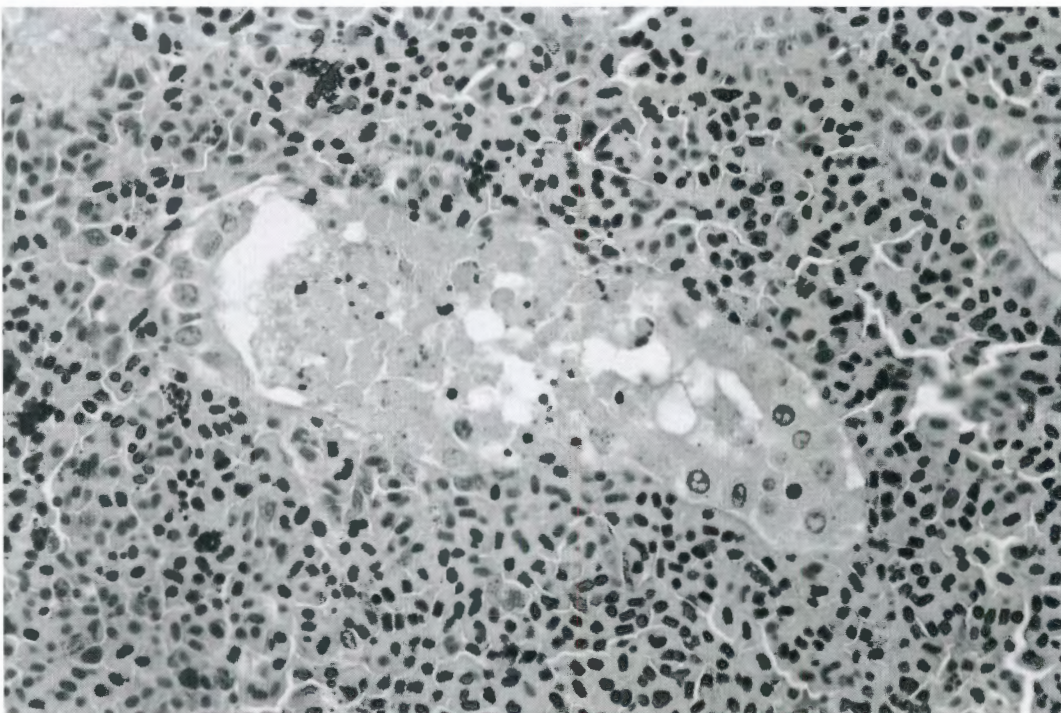
**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Because there is compelling evidence that the disease is caused by a virus (or viruses), control measures typically used for viral (e.g., eradication of infected stocks) have been implemented.

### Viral Erythrocytic Necrosis (VEN)

Viral erythrocytic necrosis (VEN) has been reported in various species of marine and anadromous fishes throughout the world (Appy et al. 1976; Walker and Sherburne 1977). Along the Pacific coast of North America, natural occurrences of VEN have been documented in chum, pink, coho and chinook salmon, steelhead trout, and Pacific herring (Bell and Traxler 1985; Meyers et al. 1986; Rohovec and Amandi 1981).

The viruses responsible for VEN have been tentatively placed in the family Iridoviridae. Virions observed from fish have been icosahedral with a diameter ranging from 140-350 nm. Most of the virions found in Pacific herring and salmon fall within the 140-210 nm size range, whereas those reported from Atlantic cod ranged from 310-360 nm in diameter (Appy et al. 1976).

The widespread range of VEN viruses and susceptibility of salmonids to at least one of these viruses suggest that the virus poses a threat to netpen-cultured salmonids. Viral erythrocytic necrosis was frequently observed among pink and chum



**Figure 6-3.** Kidney section of an Atlantic salmon with hemorrhagic kidney disease. Note the interstitium is replaced by red blood cells and the tubules are necrotic. H & E.

salmon being farmed in netpens located at Departure Bay, British Columbia but coho, chinook, and sockeye salmon raised at the same site did not appear to acquire the disease (Evelyn and Traxler 1978). However, a survey of anadromous salmonids in Oregon revealed that 25% of the populations tested were positive for VEN virus (Rohovec and Amandi 1981). Positive species were spawning adult coho, chinook, and chum salmon, and steelhead trout.

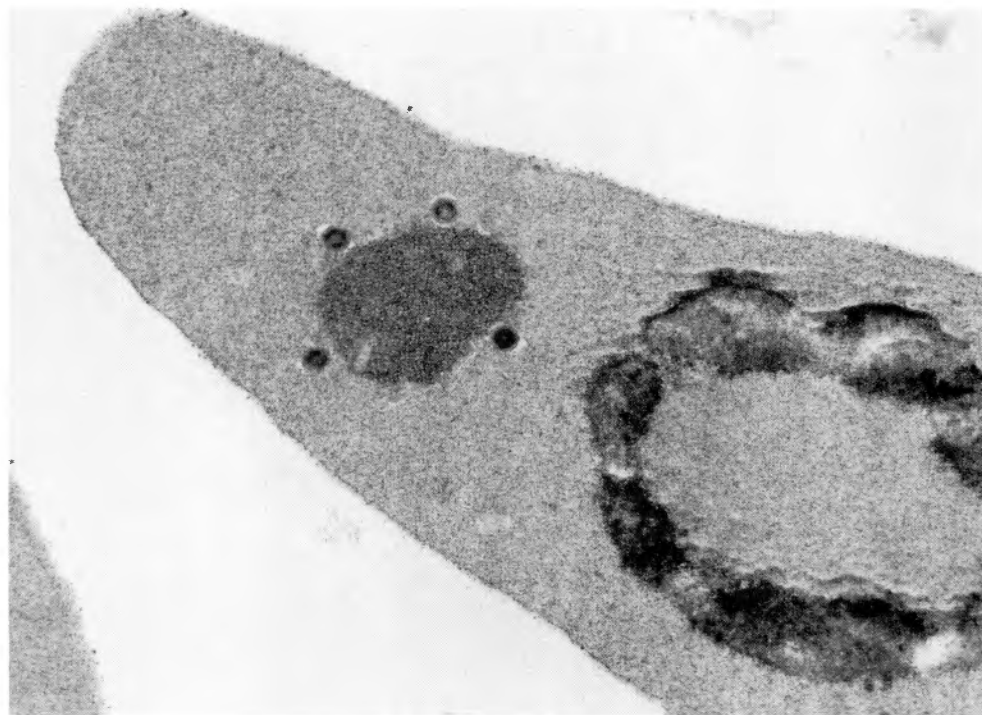
Natural occurrences of VEN in Pacific herring in Alaska resulting in high losses were reported by Meyers et al. (1986). The VEN virus from Pacific herring has been transmitted to chum, pink, and Atlantic salmon using intraperitoneal injection, and the virus in the salmon was associated with anaemia and death (Evelyn and Traxler 1978; MacMillan and Mulcahy 1979; Traxler et al. 1991a). Preliminary evidence from transmission studies conducted in our laboratory also indicate that VEN virus from Pacific herring is transmittable to Atlantic salmon by cohabitation with infected herring in sea water.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** In heavily infected fish, the most significant clinical sign is severe anemia, indicated by the pallor of the gills and visceral organs. The virus infects erythrocytes, resulting in reduced hematocrit values (Evelyn and Traxler 1978). Some fish may exhibit unilateral or bilateral exophthalmos (MacMillan et al. 1989). Infection with VEN virus usually results in chronic, low level losses. A significant side-effect of VEN is reduced resistance to other pathogens and environmental stressors (MacMillan and Mulcahy 1979; MacMillan et al. 1980).

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological signs of VEN are not pathognomonic. The kidney may show increase in hematopoiesis. The characteristic cytoplasmic inclusions in erythrocytes that accompany the infection are not frequently observed in tissue sections. Blood smears stained with Giemsa typically reveal eosinophilic or amphophilic intracytoplasmic inclusions (0.8 - 4.0  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter) in erythrocytes (Fig. 5-3a). In chum salmon, erythroblasts are also infected as the disease progresses (MacMillan et al. 1989). Affected cells usually contain a single round or oval inclusion in the cytoplasm. Transmission electron microscopy of infected erythrocytes reveals large, spherical viroplasm and pentagonal or hexagonal virions (about 150 - 200 nm) in the cytoplasm (Fig. 6-4). The viroplasm likely represent the inclusions observed in Giemsa-stained blood smears.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The viruses responsible for VEN have not been grown in cell culture. A strong presumptive diagnosis is made by finding the characteristic intracytoplasmic inclusions in erythrocytes. Confirmation is accomplished by observing the characteristic virions by electron microscopy (Fig. 6-4).

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There are no known control measures. Horizontal transmission has been well documented, making avoidance difficult given the widespread marine distribution of the virus. There is evidence that individual fish are able to recover from VEN. Maintaining affected stocks in conditions of low stress may reduce losses.



**Figure 6-4.** Electron micrograph of erythrocyte of Atlantic salmon infected with VEN virus (arrows). VP = viroplasm, N = nucleus.

### Erythrocytic Inclusion Body Syndrome

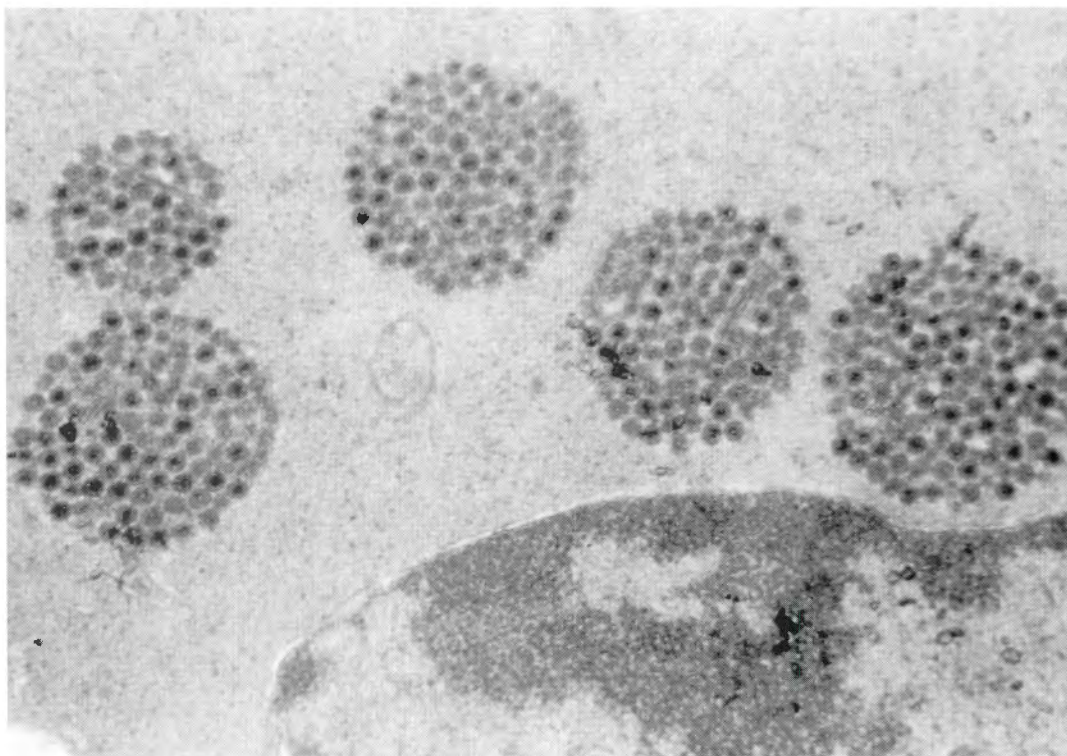
Erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome (EIBS), caused by a togavirus, is a common disease in salmonids reared in freshwater in the Pacific Northwest, particularly in coho salmon (Leek 1987; Piacentini et al. 1989). Epizootics of EIBS have also been reported in pen-reared coho salmon in Japan (Takahashi et al. 1992), and infections associated with variable mortality have been observed in pen-reared Atlantic salmon in Ireland (Rodger et al. 1991), Scotland (Rodger and Richards 1998), and Norway (Lunder et al. 1990). As with VEN virus, the EIBS virus infects erythrocytes and causes anemia. Mortalities in netpens due to EIBS have been as high as 23%, and peak at lower temperatures (e.g., 8-10 °C). However, field observations of Atlantic salmon from Scotland showed little correlation of the infection with anemia and clinical disease. In laboratory studies, Piacentini et al. (1989) demonstrated that the disease is more severe at 12 °C. Horizontal transmission of the virus in water has been demonstrated (Piacentini et al. 1989), but it is unknown if vertical transmission occurs. Fish may recover from the infection, and are then resistant to reinfection (Piacentini et al. 1989; Takahashi et al. 1992).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish are lethargic and swim near the surface. Consistent with anemia, the principle sign of the disease is pallor of the gills and liver. Fish may also exhibit splenomegaly and hyperemia

of the intestine. Moribund fish exhibit extremely low hematocrit values, often below 10%.

**MICROSCOPY.** Blood smears reveal an increase in immature erythrocytes, often as high as 80%. Multiple inclusions within erythrocytes are characteristic of the disease (Fig. 5-3b).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Strong presumptive diagnosis can be obtained by observing multiple inclusions about 0.8-2.0  $\mu\text{m}$  in the cytoplasm of erythrocytes in blood smears stained with either Giemsa (Fig. 5-3b) or stained with pinacynol chloride (Yasutake 1987). EIBS virus inclusions differ from those of VEN in that the latter are larger and usually singular. In contrast to VEN, EIBS inclusions are often difficult to see in blood smears. Confirmatory diagnosis can be made by visualizing viral particles (75-100 nm) in the cytoplasm of erythrocytes (Fig. 6-5).



**Figure 6-5.** Electron micrograph of erythrocyte of coho salmon infected with EIBS virus. (Courtesy of J. Morrison).

### Salmonid herpesvirus 2 infections

Several members of the family Herpesviridae are well recognized pathogens of fishes (Wolf 1988a, b). In Japan, a herpesvirus type 2 (SH-2) infection has caused up to 30 % mortality in pen-reared coho salmon (Kumagai et al. 1994). The disease affects fish from less than 100 g to 1 kg, and epizootics usually last from 30-80 days.

Certain strains of salmon herpes virus 2 (e.g., *Oncorhynchus masou* virus [OMV] and yamame tumor virus [YTV]), cause liver damage in young fish, and fish that survive the infection may later develop epithelial tumors (Sano et al. 1983; Kimura et al. 1981 a,b; Kimura and Yoshimizu 1991; Yoshimizu et al. 1995).

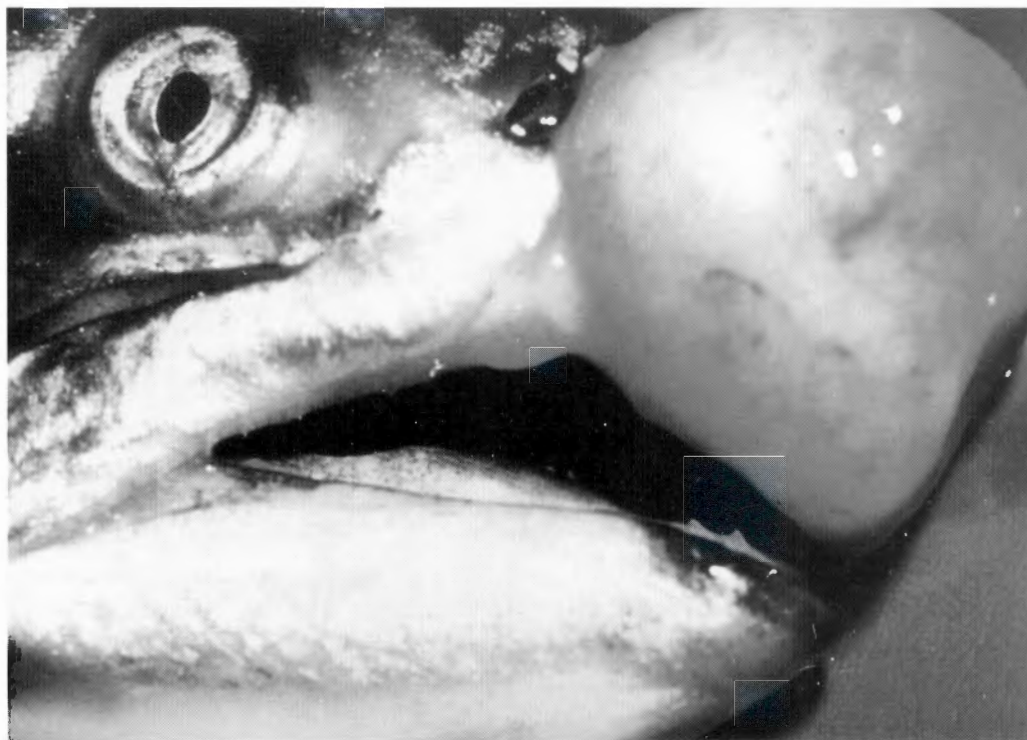
**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish are dark in color, and exhibit skin ulcers and erosion of the fins. The liver exhibits focal pale areas, and the intestinal tract show erythema. Surface tumors appear as whitish papillomatous masses around the mouth, eyes, fins, or gills (Fig. 6-6). Renal tumors occasionally are observed, which appear as solid, well-defined white masses.

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological examination reveals severe, multifocal acute necrosis of the liver parenchyma. Histology of the tumors reveals that they consist of epitheloid cells (Kimura et al. 1981 b).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Focal necrosis of the liver in coho salmon reared in Japan is presumptive diagnosis for the disease. Confirmatory diagnosis is achieved by isolation of the virus from affected livers on CHSE-214 or RTG-2 cell lines. Syncytia formation occurs in the latter.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** As with other viral diseases, the best method to control the infection is avoidance. Kumagai et al. (1997) linked outbreaks in seawater netpens with previous infections at freshwater hatcheries, and that pen to pen transmission in sea water was negligible. They also reported that rainbow trout may act as subclinical reservoirs for the infection. Based on their findings, Kumagai et al. (1997) recommended the following to control the infection: 1) do not rear other salmonids with coho salmon; 2) disinfect facilities after out-planting stocks; 3) avoid smolts from contaminated hatcheries; 4) examine fish for virus shortly after seawater introduction.

Kimura et al. (1983) reported that daily immersion of chum salmon in the anti-viral compound acyclovir suppressed the growth of OMV-associated tumors. These authors also found that oral treatment with another anti-viral drug, IUdR, decreased mortality due to the infection. Surface tumors are often removed manually at harvest from fish before they are sent to market.



**Figure 6-6.** Epithelial tumor on pen-reared coho salmon with OMV virus infection (Courtesy of T. Kimura)

---

# FUNGI AND RELATED ORGANISMS

M. L. Kent and T. T. Poppe

Two fungus-like organisms, the rosette agent and *Ichthyophonus* (presumably *I. hoferi*), and a true fungus, *Exophiala* sp., have been recognized as causes of disease in pen-reared salmon.

## Rosette Agent

A severe infectious disease of chinook reared in netpens occurred repeatedly at the U.S. National Marine Fisheries Service experimental station in Manchester, Washington, USA (Elston et al. 1986; Harrell et al. 1986). The disease is caused by an unclassified intracellular protistan parasite, called the "rosette agent". Based on ribosomal DNA data Kerk et al. (1995) reported that the rosette agent is most closely related to choanoflagellates (subphylum Choanozoa), an unusual group of protists evolutionary between fungi and animals. Using similar sequence comparisons, Ragan et al. (1996) demonstrated that the rosette agent, *Dermocystidium salmonis* of salmon gills, and *Ichthyophonus hoferi* form a distinct group, and Cavalier-Smith and Allsopp (1996) assigned this group to a new class, the Ichthyosporia, within the subphylum Choanozoa.

The rosette agent primarily infects macrophages in the spleen and kidney, but it may occur in other organs in heavy infections. Mortality due to the disease is highest in the summer and fall, and losses of over 90% have occurred in some years. Epizootics caused by the pathogen have only been observed in chinook during their second summer in sea water (Harrell et al. 1986), but younger chinook can be experimentally infected (Elston et al. 1986). Elston et al. (1986) isolated the organism in culture and found that it grew only in the CHSE-214 cell line, which is derived from chinook. The authors concluded that the organism is an obligate intracellular parasite of chinook, but the source of infection was not determined. In California a similar, probably identical organism, has been reported in Atlantic salmon reared in fresh water (Hedrick et al. 1989) and in chinook salmon in sea water (Arkush 1997). The parasite infects seawater-reared S1 and S2 Atlantic salmon smolts as well as market-size fish on the Atlantic coast of Canada (Cawthorn et al. 1991).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Infected chinook are anemic, and exhibit an enlarged spleen and kidney. Pen-reared Atlantic salmon often with the infection exhibited a marked black appearance, and thus the condition is referred to

as "black smolt syndrome" in Atlantic Canada. Atlantic salmon smolts may exhibit no gross changes to hypertrophy of liver, kidney and spleen with yellow to white nodules. Petechiae may occur on affected organs.

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological examination of heavily infected spleens and kidneys reveals numerous eosinophilic spherical organisms in phagocytic cells associated with multifocal necrosis and chronic inflammation. The organism can readily be identified from heavily infected fish in Giemsa-stained imprints of the spleen and kidney. In imprints, the parasites appear as 3-7  $\mu\text{m}$  spheres surrounded by a distinct clear halo around the exterior (Fig. 5-2f). They are often found in clusters or rosettes within macrophages, hence the name rosette agent. The organism is Gram positive, and thus stains blue to black in Gram-stained imprints (Fig. 5-2e).

**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection is diagnosed by detecting the parasite in either histological sections or Giemsa-stained imprints of the kidney or spleen.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There are no known treatments for rosette agent infections.

## *Ichthyophonus hoferi*

*Ichthyophonus hoferi* is a common pathogen of many species of wild marine fishes (McVicar 1982; Sinderman 1990). The infection is very prevalent in some species, and the organism has caused severe disease and mortality in some fishes, such as Atlantic herring (Sinderman 1990) and plaice (McVicar 1982). The fungus also causes disease in freshwater species. Infections have been reported in freshwater-reared rainbow trout, which were apparently the result of feeding infected marine fish. Salmonids are very susceptible to the infection (Miyazaki and Kubota 1977), and McVicar (1982) warned that salmon would be vulnerable to the infection when reared in netpens. The organism is spread from fish to fish by ingestion of spores or infected fish.

We have observed heavy infections in Atlantic salmon smolts in their first summer in sea water. It is unclear how and when the smolts became infected. However, Atlantic salmon smolts often feed heavily on natural marine organisms, and the infected fish were feeding on calinoid copepods about a month

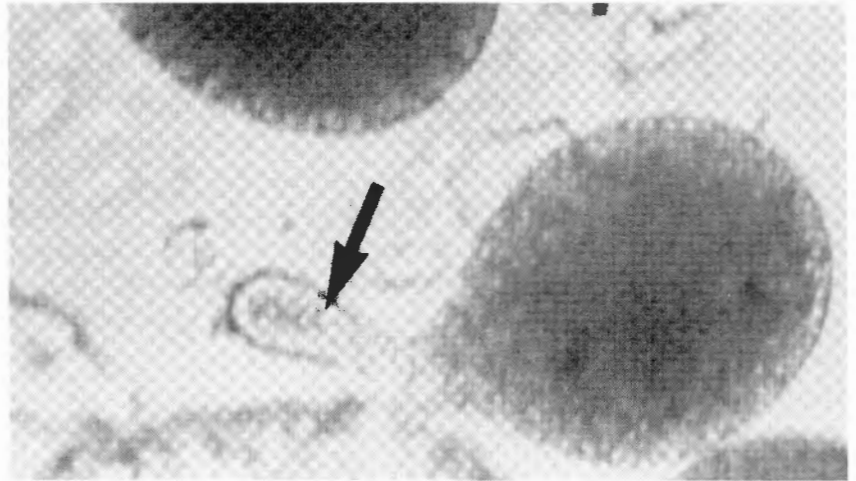
before the infection was detected. Some have suggested that the organism is spread in infected copepods, and it is possible the smolts became infected by feeding on infected copepods or another marine organism.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Infected Atlantic salmon smolts from netpens in British Columbia were lethargic and extremely emaciated, clinical signs that have also been reported in other fish infected with *I. hoferi*, which include curvature of the spine (McVicar 1982). Dissection of heavily infected fish reveals focal, white granulomatous lesions in the visceral organs, particularly the heart. Infections of the skeletal muscle may reduce flesh quality. Although poor flesh quality has not been associated with the infection in salmon, this condition has been observed in non-salmonid fishes (McVicar 1982).

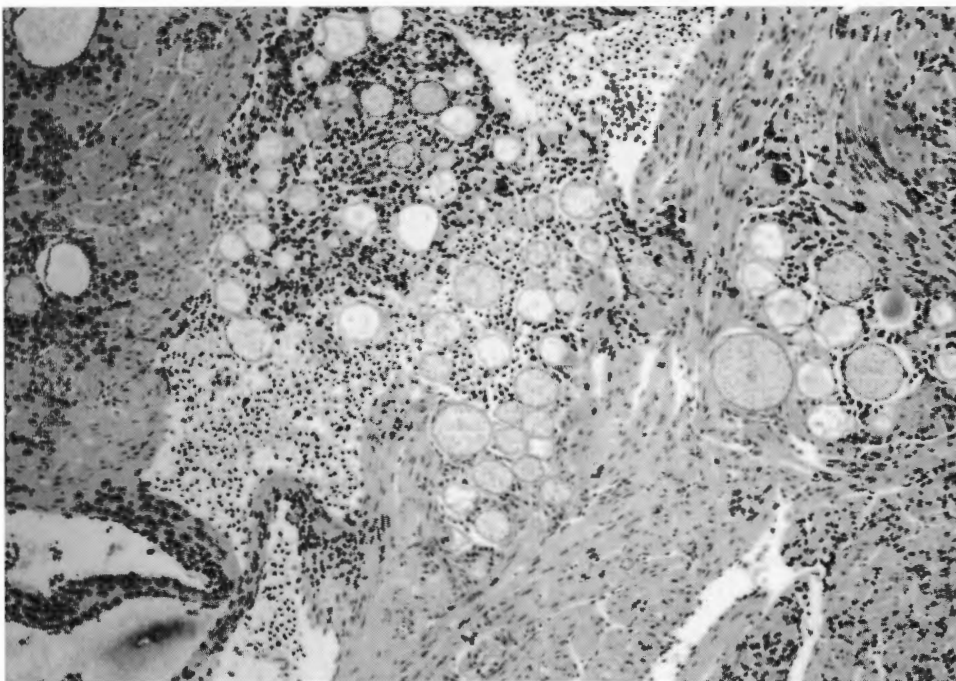
**MICROSCOPY.** Squash preparations or histological sections of infected organs reveal the resting spores with thick walls (Fig. 7-1), which is the most commonly observed developmental stage in fish. The spores are variable in size and may reach 100-200  $\mu\text{m}$  (McVicar 1982). The spores are Periodic acid-Schiff (PAS) positive and are multinucleated. After the host dies, the spores produce a germination tube and branched hyphae (Fig. 7-2). In plaice and haddock, the spores germinate 15-30 min after death at 20°C (McVicar 1982).

The tissue reaction to *Ichthyophonus* infections is characterized by granuloma formation around the resting spores (Fig. 7-2). Infections are often most severe in the heart, but essentially any visceral organ, the skeletal muscle, and the brain may be infected.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection can be presumptively diagnosed in squash preparations by observing the spherical bodies of varying size ranging up to 200  $\mu\text{m}$ . Confirmatory diagnosis can be achieved by observing post mortem sporulation of the resting spores or by observing the multinucleate resting spores, with a thick fibrous capsule, in histological sections. *Ichthyophonus* has been cultured in vitro, but this is not required for identification because the large resting spores are distinct from other fungi and related pathogens of fishes.



**Figure 7-2.** Wet mount preparation of *Ichthyophonus* spore. Arrow = germination tube. (Courtesy of the Registry of Study Materials of the Charles Louis Davis, D.V.M. Foundation for the Advancement of Veterinary & Comparative Pathology).



**Figure 7-1.** Multinucleate *Ichthyophonus* spores in the heart of an Atlantic salmon. H & E.

## Fungi and Related Organisms

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Van Dujin (1956) indicated that fungicidal drugs such as phenoxyethanol might be effective for treating early infections. However, there are no commercially available therapeutants for *Ichthyophonus* infections, and the disease is generally considered incurable. Salmon in netpens may become infected by feeding on natural marine biota (e.g., Pacific herring or copepods). If this is indeed the case, it would be very difficult to avoid the infection in the netpen environment.

### Systemic Mycosis (*Exophiala* spp.)

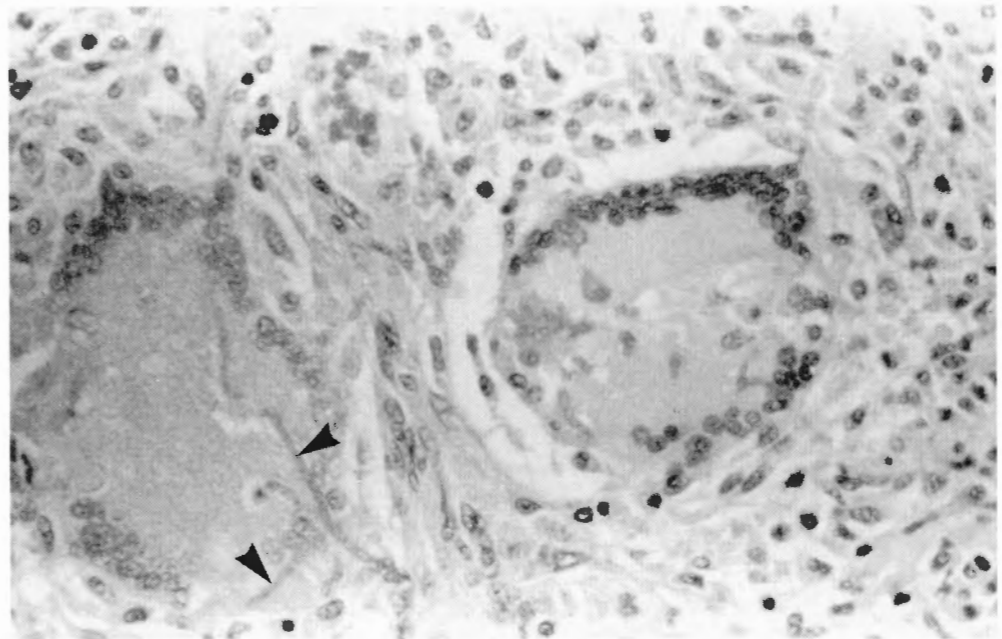
Several systemic fungal diseases are described in fish, but in salt-water farmed salmonids, those caused by *Exophiala* spp. seem to be the most commonly occurring (Richards et al. 1978; Blazer and Wolke 1979; Pedersen and Langvad 1988;). These fungi are widespread in soil and deteriorating organic material, and may also be found in fish feeds kept under damp conditions. The most commonly described species are *E. salmonis*, *E. pisciphila* and *E. psychrophila*.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Clinical signs may be variable depending on the severity and location of lesions but frequently involve nervous symptoms like erratic swimming and whirling or circling movements. Affected fish are usually dark and may exhibit abdominal distention and exophthalmos. At necropsy, the posterior part of the kidney may be grossly enlarged and more or less fill the rear part of the abdominal cavity thereby pushing other abdominal organs cranially. The enlarged kidney consists of granulomas of variable size and age mixed with necrotic areas. Granulomas may also be found in liver and spleen.

**MICROSCOPY.** The lesions are characterized by multiple granulomas where centrally located multinucleate giant cells containing fungal hyphae dominate (Fig. 7-3). There is often considerable inflammatory response in the adjacent areas with massive infiltration of lymphocytes and macrophages. Septate and branching hyphae are usually easily seen in the granulomas and in the giant cells (Fig. 7-3). These are even more visible with PAS-staining. The growth of the fungus is highly infiltrative and may spread rapidly from the kidney to most other organs including heart, brain, muscle and nervous tissue where similar lesions as in the kidney may be found. Healing lesions are typically dark and consisting of fibrous tissue and melanomacrophages.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis is based on demonstration of PAS-positive septate and branching hyphae in smears from affected tissue or histologically in granulomas and multinucleate giant cells. The fungus may also be cultivated on Sabouraud's agar at 25 °C, where it develops characteristic dark grey to black colonies. Identification to species level may be difficult.

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL.** Although the antifungal compound Natamycin has shown good effect in *Exophiala*-infected fish, treatment is not practical and will be too expensive under farming conditions. Avoidance through strict hygienic measures including cleaning of automatic feeders is the best preventive measure. The use of soil-based biological filters in smolt farms have also been a source of infection in Atlantic salmon and should be monitored carefully.



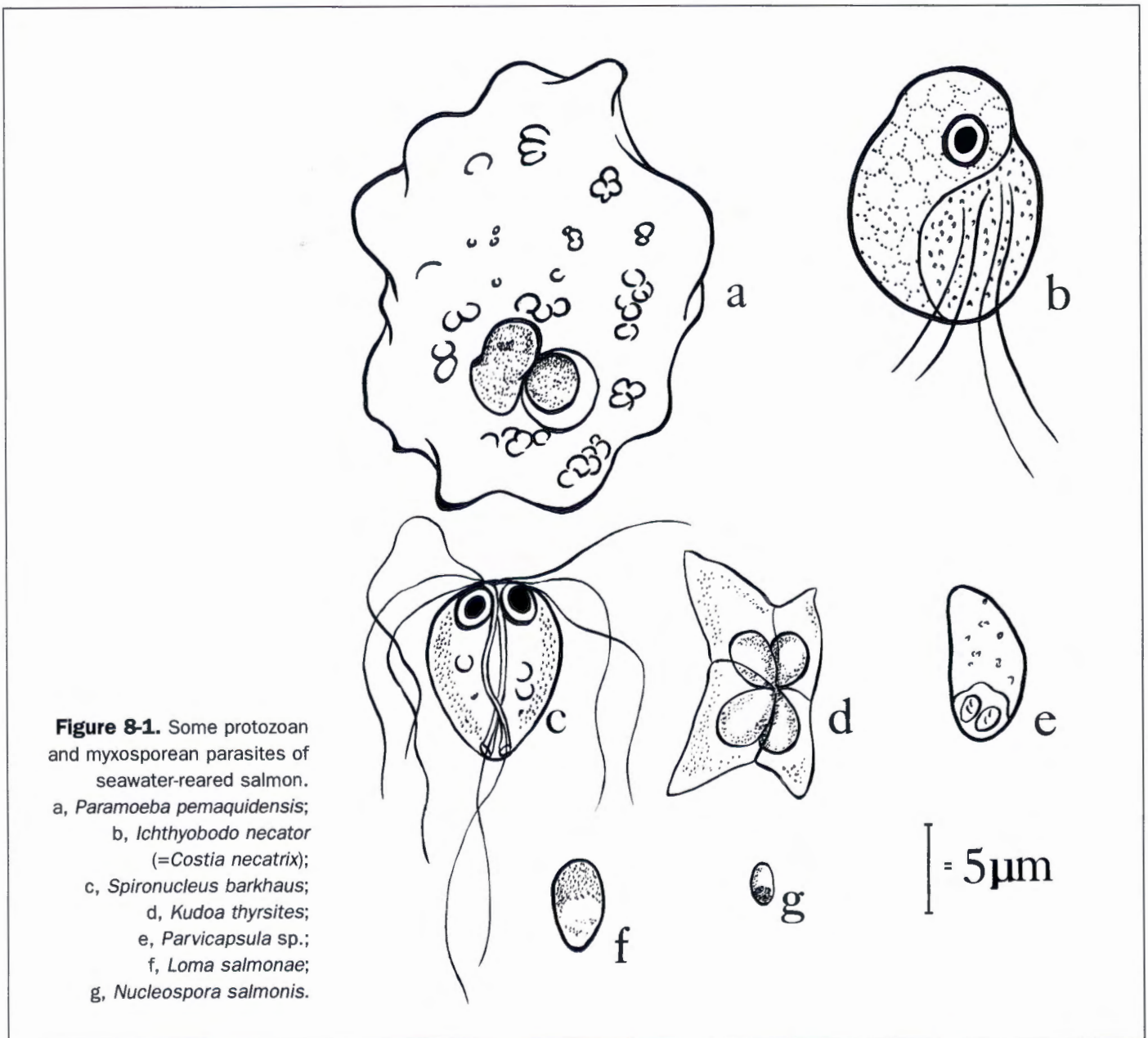
**Figure 7-3.** Chronic inflammatory response to *Exophiala* infection. Note multinucleate giant cell reaction and fungal hyphae (arrowheads). H & E.

# PROTOZOA AND MYXOZOA

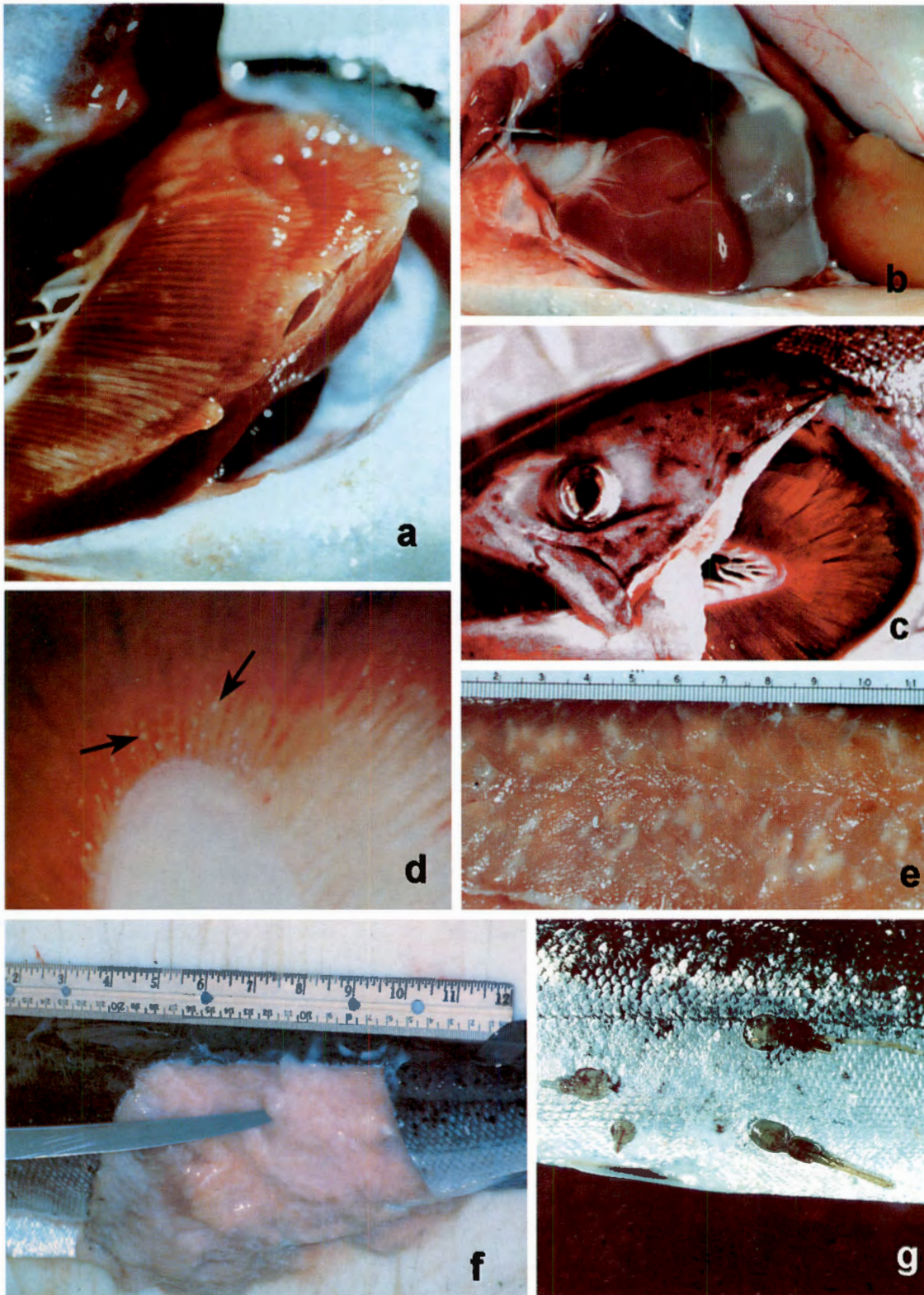
M. L. Kent

Protozoans and myxosporeans (phylum Myxozoa) are important pathogens of pen-reared salmonids (Fig. 8-1). An amoeba, *Paramoeba pemaquidensis*, a flagellate, *Ichthyobodo* (= *Costia*) sp., and *Trichodina* infect gill surfaces of salmon. Systemic infections by *Cryptobia salmositica* and a diplomonad flagellate, similar to *Hexamita salmonis*, have caused disease in chinook salmon in British Columbia. Another diplomonad (*Spironucleus barkhanus*) has caused extra-intestinal infections in Atlantic salmon in Norway. Four myxosporeans (*Parvicapsula* sp., *Myxobolus aeglefini*, *Kudoa*

*thyrsites*, and *Chloromyxum truttae*) and three microsporidians (*Loma salmonae*, *Nucleospora salmonis*, and *Microsporidium cerebralis*) infect internal organs. Although recent reports assigned the myxosporeans (phylum Myxozoa) to the Metazoa (Smothers et al. 1994; Siddall et al. 1995), we include them here with the protozoa to remain consistent with other texts on fish pathology. Furthermore, microsporeans are considered by many taxonomists to be separate from the Protozoa, and are now placed in the ancient kingdom Archizoa.



**Figure 8-1.** Some protozoan and myxosporean parasites of seawater-reared salmon.  
 a, *Paramoeba pemaquidensis*;  
 b, *Ichthyobodo necator* (= *Costia necatrix*);  
 c, *Spironucleus barkhanus*;  
 d, *Kudoa thyrsites*;  
 e, *Parvicapsula* sp.;  
 f, *Loma salmonae*;  
 g, *Nucleospora salmonis*.



**Figure 8-2. Parasite infections in pen-reared salmon**

a. Rainbow trout with *Paramoeba* gill infection. Note white areas in gill filaments. (Courtesy of C.K. Foster). b. Chinook salmon with systemic diplomonad infection. Note chicken fat clots in pericardium. c, d. Chinook salmon with *Loma salmonae* infection. Examination of gills with a dissecting microscope (d) reveals numerous xenomas (arrows). c. Note appearance of gills with no

obvious xenomas as seen with the naked eye. e, f. *Kudoa thyrsites* infection in Atlantic salmon. e. Multifocal white patches in smoked Atlantic salmon fillet. f. Severe myoliquefaction in an Atlantic salmon that was held on ice for 6 d. g. Sea lice *Lepeophtherius salmonis* infection on Atlantic salmon. Note small, shallow ulcer associated with the infection.

Gill Amoebiasis

*Paramoeba pemaquidensis* (Sarcomastigophora: Paramoebidae) has been associated with severe gill disease in coho reared in netpens in Washington State and land-based seawater tanks in California (Kent et al. 1988c). A similar, possibly identical, amoeba has caused devastating losses in pen-reared rainbow trout and Atlantic salmon in Tasmania (Munday et al. 1990, 1993; Roubal et al. 1989). *Paramoeba pemaquidensis* is an opportunistic pathogen that is normally a free-living amoeba in sea water. Intensity and prevalence of the amoeba on fish gills has varied from year to year, with infections being most prevalent in the late summer and fall. At one farm in Washington, 25% mortality was attributed to the amoeba in 1985. The exact environmental conditions or health status of the fish that allow the organism to proliferate on fish gills are unknown. Presumably fish already compromised by other diseases are more susceptible to the infection, and at

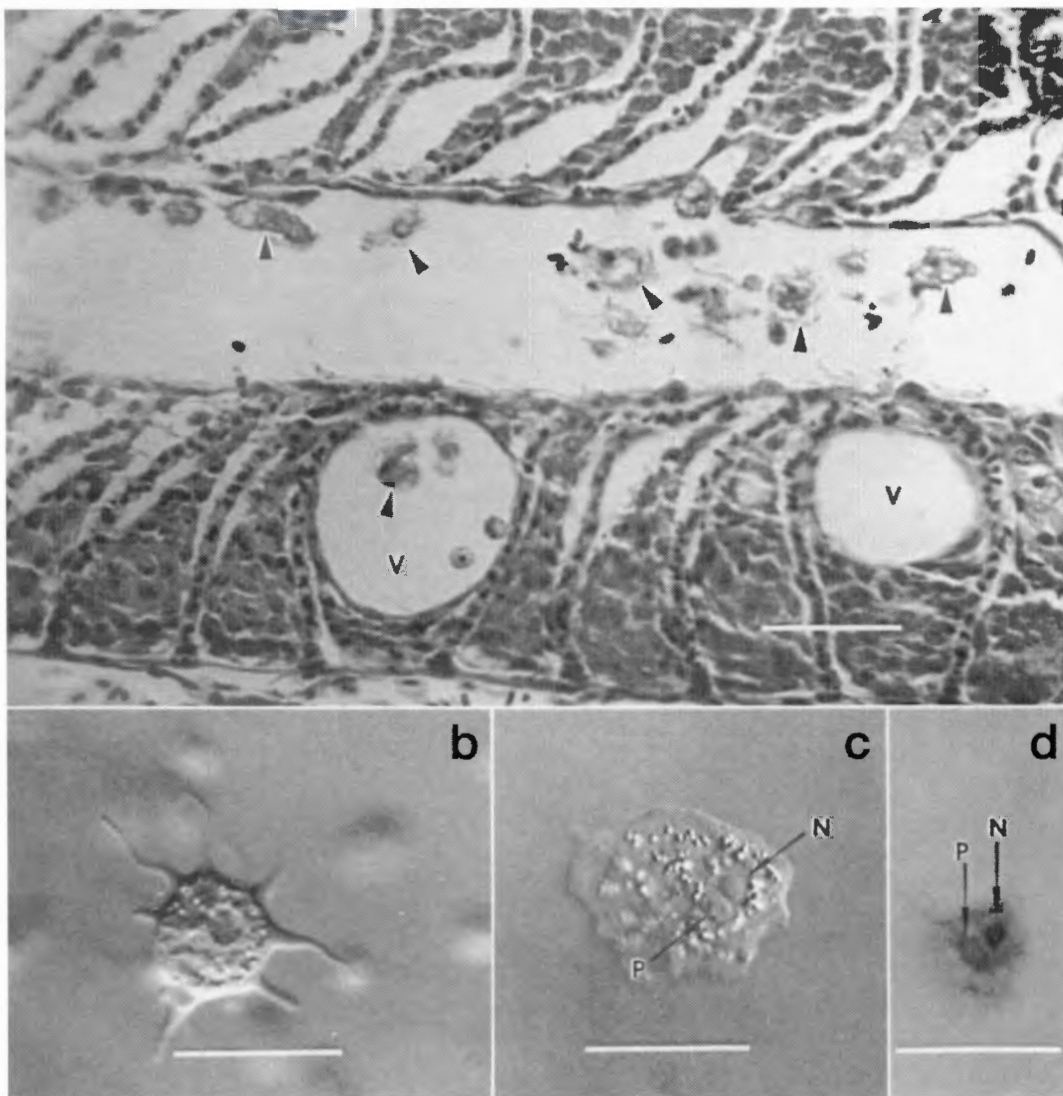
times heavy infections are observed on fish debilitated by pre-existing disease or smoltification problems.

CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.

Consistent with respiratory problems of fish, heavily infected fish are lethargic, accumulate at the surface, and have flared opercula. Excessive mucus is often observed on heavily infected gills. Focal, whitish patches may be observed on heavily infected fish (Fig. 8-2a).

**MICROSCOPY.** Floating and transitional forms of the amoeba on the gills are 20-30 µm in diameter and have several digitiform pseudopodia (Fig. 8-3). Careful observation reveals movement in the amoebae. In wet mounts, amoebae will attach to the slide after about an hour, resulting in a locomotive form measuring about 20 X 25 µm. *Paramoeba* spp. contain a unique structure, called a parasome or Nebenkörper, which is adjacent to the nucleus. The parasome can be observed in wet

mounts of locomotive forms, and is readily visible with Feulgen DNA stains (Fig. 8-3). Histological sections of affected gills reveal prominent epithelial hyperplasia and fusion of the distal portion of secondary lamellae, which often results in formation of large interlamellar vesicles (Fig. 8-3). The amoebae are usually confined to the gill surface and rarely penetrate the epithelium.



**Figure 8-3.** *Paramoeba pemaquidensis* from coho salmon gills. a. Epithelial hyperplasia, fusion of the secondary lamellae and interlamellar vesicles (V) associated with amoebae (arrowheads). Wet mounts of transitional form (b) and locomotive form (c), Nomarski phase contrast. d. Feulgen stain of amoeba. N = nucleus, P = parasome. (Courtesy of Dis. Aquat. Org.).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Paramoebiasis of salmon is diagnosed by the detection of large numbers of the amoebae on the gills. The organisms are best identified in fresh wet mount preparations of the gills. Amoebae can also be identified on gill surfaces in histological preparations, but many detach from the gill surfaces during processing. The amoebae can also be identified with specific polyclonal antibodies in tissue sections or imprints (Howard and Carson 1993a).

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL.** Munday et al. (1993) found that most compounds typically used as external treatments (e.g., formalin, chelated copper, diquat, malachite green and chloramine T) did not eradicate the disease, but they found that the amoeba is quickly eradicated from fish gills with freshwater bath treatments. The organism requires sea water for growth and survival, and grows poorly at salinities below 10 ppt (Kent et al. 1988c). Cameron (1993) reported that reducing seawater concentrations to 4 ppt was needed for effective treatment. Reducing the salinity has been effective for eradicating infections in fish held in land-based tanks, but this treatment is usually difficult to apply and impractical in netpens. Cameron (1993) reported that hydrogen peroxide bath treatments at concentrations between 200-400 ppm were moderately effective at controlling the infection, and Howard and Carson (1993b) reported that 100 ppm hydrogen peroxide for 2 h caused total killing of the organism. However, Cameron (1994) found that hydrogen peroxide did not control the infection in field situations, even when used at 300 ppm. Nevertheless, there is a narrow safety window for treating fish with hydrogen peroxide because it may be toxic, particularly when applied at higher temperatures (Cameron 1993; Johnson et al. 1993).

### Diplomonad Flagellates

Severe systemic infections by a diplomonad flagellate (family Hexamitidae) resembling *Hexamita salmonis* caused close to 50% mortality in chinook at one netpen site in the Sechelt area, British Columbia (Kent et al. 1992). The fish were introduced to sea water in the spring of 1990 and showed unusual mortality starting in September 1991. Interestingly, about the same time, extraintestinal infections by a similar parasite was reported in post smolt to adult Atlantic salmon reared at various netpen farms in northern Norway (Mo et al. 1990; Poppe et al. 1992). *Hexamita salmonis* is a common parasite of the intestinal tract of salmonids reared in fresh water. Most infections do not cause disease, but some reports have attributed anorexia, emaciation, poor growth and mortality in salmon fry to the infection (Davis 1961; Sano 1970; Becker 1977). Other diplomonad parasites

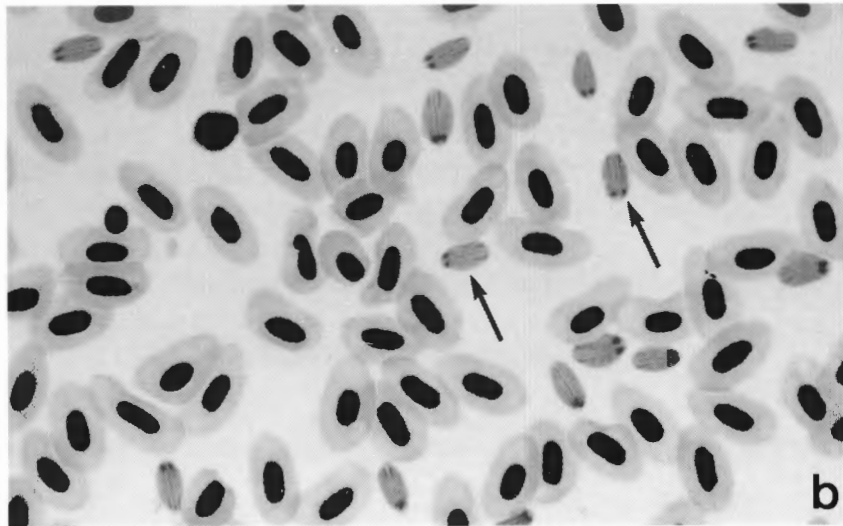
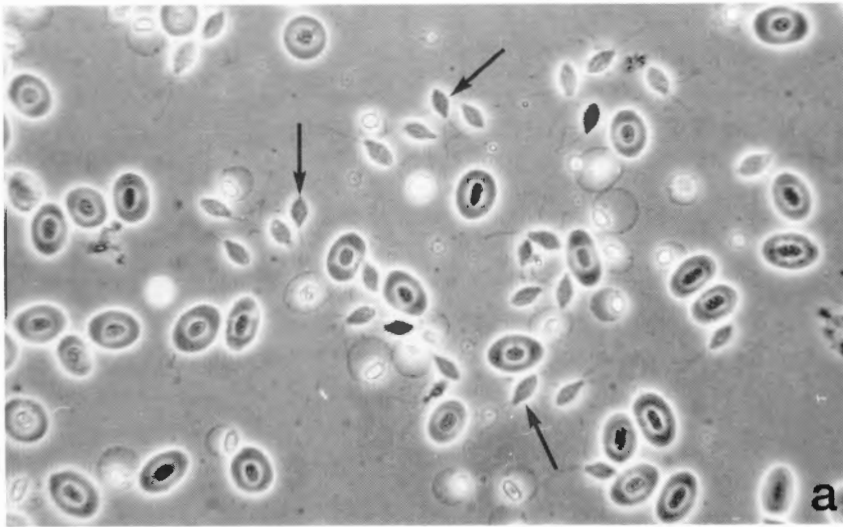
infect strictly marine fish (Poynton and Morrison 1990), and Lom (1984) suggested that *H. salmonis* may persist in salmonids after they migrate to sea water. Systemic infections by diplomonad parasites in fish are rare and we are aware of only one other report of such infections; Ferguson and Moccia (1980) reported a similar disease in Siamese fighting fish. Although the flagellates observed in pen-reared chinook salmon were morphologically indistinguishable from the relatively non-pathogenic *H. salmonis* that infects the intestinal tract of salmonids in fresh water, it may represent a new, highly invasive strain or species. Streud et al. (1997a) recently named the organism from pen-reared Atlantic salmon and grayling and Artic char from fresh water as *Spironucleus barkhanus*, and Sterud et al. (1997b) suggested that wild Artic char may be source of the infection for pen-reared Atlantic salmon in Norway.

In both freshwater and seawater aquaria, we could readily reproduce the systemic disease in chinook by water-borne exposure of the fish to infected blood and viscera, or by cohabitation with infected fish. However, the parasite of Atlantic salmon was not easily transmitted.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** In chinook salmon from British Columbia, infected fish appeared normal except some fish exhibited a distended, swollen abdomen. The gills were pale due to anemia. The hallmark gross pathologic change of the disease is an extremely enlarged liver. The liver may also be mottled, and have petechial hemorrhages and whitish, friable areas. Affected fish consistently exhibited serosanguineous ascites and blood clots in the visceral cavity. The clots were often pale and translucent – i.e., “chicken fat clots” (Fig. 8-2b). The spleen and kidney were moderately enlarged, and petechiae occurred throughout the skeletal muscle.

In Atlantic salmon, the infection differs in that the parasite causes large, multifocal, white, lesions in the musculature, liver, spleen, and kidney (Poppe et al. 1992). Yellow or white cysts filled with the parasite may also occur in the fins, and infected fish often exhibit exophthalmia (Poppe and Mo 1993).

**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mount preparations of the visceral organs reveals massive numbers of highly motile flagellates that are 10 X 5 µm (Fig. 8-4a). The parasites are also readily detected in Diff-Quick or Giemsa-stained imprints (Fig. 8-4b), where they appear as dark-staining, oval bodies and two clear bands, representing the flagellar pocket, running through the length of the organism. Depending on the staining technique, two nuclei at the anterior end of the parasite may be visible.



**Figure 8-4.** Systemic diplomonad flagellates (arrows) from chinook salmon. a. Phase contrast wet mount. b. Blood smear, Giemsa stain.

Histological examination of infected chinook reveals massive numbers of the parasites in blood vessels of essentially all organs, with particularly high concentrations in the liver and the lamina propria of the lower intestine. The liver is edematous and shows diffuse infiltration of inflammatory cells resembling lymphoblasts and plasmablasts in the sinusoids. The renal interstitium is hyperplastic. Although many parasites are observed in blood vessels of the lamina propria and submucosa of the gut, the epithelium is usually intact. With Atlantic salmon from Norway, Poppe et al. (1992) reported focal areas of coagulative and caseous necrosis, and in some cases the lesions were also comprised of substantial chronic inflammation and fibrosis. The parasite also infects the brain and is associated with encephalitis and suppurative meningitis.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection is identified by wet mount preparations or stained imprints of the gut or visceral organs. Because the parasite is highly motile, it may be easier to identify the parasites in wet mounts.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Several drugs, most of which are added to the diet, have been recommended for the control of *H. salmonis* infections in the gut of salmonids (Yasutake et al. 1961; McElwain and Post 1968; Becker 1977; Hoffman and Meyer 1974; Tojo and Santamarina 1998). Nitroimidazoles (e.g., metronidazole) and other compounds such as albendazole and diethylcarbamazine) are effective for controlling these infections. However, at this time, none of these compounds are approved for treatment of food fish in Canada. Although we have determined that the disease is transmissible in sea water, we have yet to determine if the chinook contracted the infection in sea water, or were subclinically infected when they were transferred to netpens. The same is the case with the disease in Norway. At present, the best guess is that both infections were contracted in sea water. In addition, Poppe et al. (1992) suggested that fish could become infected by exposure to untreated water from processing facilities. An understanding of the source of the infection would be helpful for implementing effective

control strategies or prophylactic treatments.

### ***Ichthyobodo (=Costia) gill infections***

The bodonid flagellate *Ichthyobodo necator* is a common ectoparasitic pathogen of fishes reared in fresh water (Becker 1977). *Ichthyobodo* infections have been observed on seawater-reared Atlantic salmon in Europe, and it was suspected that the fish acquired the infections in fresh water (Ellis and Wootten 1978; Roubal et al. 1987). However, *Ichthyobodo* has also been observed on strictly marine fishes, such as flatfishes and haddock (Cone and Wiles 1984; Bullock and Robertson 1982; Morrison and Cone 1986; Diamant 1987). Using cross infection studies, Urawa and Kusakari (1990) determined that *Ichthyobodo* sp. of Japanese flounder was a different species than *I. necator* of salmonids, and they showed that the parasite from fresh water can survive and proliferate on fish transferred to sea water. We have occasionally observed

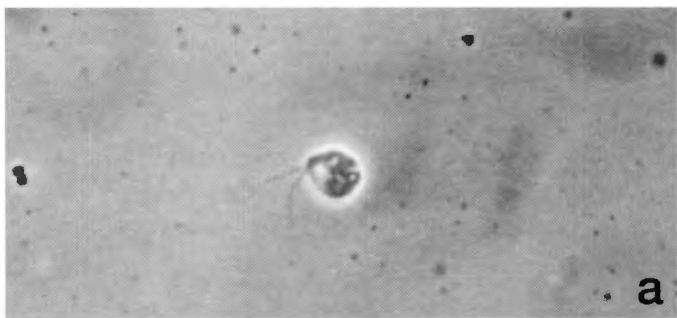
## Protozoa and Myxozoa

heavy *Ichthyobodo* infections associated with gill damage in pen-reared chinook from a few netpen sites in British Columbia. The parasite is transmitted directly from fish to fish. Multiplication is rapid, and untreated fish in confined environments can develop very heavy infections in a few days.

### CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.

Macroscopic changes in affected Pacific salmon have not been described. Heavily infected Atlantic salmon in Scotland were emaciated, anorexic, and swam near the surface (Ellis and Wootten 1978).

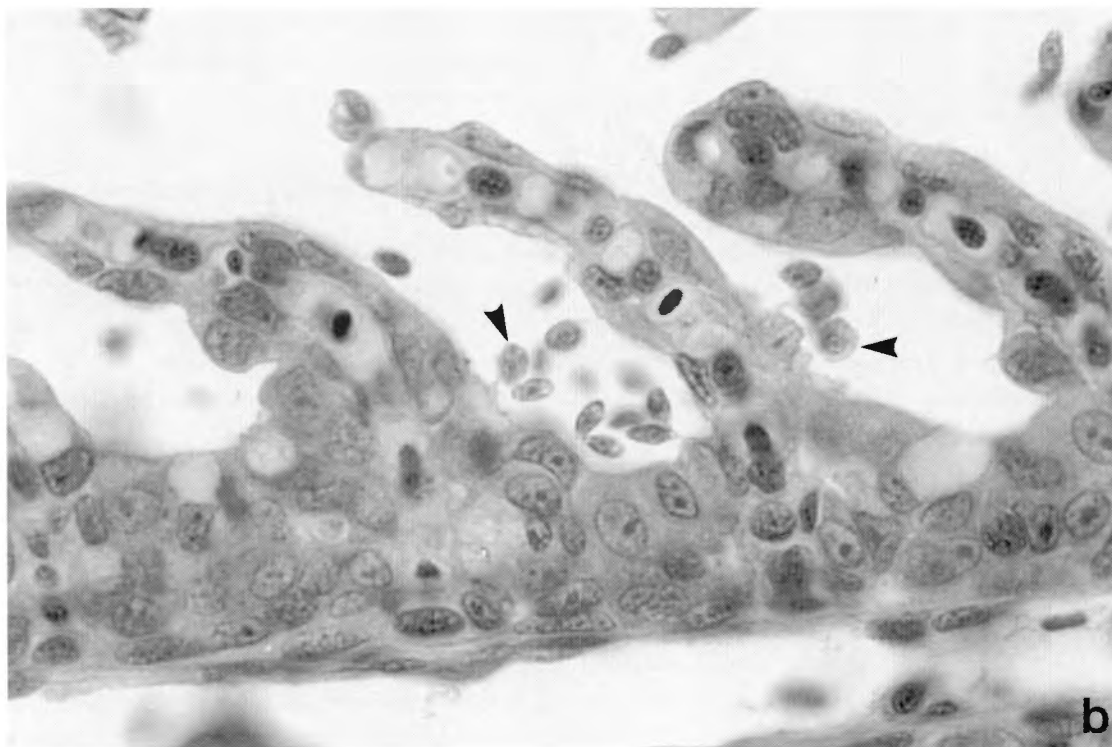
**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mount preparations of the gills and skin reveal numerous, motile parasites (Fig. 8-5a). The parasites are small (about 10-15  $\mu\text{m}$  long), and free-swimming forms are oval with two pairs of uneven flagella. *Ichthyobodo* appears to swim with a jerky, spiral pattern. Attached forms are pyriform with obscure flagella.



Histological sections of affected gills reveal diffuse, epithelial hyperplasia of the gill epithelium and attached parasites are found on the epithelial surfaces (Fig. 8-5b). Ellis and Wootten (1978) reported that heavily infected gills of pen-reared Atlantic salmon were infiltrated with melanomacrophages and that there was an increase in goblet cells.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection is identified by observing numerous flagellate parasites with the morphology described above on the gills or skin in wet mounts. *Ichthyobodo* can also be identified on gill surfaces in histological sections, but wet mounts are preferred because parasites may become dislodged from the gills during processing of tissues, and the small flagellates are more easily identified when they are actively motile.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** External treatments with formalin and malachite green have been used successfully to treat *Ichthyobodo* infections in fresh water (Hoffman and Meyer 1974; Becker 1977). However, these treatments would be difficult to apply in netpens and should be applied with great caution. For example, attempts at treating Atlantic salmon in netpens in New Brunswick with formalin at 1:10,000 caused heavy mortality within an hour (D. Speare, Atlantic Veterinary College, Prince Edward Island, Canada, pers. comm.).



**Figure 8-5.** *Ichthyobodo necator* from the gill surface of a chinook salmon. a. Wet mount preparation, phase contrast. b. Tissue section of gill, arrowhead = parasites. H & E.

**Cryptobiosis**

A flagellate identified as *Cryptobia salmositica* caused severe disease in adult chinook salmon at one netpen farm in British Columbia. This flagellate is common in salmonids from fresh water throughout the Pacific Northwest where the leech vector (*Piscicola salmositica*) is present. Although the parasite is usually transmitted with leeches, direct fish to fish transmission also occurs when fish are held in crowded culture conditions (Bower and Margolis 1983b). In wild fish, the infection is usually seen in sexually-mature salmon that have returned to fresh water to spawn. However, juveniles are also susceptible to the infection, and the parasite can persist in fish after they are transferred to sea water. See Woo and Poynton (1995) for an excellent review on *Cryptobia* and related flagellates.

Cryptobiosis was observed in chinook salmon at a netpen site which had previously recieved smolts infected with *C. salmositica* at the time of sea water transfer. The infection was only detected in fish undergoing sexual maturation, where more than 50% of this population died due to the infection.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Clinically infected fish were extremely anemic, exhibited bilateral exophthalmia, very swollen spleens and a moderately swollen kidney.

**MICROSCOPY.** When clinical disease is present, the parasite is readily seen in blood smears (Fig. 8-6). In fresh wet mounts of blood, the parasites are actively motile, exhibiting an undulating motion. The parasite is about 10 X 5 µm. Histological examinations do not reveal any pathognomonic changes. Infected fish exhibit generalized chronic inflammation.

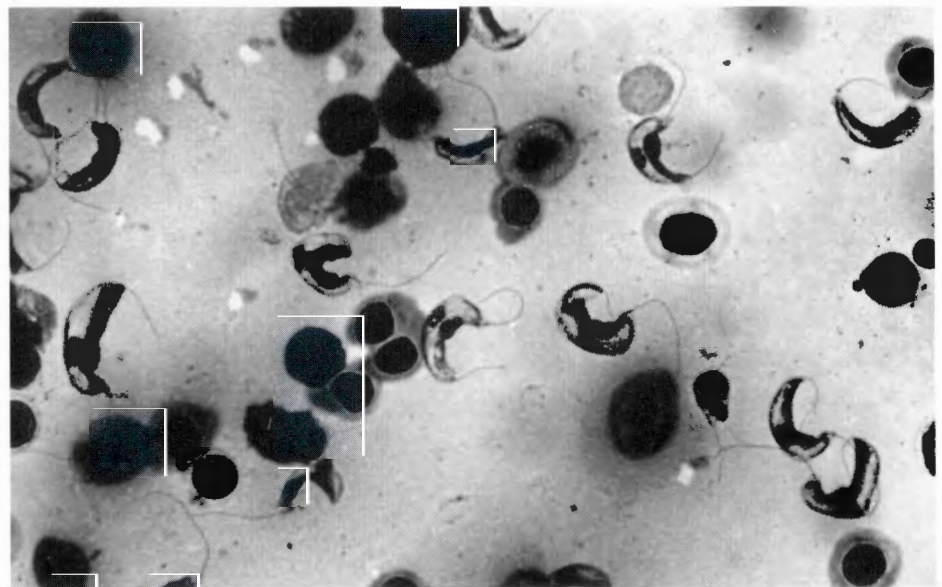
**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection is best diagnosed by examination of blood smears stained with Giemsa or Diff Quik or in wet mount preparations of blood. In subclinical infections, the infection is

often missed in standard blood smears. Examination of buffy coat from blood in a hematocrit tube will enhance the ability to detect light infections (Woo 1969; Bower and Margolis 1983a).

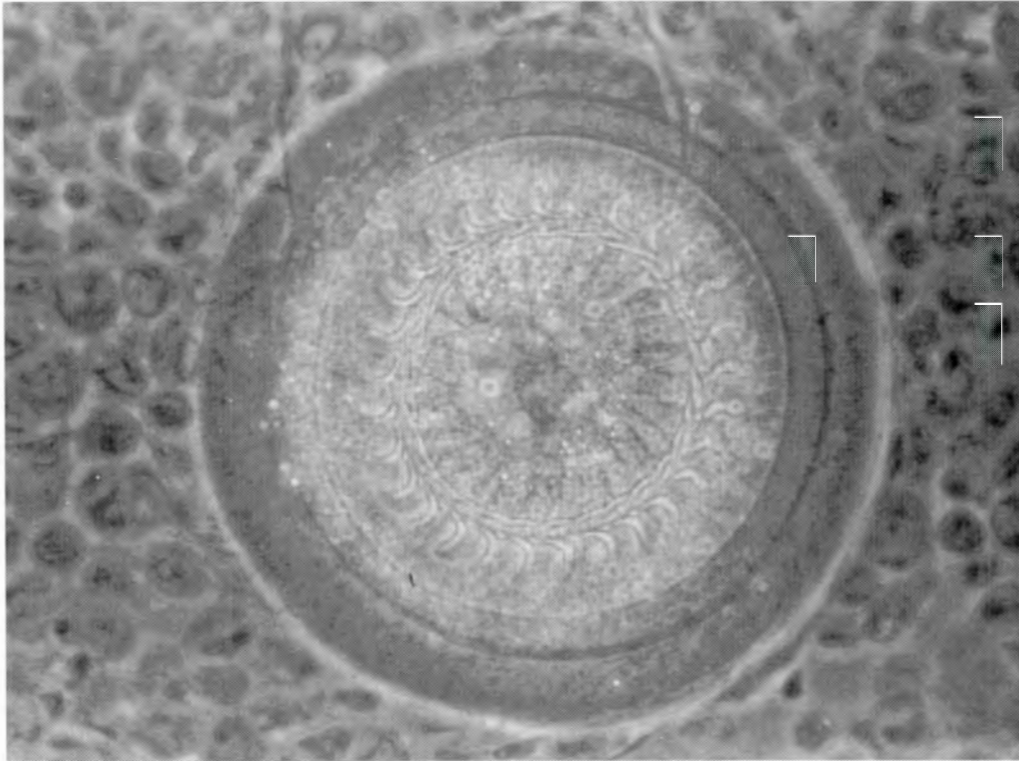
**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** At this time there are no commercially-available drugs to treat cryptobiosis. Adapting fish to 20 °C has been shown to greatly enhance survival with the infection in experimental conditions (Bower and Margolis 1985; Bower 1995). However, this is dangerous and impractical in most production situations. An attenuated live vaccine shows promise for protecting fish from the infection (Li and Woo 1997). This vaccine showed protection for at least 24 mo. after vaccination (Li and Woo 1995). There is a significant difference in strain and species susceptibility to the infections (Bower et al. 1995), and selection of resistant salmonid strains for culture would probably reduce the problem where the infection is unavoidable.

**CILIATES**

The only ciliate that has been recognized to cause disease in seawater-reared salmon is a *Trichodina* sp. Trichodinid ciliates are well-recognized skin and gill parasites of salmonids reared in fresh water, and McArdle (1984) observed gill lesions and mortality associated with heavy infections in yearling rainbow trout and maturing Atlantic salmon reared in netpens in Ireland. In Norway, we observe concurrent gill infections by trichodinid ciliates and *Ichthyobodo*. In these cases, *Ichthyobodo* is found on the secondary lamellae, while the ciliates are found between the primary lamellae at the base of the gill filaments.



**Figure 8-6.** *Cryptobia salmositica* in the blood of chinook salmon. Diff Quik.



**Figure 8-7.** *Trichodina* from the gills of salmon.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Trichodinid infections are identified by examining gills or skin scrapings in wet mount preparations, which readily demonstrate the actively moving, discoid ciliates (Fig. 8-7).

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** McArdle (1984) reported that treatment with formalin at a concentration of 1:2000 or 1:4000 for 1/2 h was effective for eradicating the parasite.

### MYXOSPOREANS

Myxosporean parasites (phylum Myxozoa, class Myxosporea) are common parasites of cold-blooded vertebrates, particularly fishes, and hundreds of species have been described (Lom and Noble 1984; Lom 1987). Traditionally the Myxozoa have been classified with the Protozoa. However, analysis of small subunit ribosomal DNA revealed that the Myxozoa rooted within the kingdom Animalia (Smothers et al. 1994). Siddall et al. (1995) subsequently reported that, based on ribosomal DNA sequence and morphological features, the Myxozoa are most closely related to the Cnidaria. Affinities of the Myxozoa with the Cnidaria have been suggested for many years (Lom 1989), particularly due to similarities of polar capsules with nematocysts.

Most myxosporeans are relatively non-pathogenic. Histoziotic species usually form small, confined white cysts with little associated tissue damage. However, when these cysts are

numerous in vital organs, such as the gills or heart, they can cause disease. Furthermore, heavy infections of histoziotic myxosporeans in the flesh may lower the market value of the affected fish. Pathogenic coelozoic species generally cause more diffuse infections without macroscopically visible cysts. Several species are recognized pathogens of salmonid fishes reared in fresh water (e.g., *Myxobolus cerebralis*, *Ceratomyxa shasta*, and the PKX myxosporean). Four myxosporeans (*Kudoa thyrssites*, *Chloromyxum truttae*, *Myxobolus aeglefini* and *Parvicapsula* sp.) cause problems in seawater pen-reared salmon.

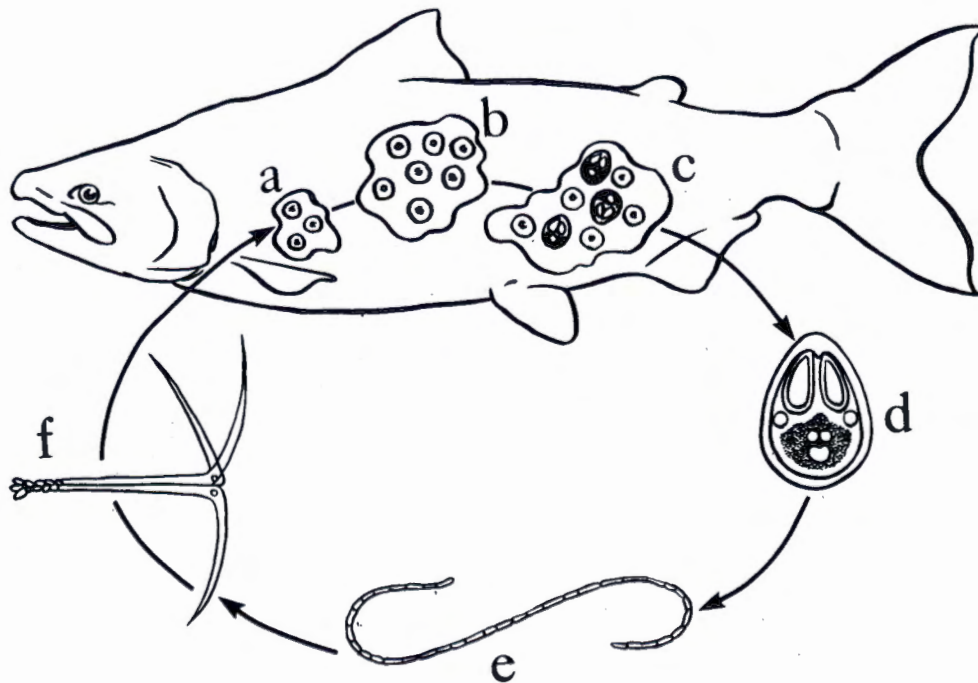
The life cycle of myxosporeans is complicated (Fig. 8-8). They contain several vegetative stages (trophozoites) and development in the fish culminates in the formation of multicellular spores. Spore morphology is the primary criterion used for identification of myxosporeans. The mode of transmission of most myxosporeans is poorly understood. At least for many freshwater myxosporeans, development in an aquatic oligochaete is required to complete the life cycle (Wolf et al. 1986; El-Matbouli and Hoffmann 1990; Kent et al. 1990b; Ruidisch et al. 1991; Yokoyama et al. 1991). The forms found in oligochaetes were originally considered to be different parasites, which were assigned to the class Actinosporea. Because these stages are not separate taxa from myxosporeans, the taxonomy of the phylum Myxozoa has been revised (Kent et al. 1994a). In brief, the class Actinosporea, the order Actinomyxidia, and all families in the Actinosporea (except Tetractinomyxididae) were suppressed. We propose that

actinosporean generic names be treated as collective group names, and thus they do not compete in priority with myxosporean generic names.

**Fumagillin.** There are no commercially available drugs for treating myxosporean diseases of salmonids. However, fumagillin DCH has been shown to be efficacious for treating some myxosporean diseases, including those affecting salmonids (e.g., whirling disease and proliferative kidney disease) (Molnár et al. 1987; Hedrick et al. 1988; Wishkovsky et al. 1990; Yokoyama et al. 1990; El-Matbouli and Hoffmann 1991; Sitjà-Bobadilla and Alvarez-Pellitero 1992; Higgins and Kent 1996). Fumagillin is an antimicrobial agent used primarily for treating *Nosema apis* (phylum Microspora) infections in honey bees. The drug apparently acts by inhibiting RNA synthesis (Jaronski 1972). Kano and Fukui (1982) reported that fumagillin was effective against the microsporean *Pleistophora anguillarum* in eels (*Anguilla japonica*). Molnár et al. (1987) was the first to demonstrate the effectiveness of the drug for the control of a myxosporean disease - i.e., sphaerosporosis of carp (*Cyprinus carpio*).

Various concentrations of the drug were employed in these studies. Based on these reports, 3-10 mg fumagillin/kg fish/day for about 2 wk is the recommended dose for salmonids. Higher concentrations or prolonged treatment (e.g., 30-60 days) may cause anorexia, poor growth, anemia, renal tubule degeneration and atrophy of hematopoietic tissues in salmonids (Laurén et al. 1989; Wishkovsky et al. 1990). We have conducted extensive field trials with fumagillin for the treatment of PKD in hatchery-reared coho salmon (Higgins and Kent 1996). A 2 wk treatment at 3 mg drug/kg feed reduced the prevalence of PKX infections and was not associated with toxic side effects or a reduction in growth.

The drug is not heat stable. Therefore, it is recommended that the feed be coated with the drug, instead of incorporation of the drug into the feed during milling. Fumagillin is available in Canada as Fumadil-B, a relatively dilute mixture of the drug used for treating *Nosema* in bees. However, in our experience we have found that it was difficult to coat the feed with this compound due to the high amount of inactive carrier. Therefore, we recommend using the parent compound, which is about 60-70% active. The drug is not very soluble in water,



**Figure 8-8.** The life cycle and development of myxosporean parasites of fishes, exemplified by *Myxobolus* spp.: a and b, vegetative development results in formation of a multinucleated plasmodium with many daughter cells; c, daughter cells develop into multicellular spores; d, spores are released from the fish to complete development and transmission of the parasite - spores are released after death for most histozoic

species, whereas spores are released in feces or urine in coelozoic species; e, development of the parasite after release from the host is unknown for most myxosporean genera, but for *Myxobolus* spp. an aquatic oligochaete worm is apparently a required intermediate host in which the spores develop into actinosporean stages; f, actinosporean stage is released from the worm and infects the fish host to complete the life cycle.

but is very soluble in alcohol. In most studies, fumagillin was mixed with alcohol, sprayed on the feed, and then the feed was coated with oil. In Canada, an Experimental Drug Certificate or Emergency Drug Release from the Canadian Bureau of Veterinary Drugs would be required if the parent compound is used for treating fish destined for human consumption because the parent compound does not have a DIN number.

Drs. D. Speare (Atlantic Veterinary College, Prince Edward Island) and E. Athanassopoulou (Veterinary Research Centers, Paraskevi, Athens, Greece) (pers. comm.) have found that a water soluble form of fumagillin, Fumagilin-B (Medivet Pharmaceuticals, High River, Alberta), was relatively easy to apply to fish feed. We have also found that an analog of fumagillin, TNP-470 (Takeda Chemical Co., Japan), is effective for controlling certain microsporean infections in salmon (Higgins et al. 1998).

### *Parvicapsula* sp.

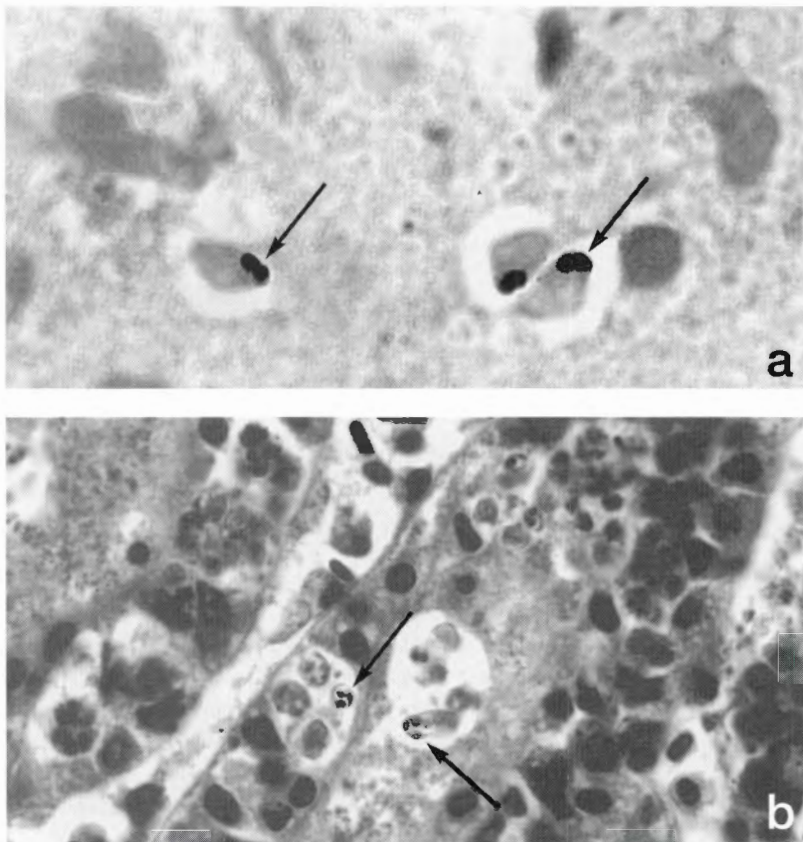
*Parvicapsula* sp. infects the kidney of salmon reared in netpens, and in the early 1980s it was reported to be the cause of severe disease in pen-reared coho in Washington State (Hoffman 1984; Johnstone 1984). However, concurrent infections with *Renibacterium* and *Vibrio* often occurred, and the role of the parasite in the overall mortality was unclear.

Johnstone (1984) also observed *Parvicapsula* in chinook, Atlantic, and masou salmon, and cutthroat trout. A *Parvicapsula* sp. was observed in Pacific cod that were collected near pens containing infected coho. The parasite in Pacific cod appeared similar to the *Parvicapsula* of salmon, and Johnstone (1984) suggested that Pacific cod may be the reservoir for infections. In British Columbia, we have detected the parasite in coho at one netpen site, and in wild sockeye salmon and coho salmon. The organism from wild sockeye salmon was described as *Parvicapsula minibicornis* by Kent et al. (1997a). However, it is possible that the *Parvicapsula* sp. from pen-reared coho salmon represents a separate species.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** There are no pathognomonic clinical changes associated with parvicapsulosis. However, infected fish often are dark and lethargic, and exhibit kidney hypertrophy. *Parvicapsula* is a coelozoic myxosporean and macroscopically visible cysts containing the parasite are not observed.

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological sections of heavily infected kidneys show numerous trophozoites and developing spores in the epithelium and lumina of tubules. The epithelium is often necrotic and displaced by developing parasites (Fig. 8-9b). Trophozoites also occur in the blood and kidney interstitium and may cause interstitial nephritis. Spores are elongate, 7-10 X 6-5  $\mu\text{m}$  (measured from tissue sections) and have two tiny polar capsules at the anterior end (Fig. 8-9a).

**DIAGNOSIS.** *Parvicapsula* spores are very small and identification of this parasite is usually based on histological examinations. Positive identification is based on observation of the spore, which are readily visible in histological sections stained with Giemsa. Spores can also be detected in Gram stained kidney smears (Fig. 8-9a).



**Figure 8-9. *Parvicapsula* sp. from coho salmon kidneys.** a. Gram stain of *Parvicapsula* sp. spores. Arrows = polar capsules. b. Tissue section of coho kidney with *Parvicapsula* sp. infection. Parasites (arrows) cause necrosis and degeneration of the epithelium of renal tubules. Giemsa.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** No drugs are available to treat the infection. See discussion on fumagillin (see page 57). Pacific cod may be a reservoir for infection, but control of these fish is impractical in the netpen situation.

### *Kudoa thyrsites*

Myxosporeans of the genus *Kudoa* and related genera infect the muscle of many marine fishes, and heavy infections can cause unsightly white cysts or soft texture in fillets (Kabata and Whitaker 1981; Patashnik et al. 1982). These parasites are therefore of concern because they can lower the market value of the infected fish, although they seldom cause morbidity. *Kudoa thyrsites* is a cosmopolitan parasite that infects many species of marine fish (Whitaker et al. 1994). Infections in pen-reared Atlantic salmon have been reported from the Pacific Northwest (Whitaker and Kent 1991), Spain (Barja and Toranzo 1993), and Ireland (Palmer 1994). In one instance, Harrell and Scott (1985) attributed mortalities in Atlantic salmon smolts to this parasite. More importantly, heavy infections have been associated with soft flesh and the unsightly white patches in pen-reared Atlantic salmon that are either held on ice for 3-6 days or smoked (Fig. 8-2 e,f). *Kudoa thyrsites* infections and associated soft flesh have also been observed in farmed coho salmon (Whitaker and Kent 1992) and brown trout (Baudin-Laurencin and Bennassr 1993).

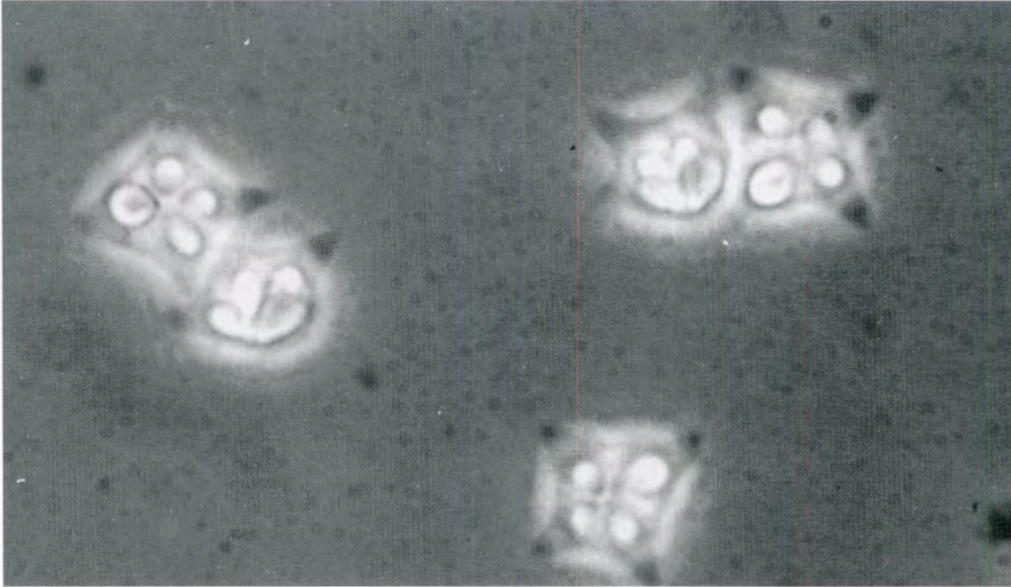
St-Hilaire et al. (1998) found that the infection was much more prevalent in Atlantic salmon grilse or reconditioned grilse than in market-size fish that had not undergone sexual maturation. For example, the prevalence of the infection in farmed Atlantic salmon examined on the processing line in the spring and winter was, on average, 13 times greater in grilse and reconditioned fish than in those that had not undergone sexual maturation. Infection prevalence in grilse may reach as high as 70%, whereas immature fish usually show infections below 10%.

There is also a positive correlation between intensity of infection and severity of soft flesh in Atlantic salmon held on ice (St-Hilaire et al. 1997a). Heavily infected fish always showed soft flesh, whereas lightly infected fish (i.e., fewer than 20,000 spores/g) usually show no signs of the condition. The condition is unnoticed on the processing line, and only becomes apparent after fish are held for about 3 to 6 days on ice or when fillets are smoked. In the investigation of *K. thyrsites* infections in Pacific hake, it was found that the flesh softening was caused by a proteolytic enzyme produced by the parasite (Tsuyuki et al. 1982). This enzyme remains active at temperatures below 70 °C. Therefore, tissue

breakdown will continue through most smoking processes, which are normally conducted at 50 °C or less. In contrast to early reports, Seymour et al. (1994) suggested that the flesh degredation was due to cathepsin L from the host inflammatory response to the parasite, instead of a proteolytic enzyme from the parasite.

Very little is known about development and transmission of *K. thyrsites* in fish. By experimentally exposing fish at a netpen site where the infection is indigenous, Moran et al. (1998a) found that it takes about 5-6 months (i.e., about 2,000 degree-days) after infection before spores are detected in the flesh. A high prevalence of infection occurs in post-smolts, with as high as 60-70 % infection after the first 5 mo. in sea water. As the infection progresses in Atlantic salmon, pseudocysts in the muscle fibers enlarge and ultimately rupture. A prominent inflammatory response is associated with ruptured pseudocysts, and fish exhibit recovery after about a year in sea water (Moran et al. 1998). It is not known if the high prevalence of the infection in grilse is due to reinfection, or proliferation of a cryptic infection that originally occurred when the fish were first transferred to sea water. An infectious stage of the parasite occurs in the blood, and Moran and Kent (1998b) found that fish injected with blood from infected fish and then held in fresh water developed the infection. This experiment also demonstrated that once a fish is exposed the parasite can complete its development even if fish are transferred to fresh water. These authors also found that direct *per os* exposure of Atlantic salmon with heavily-infected tissue did not cause infections.

Hervio et al. (1997) conducted studies using ribosomal DNA (rDNA) sequence of *Kudoa* and other myxosporeans to determine their specific identity and relationship to one another. Ribosomal DNA is very useful for taxonomic comparisons because portions of the molecule are species specific, thus allowing researchers to distinguish *K. thyrsites* rDNA from other myxosporeans, as well as from fish rDNA. Analysis using small subunit rDNA suggests that *Kudoa* species are phylogenetically very different from the other myxosporean genera examined thus far (i.e., *Myxobolus*, *Henneguya*, and *Myxidium*), and that *K. thyrsites* in Atlantic salmon is indistinguishable from that infecting tube-snout (and probably other marine fishes in the Pacific Northwest). Furthermore, we have sequenced the small subunit rDNA of *K. thyrsites* from snoek collected off South Africa and found this sequence to be 99.4% similar to that of the Pacific Northwest isolates. This suggests that *K. thyrsites* from around the world represents the same species.



**Figure 8-10.** Wet mount of *Kudoa thyrsites*. Note stellate spores with four unequal polar capsules.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Heavily infected fish that are held on ice for 3-6 d may develop extreme softening of the flesh texture (Fig. 8-2f). The soft flesh also will occur following smoking at cool temperatures (below 70°C). In this case, white patches in the muscle are readily seen (Fig. 8-2e).

**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mount preparations of infected fillets reveal stellate myxosporean spores with four unequal polar capsules converging at one end (Fig. 8-10). The spores are approximately 13-15 µm from tip to tip.

Developing parasites occupy muscle fibers forming large “pseudocysts” filled with developing spores. Heavy infections are associated with extensive inflammation in the surrounding muscle fibers and released spores are found within phagocytes. Infections have also been observed in the cardiac muscle of wild Pacific salmon (Kabata and Whitaker 1989) and Atlantic salmon (Brackett et al. 1991).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis is based on the observation of the characteristic stellate spores of the parasite (Fig. 8-10). The spores are best detected by microscopic examination of fluid collected from the freshly cut surface of a fillet or by crushing a small piece of muscle. The parasite shows up well in Giemsa-stained histological sections. Detection of the parasite in fish in the round presents a problem that is, as yet, unresolved.

St-Hilaire et al. (1997b) reported that wet mount examination of the *m. hyoid* muscle in the underside of the operculum is a relatively sensitive and specific method for detecting the infection without damaging the body musculature. Although this method may miss a few light infections in the body muscle, this is not a great concern because such infections do not cause soft flesh.

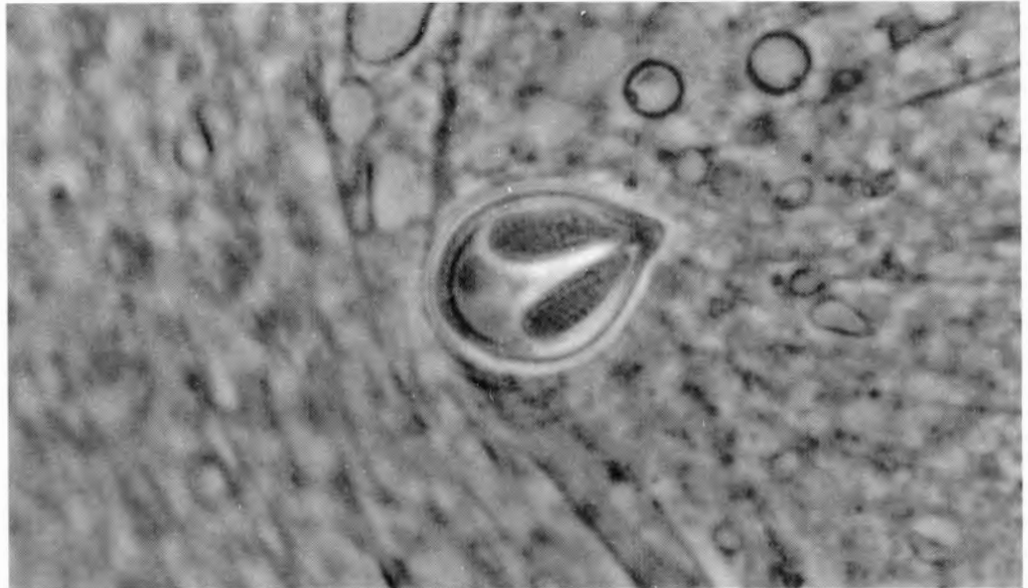
Many copies of the rDNA sequence occur within a cell, and thus this sequence is useful for developing very sensitive PCR-based tests. Hervio et al. (1997) developed a sensitive PCR test for *K. thyrsites*. In addition to detecting light infections, we are using the probe to identify the source of infection for salmon (e.g., potential invertebrate alternate hosts).

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** No drugs are commercially available for treating *Kudoa* infections at this time. Fish become infected in sea water, so it would be very difficult to eliminate exposure to infections. Because sexually mature fish and reconditioned grilse are more prone to the infection, removing such fish from the population before harvest (e.g., thorough screening for grilse in the winter) will greatly minimize the problem.

### *Myxobolus* species

*Myxobolus aeglefini*, a parasite of the cartilage and bone of gadid fishes, was reported from the retrobulbar tissues of pen-reared Atlantic salmon in Norway (Mo et al. 1992). The infection was of particular concern because the spores could be confused with those of *Myxobolus cerebralis*, the causative agent of whirling disease. We have observed *Myxobolus arcticus* in the brain of pen-reared chinook salmon in British Columbia. Infections by this non-pathogenic myxosporean are contracted in fresh water but persist throughout the life of the fish (Kent et al. 1994b).

**DIAGNOSIS.** *Myxobolus* species are usually identified by observing the spore stage in either wet mount preparations (Fig. 8-11) or histological sections.



**Figure 8-11.** *Myxobolus arcticus* from the brain of sockeye salmon.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There are no commercially-available drugs for myxosporeans at this time. See discussion on fumagillin (page 57).

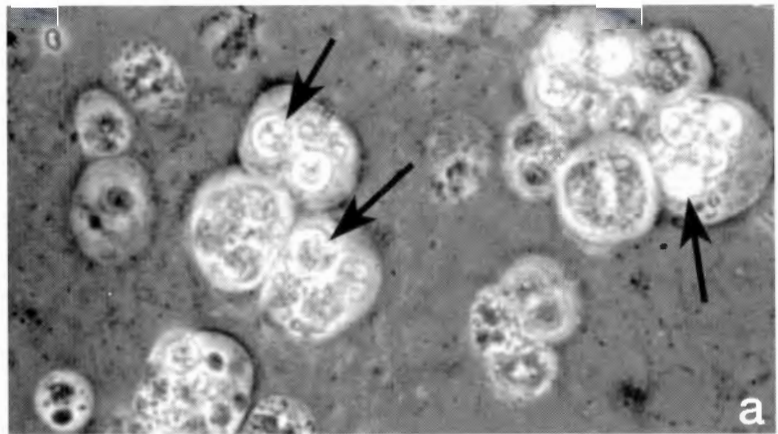
**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection is identified by observing spores (round with 4 polar capsules together at the apical end) or trophozoites in the bile (Fig. 8-12).

***Chloromyxum truttae***

*Chloromyxum truttae*, a coelozoic myxosporean that infects the liver, bile ducts and gall bladder, was reported to cause liver damage in coho salmon reared in brackish water netpens in the Baltic (Vismanis et al. 1984). Although salmonids usually contract the infection in fresh water, the authors suspected that they became infected from rainbow trout held in adjacent netpens.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There are no commercially-available drugs for myxosporeans at this time. See discussion on fumagillin (page 57).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Heavily infected fish may exhibit a dark or gray liver. The gall bladder is markedly enlarged and filled with red or yellow fluid.



**MICROSCOPY.** Examination of the bile reveals numerous myxosporean trophozoites and spherical spores with 4 polar capsules and prominent ridges on the surface of the spore (Fig. 8-12).



**Figure 8-12.** a. *Chloromyxum truttae* in the bile. Note spores (arrows) within plasmodia. b. Spores of *Chloromyxum* sp. with prominent ridges on valves.

### Nervous Mortality Syndrome

Nervous system infections by trophozoites of an unidentified myxosporean, referred to as nervous mortality syndrome (NMS), has been associated with high mortalities in post smolt Atlantic salmon in netpen sites in Ireland (Rodger et al. 1995; Scullion et al. 1996; Frasca et al. 1998). The disease generally begins about 6 to 8 weeks after transfer to sea water, and mortalities have been as high as 90%. As only trophozoites have been observed, the precise taxonomic status of this myxozoan-like parasite is unknown (Frasca et al. 1998).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish may be lethargic and accumulate at the surface of the pens. Other fish may exhibit signs of neural disease, such as disorientation, circling or sudden swimming bursts. Fish may also be anorexic. Necropsy reveals no remarkable gross pathological changes.

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological examination of the brain reveals protozoan-like parasites in aggregates or aligned in string-like patterns (Rodger et al. 1995). The parasites are basophilic and multinucleate. Infections are associated with mild to severe, multifocal inflammation. The parasites appear

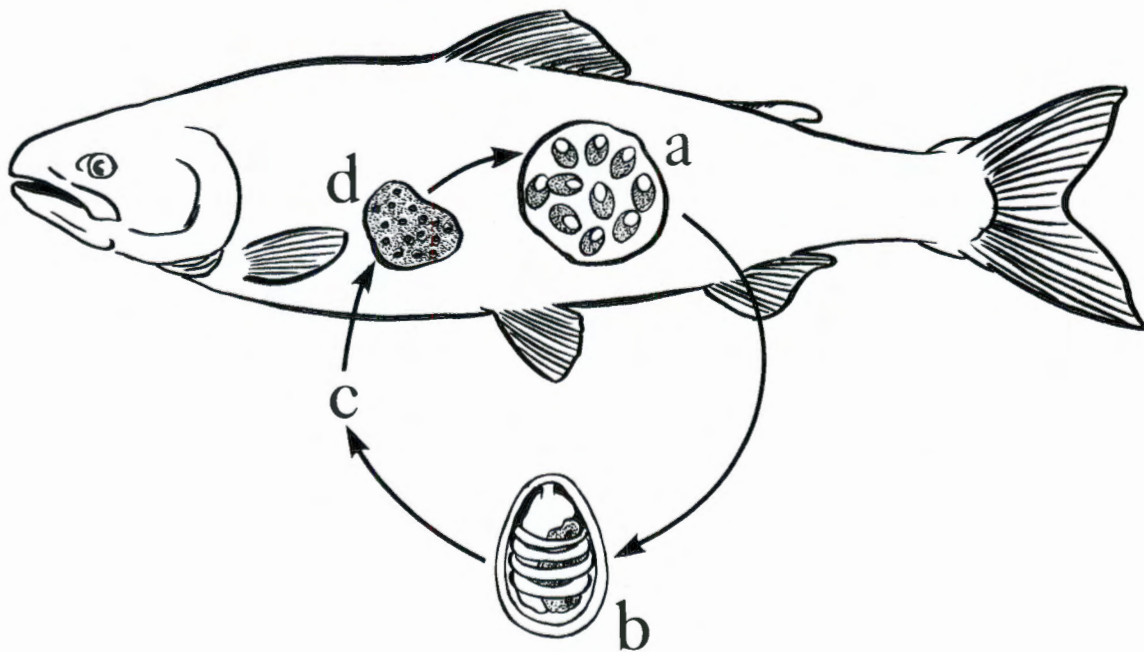
to be focalized in the mesencephalon, whereas the inflammatory changes are more common in the myelencephalon (Frasca et al. 1998). Electron microscopy reveals the myxozoan characteristics of the parasites. For example, they are multicellular, with primary cells containing daughter cells, and they contain mitochondria (a feature absent from microsporidia).

**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection is diagnosed by observing parasites as described above in histological sections.

**CONTROL.** Rodger et al. (1995) reported that unspecified antiprotozoal drugs administered orally were not effective for controlling the disease. However, some infected fish appear to recover from the disease.

### MICROSPORIDIANS

Microsporidians (phylum Microsporidia) are common protozoan parasites in the aquatic environment and many cause disease in fishes and invertebrates (Canning and Lom 1986). Like myxosporeans, they undergo complex development that culminates in a spore with a coiled polar tube (Fig. 8-13). In contrast to myxosporeans, microsporidian spores contain no



**Figure 8-13.** Generalized life cycle of microsporidians: a, xenoma with mature spores; b, spores released from host after xenoma ruptures (possibly after death of the host) - typical microsporidian spore with coiled polar tube in the peripheral cytoplasm; c, fish are apparently infected directly by ingesting

spores; d, a sporoplasm is released from the spore and infects a host cell - the parasite undergoes intracellular vegetative development (merogony and sporogony), culminating in the formation of spores in xenomas.

polar capsules and the polar tube lies free in the sporoplasm. Additionally, microsporidians contain no mitochondria and all are obligate intracellular parasites. Phylogenetic studies have shown that microsporeans are very primitive eukaryotes, and have thus been placed in a separate kingdom, the Archizoa. Other researchers have recently proposed that Microsporea are more closely related to fungi. Three microsporeans have been reported to cause disease in seawater-reared salmonids; *Loma salmonae* infects the gills and visceral organs of coho and chinook salmon, *Nucleospora (Enterocytozoon) salmonis* infects the nuclei of blood forming cells in chinook and Atlantic salmon, and *Microsporidium cerebralis* was described from the brains of Atlantic salmon.

### ***Loma salmonae***

*Loma salmonae* infects the gills and other vascularized tissues of salmonids reared in fresh water (Putz et al. 1965; Putz and McLaughlin 1970; Hauck 1984; Morrison and Sprague 1981, 1983; Poynton 1986; Markey et al. 1994; Bruno et al. 1995). Severe gill infections have been reported in rainbow trout, steelhead trout and kokanee salmon (Wales and Wolf 1955), and Hauck (1984) observed high mortality in chinook salmon due to systemic infections by a *Loma* sp. (presumably *L. salmonae*). Infections in coho salmon in fresh water are usually mild and cause little disease (Magor 1987). Whereas all *Oncorhynchus* species are apparently susceptible to the infection, Atlantic salmon are resistant (Kent et al. 1995a). The infection is directly transmissible from fish to fish by either ingestion of infected tissue or by free spores (Kent et al. 1995a), and can easily be transmitted by co-habitation with infected fish (Shaw et al. 1998; Speare et al. 1998a). Fish exhibit xenomas about 4-6 wk after exposure.

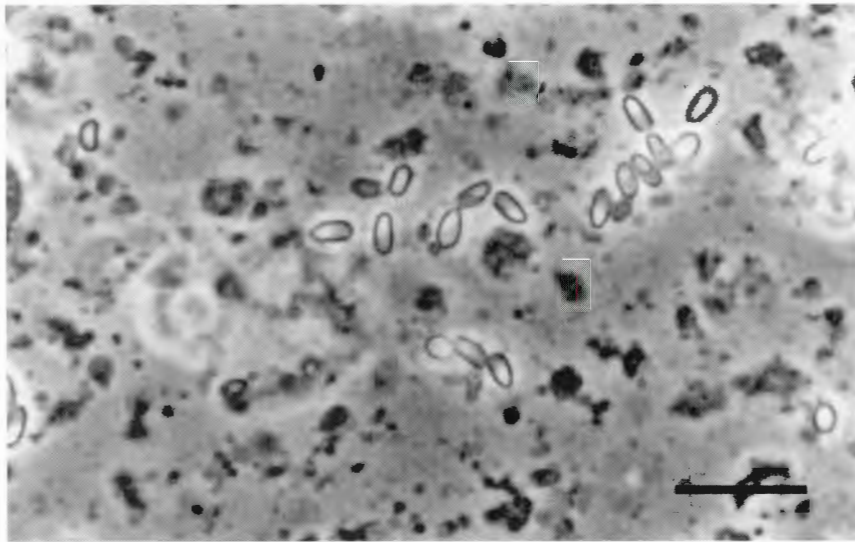
Infections can persist after fish are transferred to sea water, and the associated lesions in the gills can become severe in the pen-reared salmon (Kent et al. 1989; Speare et al. 1989). Although the gills are the primary site of infection, parasites and associated lesions can occur in the heart, spleen, kidney and pseudobranchs. Although the disease can originate in fresh water, we have seen a high prevalence of *L. salmonae* infection in chinook salmon from netpens that had been reared solely on ground water during the freshwater phase. The spores of other fish microsporidians have been found in the mature ova of the host. This form of transmission has been reported for other fish microsporidia (Vaney and Conte 1901; Summerfelt and Warner 1970), and vertical transmission of *Loma salmonae* from infected females to progeny should be considered as a possibility. Docker et al. (1997a) found a high prevalence of the

infection in the ovaries, but not the eggs, of sexually mature chinook salmon. Therefore, the progeny of infected females could become exposed to the parasite through contaminated ovarian fluid. Furthermore, we have found that the spores of *L. salmonae* can survive iodine treatment at 100 ppm for 15 min., a dose typically used for disinfecting salmonid eggs after spawning.

Seawater horizontal transmission of *L. salmonae* to netpen-reared salmon from wild marine fishes is another possible source of the infection because the parasite can easily be transmitted from fish to fish while in sea water (Kent et al. 1995a). Several *Loma* species have been described from marine fishes (Canning and Lom 1986), and we are investigating the relationship of these microsporidians to *L. salmonae*. We were particularly interested in a *Loma* species found in shiner perch because this is one of the most common wild fish species found around netpens. However, using transmission studies and ribosomal DNA sequence comparisons, Shaw et al. (1997) substantiated that the *Loma* from shiner perch was a different species than *L. salmonae*, and was thus given the name *L. embiotocia*. To date, we have examined *Loma* isolates from several marine fishes, and we have yet to identify a marine non-salmonid reservoir for the infection. Moreover, we have found *L. salmonae* in ocean-caught salmon (Kent et al. 1998), and thus a source of the infection for fish in netpens may be wild marine-phase salmonids.

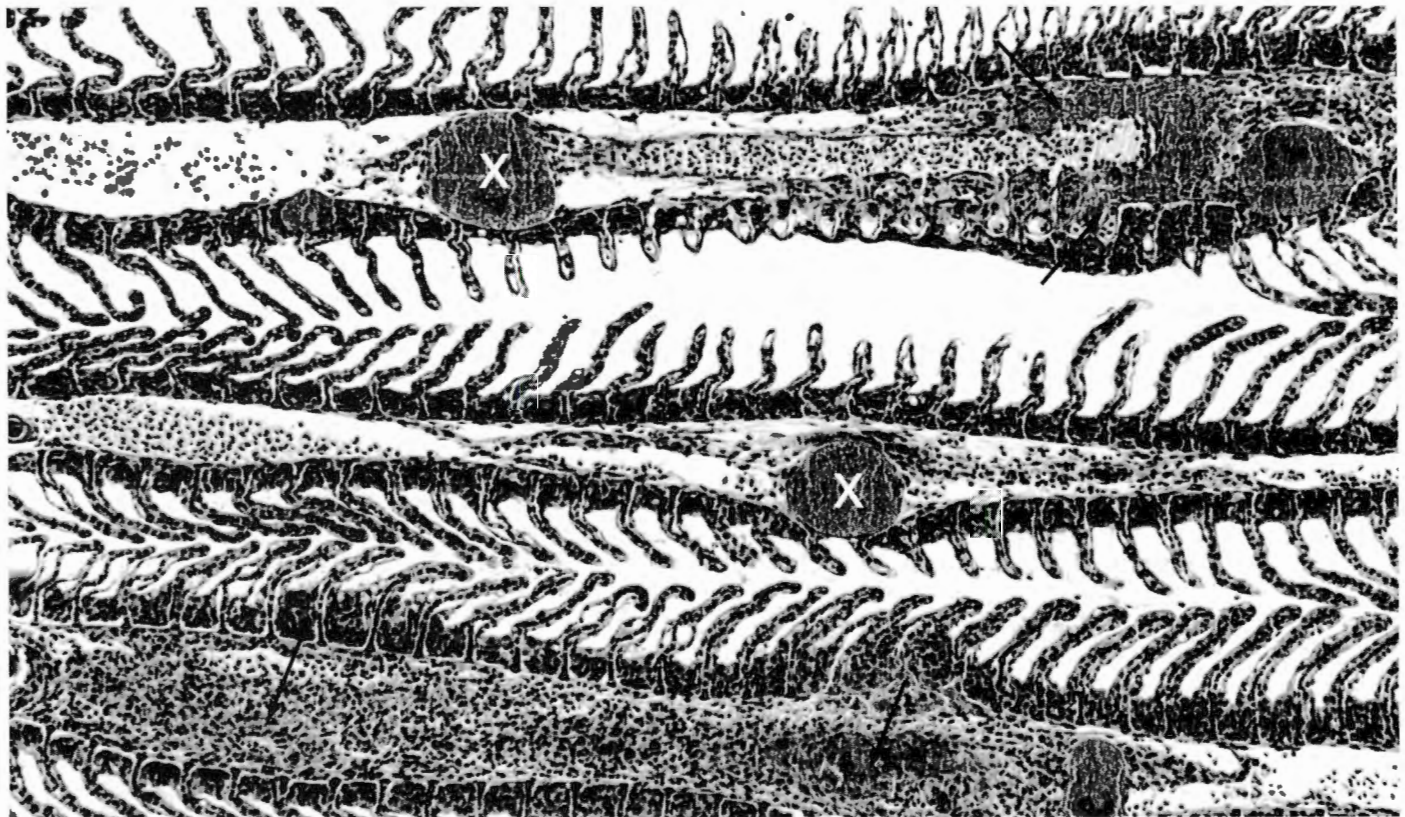
**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish do not exhibit any distinguishing behavioral signs, but fish with severely damaged gills may exhibit respiratory distress and are lethargic. Close examination of heavily infected fish may reveal small white cysts in the gills (Fig. 8-2d). A hallmark gross pathological change in infected pen-reared salmon are the presence of multiple petechiae in an otherwise pale gill. Infected gills may also appear lumpy (Fig. 8-2c). Systemic infections in chinook may cause enlargement of the spleen and kidney.

**MICROSCOPY.** *Loma salmonae* spores can be easily detected in wet mount preparations of moderately to heavily infected gills. The spores are bean-shaped, about 5.5 X 3 µm, and have a posterior vacuole (Fig. 8-14). Gram-stained smears of heavily infected tissue reveal the Gram-positive spores of *L. salmonae* (Fig. 5-3d). Histological examination reveals the cyst-like xenomas formed by the parasite (Fig. 8-15). Xenomas that develop in the secondary lamellae of the gills cause relatively little damage and inflammation, whereas those



**Figure 8-14.** Wet mount of *Loma salmonae* spores (arrows). Bar = 15  $\mu$ m.

**Figure 8-15.** Tissue section of coho salmon gills with *L. salmonae* infection. H & E. Intact xenomas (X) with little tissue reaction. Chronic inflammation in the primary lamella (arrows) due to *L. salmonae* infection.



that form deep within the blood vessels of primary lamellae can cause severe inflammation and tissue destruction (Fig. 8-15). In such cases, microsporidian spores are dispersed throughout inflammatory lesions and individual spores are found within phagocytic cells. Similar inflammatory lesions caused by ruptured xenomas are found in the spleen and kidney, especially in chinook. Release of spores from xenomas into surrounding tissue is believed to be a factor contributing to the inflammatory response (Hauck 1984; Kent et al. 1989, 1995a).

**DIAGNOSIS.** *Loma salmonae* infections are diagnosed by detecting the characteristic spores. The spores can be demonstrated in wet mounts or Gram-stained tissue smears of gills when infections are heavy. However, the gills may show severe pathological changes with relatively few spores, and histology should be conducted on suspect tissues because the parasites are difficult to detect in wet mounts when the xenomas have ruptured. Furthermore, tissue sections will reveal the characteristic inflammatory lesions in the gill primary lamellae and visceral organs.

Docker et al. (1997b) developed a sensitive PCR test for the parasite using rDNA sequence. This may be useful for screening fish (i.e., broodstock) for subclinical infections. These specific primers can differentiate *L. salmonae* from other *Loma* species.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** In laboratory studies, infections in chinook salmon were prevented by feeding fumagillin at 10 mg drug/kg fish/day for 30 days (Kent and Dawe 1994). Our recent experiments demonstrated that the infections can be controlled with lower doses of fumagillin - i.e., 2 or 4 mg drug/kg fish.

We have also found that a synthetic analog of fumagillin, TNP-470 (Takeda Chemical Industries, Ltd.) can also be effective at reducing *L. salmonae* infections. Oral treatment with this compound at 0.1 mg or 1.0 mg drug/kg fish for 4 wk greatly reduced the intensity of infections, with no apparent toxic side effects (Higgins et al. 1998). Rainbow trout show strong protection to reinfection (Speare et al. 1998b), which suggests that this infection is a good candidate for vaccine development.

Recent experiments conducted at the Pacific Biological Station showed that chinook salmon that have recovered from *Loma* infections are also resistant to re-infection. The disease could also be controlled by avoiding infections. At least some infections apparently originate in fresh water and persist in fish after they are transferred to netpens. Ensuring that fish are free of infection during their freshwater development, therefore, may help reduce the infection in netpens. In laboratory transmission studies, Speare et al. (1998b) demonstrated that rainbow trout were susceptible to the infection when held at 14.5 °C, while they were resistant when held at 10 °C.

### ***Nucleospora (Enterocytozoon) salmonis***

*Nucleospora salmonis* is an unusual microsporidium that infects the nuclei of hemoblasts, particularly lymphoblasts or plasmablasts, in salmonid fishes (Chilmonczyk et al. 1991). This microsporidium was first observed in pen-reared chinook in Washington State, where it was associated with anemia (Elston et al. 1987). The parasite has also been reported in freshwater-reared chinook, kokanee, and steelhead trout in Washington (Morrison et al. 1990), California (Hedrick et al. 1990; 1991a, b) and Idaho (MacConnell et al. 1991). Although we have only seen one case of *N. salmonis* in freshwater-reared salmon in British Columbia, it has been observed in chinook at several seawater netpen sites in the province. The infection has also been observed in seawater-reared Atlantic salmon in Chile (Bravo 1996).

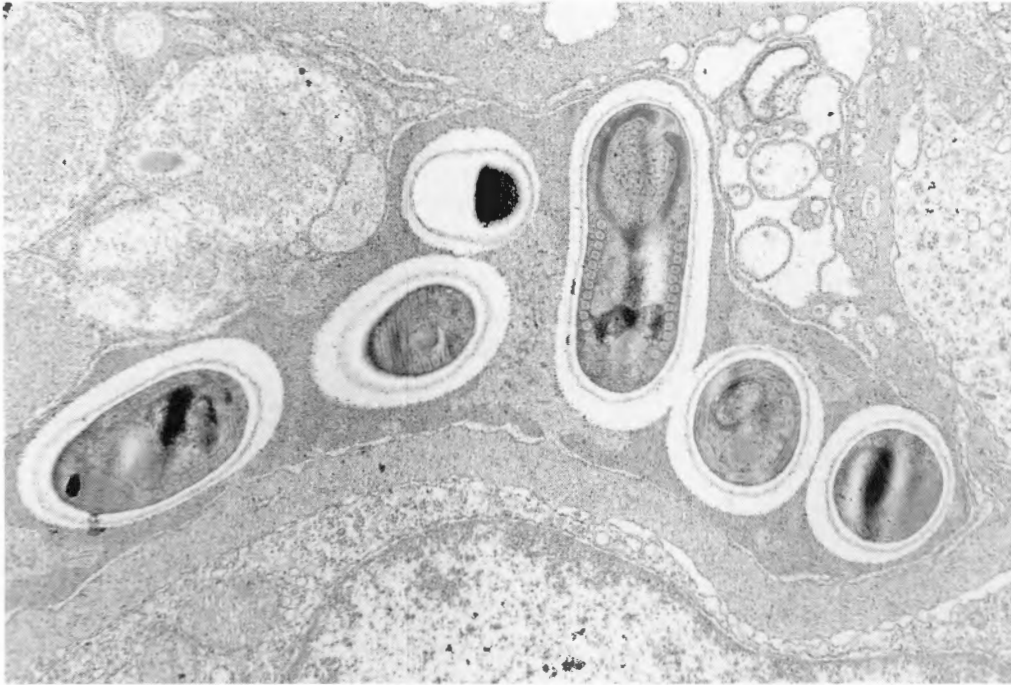
This microsporidium was originally described as *Nucleospora salmonis* (c.f. Hedrick et al. 1991b), but was described shortly thereafter as *Enterocytozoon salmonis* by Chilmonczyk et al. (1991). Rules of zoological nomenclature, morphological data, and ribosomal DNA sequence data support the validity of the genus *Nucleospora*, and its placement in the family Enterocytozooidae (Docker et al. 1997b). Intranuclear microsporidia were reported in Atlantic lumpfish (Mullins et al. 1994), and Atlantic halibut (Nilsen et al. 1995), and these organisms were also assigned to the genus *Enterocytozoon*. Based on the data available to date, the intranuclear microsporidia found in these fish should also be transferred to the genus *Nucleospora*.

*Nucleospora* infections are usually associated with a concurrent neoplastic condition involving massive lymphoproliferation, known as plasmacytoid leukemia (PL) in chinook salmon in British Columbia (Kent et al. 1990a). Laboratory transmission studies indicate that *N. salmonis* may not be the primary cause of all cases of PL (Kent and Dawe 1990; Newbound and Kent 1991a). See pages 106–110 for further details on the relationship of *N. salmonis* with PL.

*Nucleospora salmonis* is transmitted by cohabitation or feeding infected tissues to fish in fresh water (Baxa-Antonio et al. 1992). We have repeated these findings in our laboratory, but were unable to transmit the infection by cohabitation in sea water. The microsporidium has been maintained in lymphocyte cultures, and soluble fractions of these cultures stimulate uninfected cells (Wongtavatchai et al. 1995a). Infected fish apparently have an impaired humoral and cellular immune response (Wongtavatchai et al. 1995b).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Heavily infected fish are anemic, with a packed blood cell volume as low as 5%. Typical of severe anemia in fish, affected salmon exhibit prominent pallor of the gills. See page 108 for description when infections are associated with PL. In one instance, the infection in pen-reared Atlantic salmon was associated with multiple focal lesions mainly on the head. Histologically the lesions were characterized by massive fibroplasia in which the nuclei of proliferating fibrocytes were infected by the parasite.

**MICROSCOPY.** This microsporidium is very small and is identified by careful examination of nuclei of hemoblasts in histological sections (Fig. 5-3e, f) or in Gram-stained imprints (Fig. 5-3g). In tissue sections stained with hematoxylin and eosin, the parasites appear as eosinophilic spherical bodies (2–4 µm) in host cell nuclei, surrounded by a rim of basophilic



**Figure 8-16.** Electron micrograph of *Nucleospora salmonis* spores in a host cell nucleus.

host cell chromatin. The Warthin-Starry stain combined with hematoxylin and eosin enhances the detection of the parasite in tissue sections (Kent et al. 1995c). In these preparations, prespore stages stain brown or black, and spores stain dark black (Fig. 5-3f). Some researchers have also used Giemsa-stained impression smears to identify the parasite. In Giemsa imprints, the parasites appear as clear spheres within the host cell nuclei. The spores of microsporidians are Gram positive, and *N. salmonis* spores can be detected in Gram-stained smears of infected tissues (Fig. 5-3g). In these preparations, the spores stain blue, have a characteristic bean shape, measure about 2 X 1  $\mu\text{m}$ . Electron microscopy is required to demonstrate more details of the morphology of spores and presporogonic stages (Fig. 8-16).

**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection can be diagnosed by detecting the characteristic spores in Gram-stained kidney or eye imprints. However, in some infections very few spores are found, and histology is required to detect the presporogonic forms within the nuclei of hemoblasts. Giemsa-stained imprints have been used by some for detecting these presporogonic forms, but because the parasites only appear as clear vacuoles in these preparations they could be easily confused with artifacts.

Sensitive and specific PCR tests have been developed for the detection of *N. salmonis* based on ribosomal DNA sequence from the small subunit region (Barlough et al. 1995) or ITS region (Docker et al. 1997b).

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL.** There is no commercially available drug for treating *N. salmonis* infections. However, Hedrick et al. (1991a) controlled the infection in experimentally infected chinook with oral treatment of fumagillin DCH at 1.0 mg drug/kg fish/day for 4 wk. We have found the fumagillin analog, TNP-470 (Takeda Chemical Industries, Ltd.), was very effective at controlling experimental infections. Fish that received an oral treatment at either 0.1 or 1.0 mg drug/kg fish/day for 4 wk showed a dramatic reduction in infection compared to untreated controls (Higgins et al. 1998).

To reduce the effects of the associated anemia, clinically affected fish should not be handled or transported, and feed should be reduced to decrease oxygen demand.

***Microsporidium cerebralis***

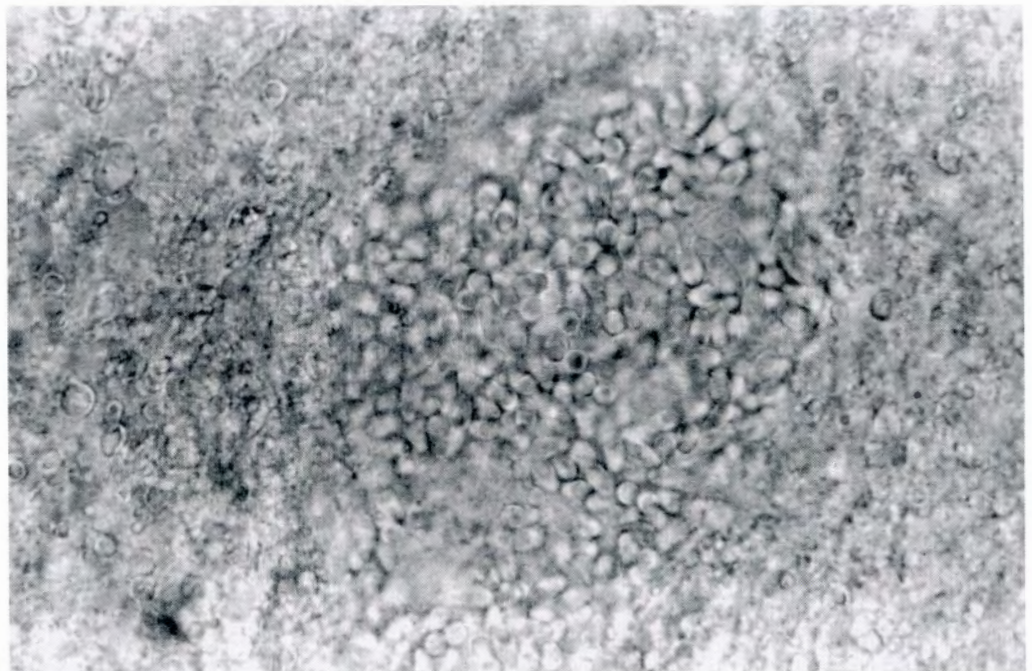
*Microsporidium cerebralis* infects the central nervous system of pen-reared Atlantic salmon (Brocklebank et al. 1995). The infection has been found at two sites in British Columbia in fish from 1- 2 kg.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Infected fish exhibit abnormal swimming behavior, including spiral swimming, and loss of equilibrium. No other external or internal macroscopic signs are associated with the infection.

**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mount preparations of the hind brain reveal aggregates of ovoid spores, which are 5.7 X 3.0 µm (Fig. 8-17). Histological sections reveal the infection predominantly in neurons of the myelencephalon, including giant motor neurons (Mauthner's cells). Degenerating and necrotic changes are associated with the infection.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection is diagnosed by observing aggregates of microsporean spores in the hind brain, in either wet mounts or histological sections.

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL.** Based on research with other fish microsporidia (see *Loma salmonae* and *Nucleospora salmonis*), fumagillin may be useful for treating this infection. Because the source of the infection is unknown (fresh water or sea water), recommendations for avoidance cannot be made. To prevent entrapment of impaired fish in the nets, additional downhauls were placed in the corners and along the sides of the pens (Brocklebank et al. 1995).



**Figure 8-17.** *Microsporidium cerebralis* in the brain of Atlantic salmon. Wet mount preparation.

# HELMINTH AND MOLLUSCAN PARASITES

M. L. Kent and L. Margolis

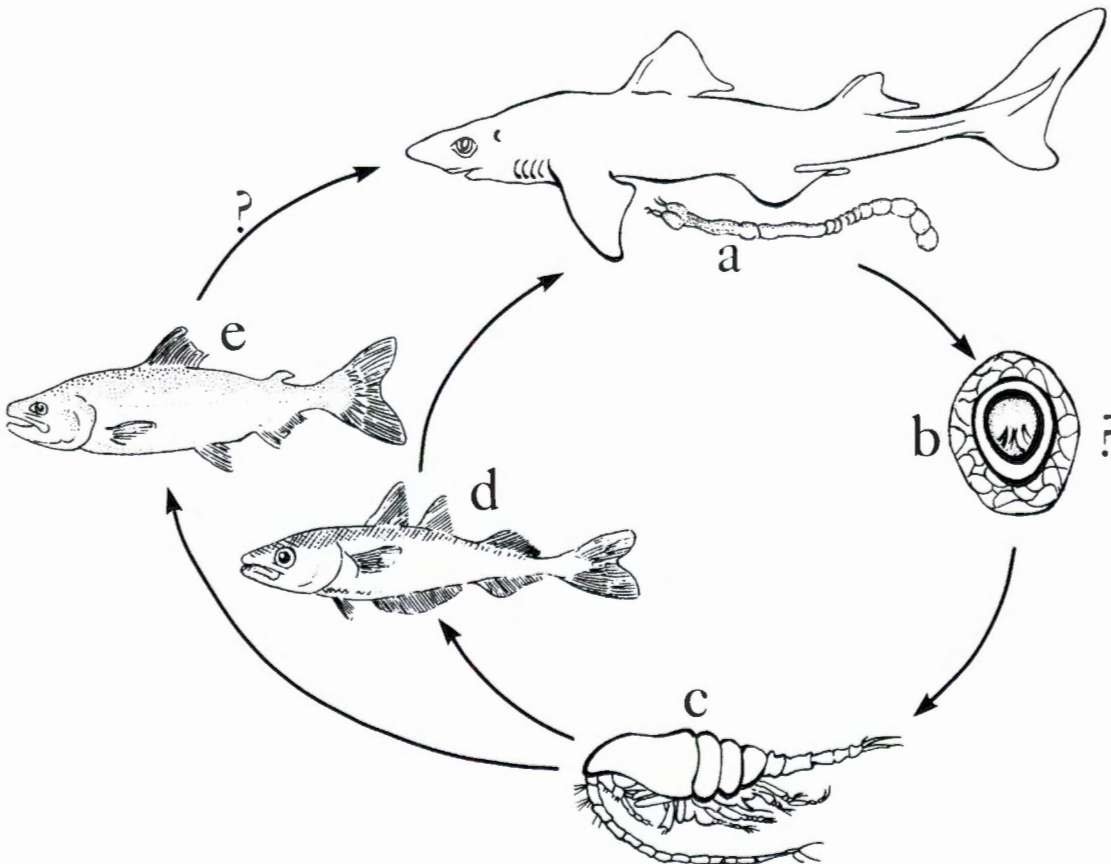
Fishes are infected with a wide variety of parasitic worms, collectively referred to as helminth parasites. Although these parasites are very common in wild fishes, and occasionally infect cultured species, most often they do not cause severe disease. However, certain helminths can cause disease when infections are heavy or when they infect a critical organ. In addition, some helminth parasites of fishes can infect humans or cause unsightly lesions. The following are helminth parasites of importance in pen-reared salmon.

## Cestodes (Tapeworms)

Cestodes (tapeworms) are one of the main groups of parasitic helminths. Two life stages of cestodes are found in fish: adults

infect the digestive tract and metacestodes (juveniles) are found in the internal organs or muscle, or occasionally other sites (Fig. 9-1). The first intermediate hosts of tapeworms that infect fishes are usually crustaceans (e.g., copepods), although in one major taxon, the Caryophyllidae of freshwater fishes, oligochaetes are the intermediate hosts.

Fishes are the second intermediate hosts for tapeworms in which a fish-eating mammal or bird, or another fish, are the definitive hosts. Fish usually acquire metacestode infections by eating infected crustaceans. Metacestodes in fish tissues often cause an inflammatory response to the encapsulated or migrating parasite. The only reported significant metacestode disease of salmon reared in marine netpens is caused by *Gilquinia squali*, which infects the eyes of chinook salmon.



**Figure 9-1.** Life cycle of the trypanorhynch cestode *Gilquinia squali*: a, dogfish eats infected teleost and worm becomes adult in the spiral valve; b, coracidium develops within egg; c, the invertebrate first intermediate host (presumably a crustacean) is probably infected by eating an

embryonated egg and the parasite becomes a proceroid in the coelom of the invertebrate; d, e, teleost fish (e.g., salmon, whiting) ingests invertebrate infected with the proceroid, which migrates to eye and becomes plerocercoid (metacestode).

### Adult Cestodes - *Eubothrium* spp.

*Eubothrium* spp. are common cestode parasites of salmonid fishes both in fresh and salt water. Adults develop in the gut. Infections with one species in pen-reared Atlantic salmon in Norway (Fig. 9-2) have been associated with reduced growth and, occasionally, mortality (Bristow and Berland 1991b; Håstein and Lindstad 1991). Berland and Bristow (1994) have noted that the weight of infected market-size farmed Atlantic salmon in Norway is 10-15% less than uninfected salmon. The species of *Eubothrium* in marine Atlantic salmon has usually been considered to be *E. crassum*, which was originally described from fish in fresh water (Kennedy 1978). However, Berland and Bristow (1994) regard the marine form as distinct from *E. crassum*. We have seen infections with a similar cestode in broodstock of pen-reared chinook salmon in British Columbia.

The fish acquire infections of *Eubothrium* species by ingesting first intermediate hosts (presumably copepods) infected with the proceroid stage, or possibly transport hosts infected with plerocercoids. The life cycle of this tapeworm has not been elucidated, but its freshwater counterpart, *E. salvelini*, in sockeye salmon in British Columbia uses copepods (*Cyclops* spp.) as its intermediate host. Proceroids that develop in *Cyclops* are directly infective for juvenile sockeye salmon (Boyce 1974). *Eubothrium salvelini* is known to affect survival, growth, and stamina, and to have other debilitating effects on juvenile sockeye salmon (Boyce 1979; Boyce and Behrens-Yamada 1977; Boyce and Clarke 1983).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Heavily infected fish are often smaller than average. Dissection of the gut will reveal numerous, white, flat, "tape-like" worms in the intestine and pyloric caeca (Fig. 9-2). Heavy infections may induce anemia, and when extremely severe may cause death due to blockage of the intestinal tract.

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological examination of infected pyloric caeca reveals minimal pathological changes.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Adult cestodes are usually long, flat, whitish, and segmented; some, such as the Caryophyllidae, are smaller unsegmented worms. Identification of cestodes is based largely on whether the body is segmented or not, on the morphology of the scolex (anterior end), and on the structure and arrangement of the components of the reproductive system within the segments (Schmidt 1986; Khalil et al. 1994). *Eubothrium* lacks hooks on the scolex, which is elongate with two shallow grooves - one dorsal and the other ventral.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Oral treatment for adult tapeworms with antihelminthic drugs, such as praziquantel, may be effective (Mitchell 1993). Avoiding marine worm infections is difficult because infected intermediate hosts (i.e., crustaceans) move freely throughout netpens.



**Figure 9-2.** *Eubothrium* sp. adults in the digestive tract of an Atlantic salmon. (Courtesy of B. Berland)

### *Gilquinia squali* metacestodes in chinook salmon

Eye infections by metacestodes of *Gilquinia squali* (order Trypanorhyncha) have been associated with mortality of young chinook salmon at netpen sites in British Columbia (Kent et al. 1991b). The definitive hosts for trypanorhynch tapeworms are sharks and rays, and the definitive host for *G. squali* is the spiny dogfish (Fig 9-1). The metacestode is common in the eyes of North Sea whiting (MacKenzie 1965, 1975). Kuitunen-Ekbaum (1933) reported this metacestode from the muscle of speckled sanddab from British Columbia coastal waters. Observations of the infection in pen-reared chinook salmon is the first reported occurrence of *G. squali* metacestodes in a salmonid fish, which suggests that wild salmon are probably not a normal intermediate host for the worm.

The adult worms are prevalent in dogfish throughout marine waters in British Columbia, and gravid adult worms are commonly found in dogfish in the spring. Dogfish are

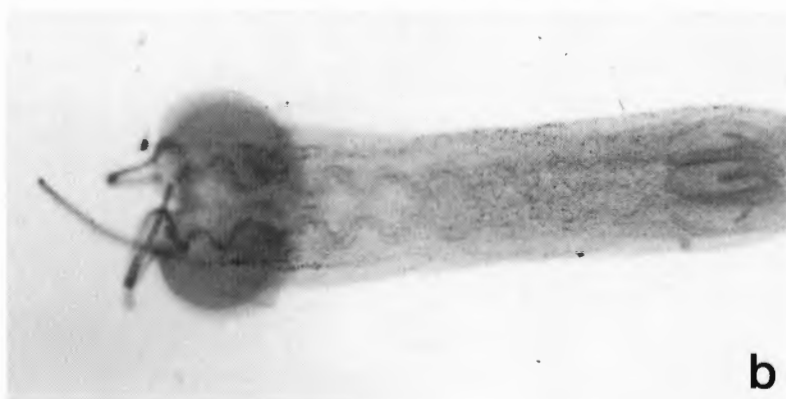
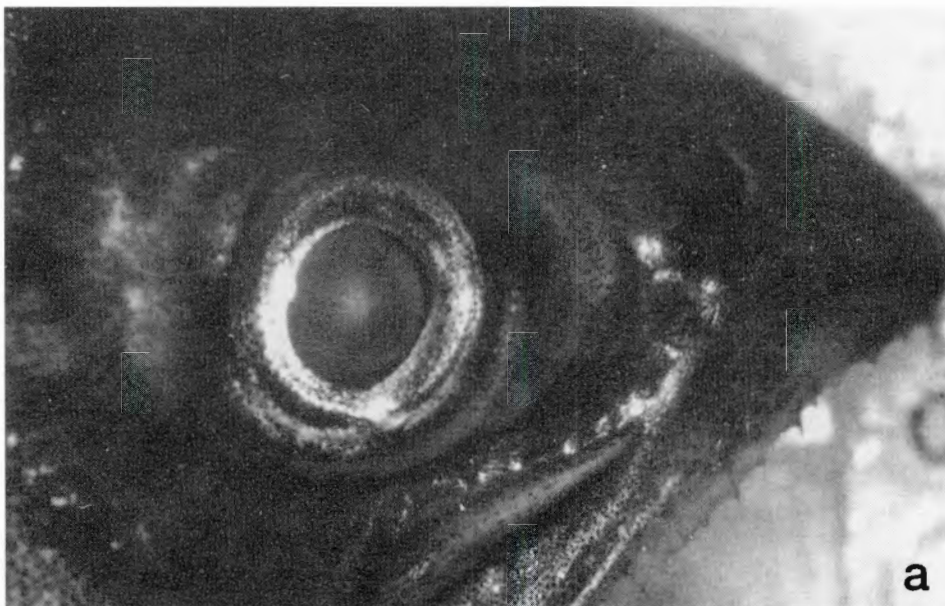
frequently found in or around netpens at this time, thus providing infective coracidia for the first intermediate host near the pens. Based on the few trypanorhynch cestode life cycles that have been investigated (Mundry and Dailey 1971; Overstreet 1978; Mattis 1986; Sakanari and Moser 1989), it is likely that a crustacean, which has yet to be identified, is the first intermediate host for *G. squali*. Chinook salmon in netpens presumably acquire the infection by eating this crustacean.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Moribund fish are lethargic and remain near the bottom of the pen. The fish are easily captured by hand by divers, suggesting that they are blind. However, fish are not usually emaciated and contain food in their stomachs, which indicates that they continue to feed. The actual mechanism that causes death is unknown.

The lens often appears normal, whereas the iris and vitreous chamber may be white and opaque and occasionally exhibit hemorrhages. The lens in more severely affected eyes is also opaque, suggesting cataractous changes (Fig. 9-3a). In extreme

cases, the globe is ruptured and the lens is extruded. However, many fish die with the globe of the eye still intact. The eye lesions are often bilateral.

**MICROSCOPY.** Dissection of affected eyes that are still intact reveals one or two metacestodes of *G. squali* in the vitreous chamber (Fig. 9-3b). The worms are white and are about the size and shape of rice

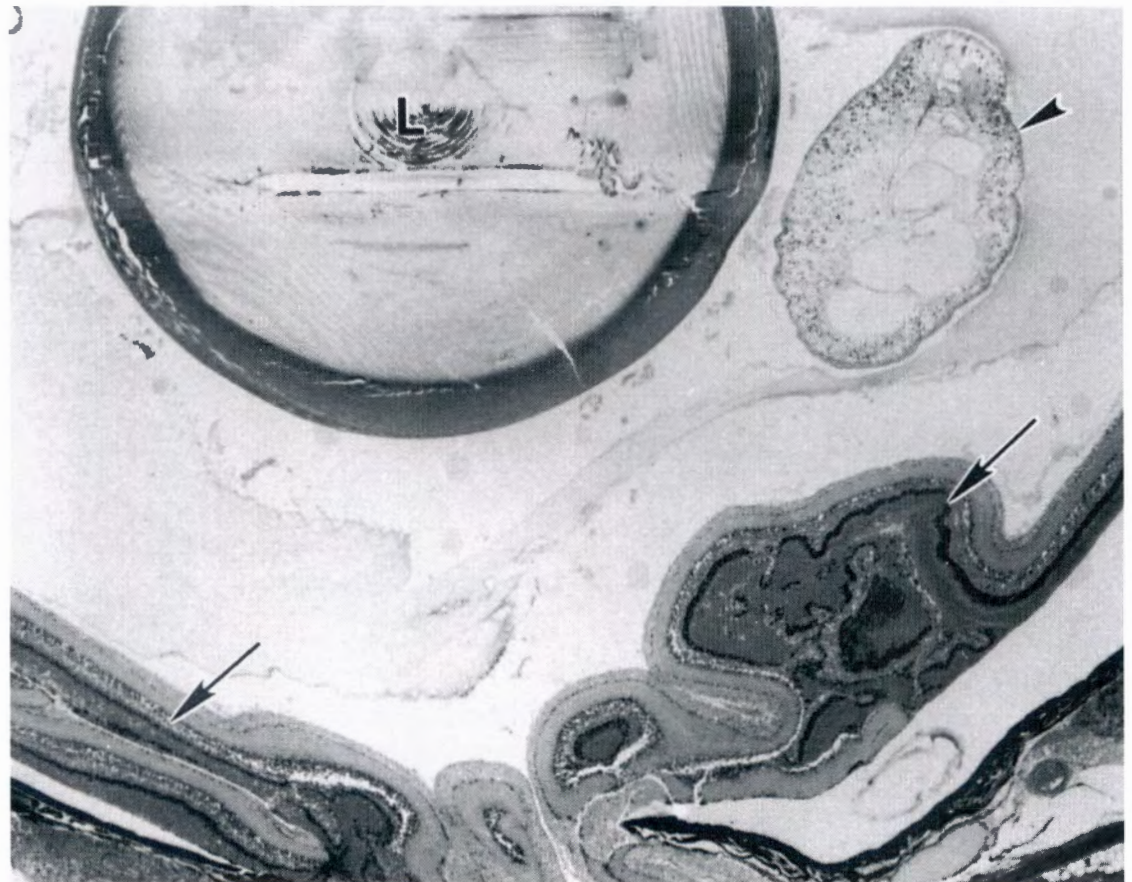


**Figure 9-3.** *Gilquinia squali* in chinook salmon. a. Chinook salmon with opaque lens associated with *G. squali* infection. b. Whole mount of *G. squali* metacestode from the eye of chinook salmon. Note the four eversible, spiny tentacles that emerge from the apex of the scolex, which are characteristic for trypanorhynch tapeworms. Semichon's acetocarmine.

grains when examined by the naked eye. Kent et al. (1991b) described the histopathological changes of *G. squali* infections in the eyes of chinook salmon. Histological examination of infected eyes often reveals an inflammatory infiltrate in the vitreous humor surrounding the worm (Fig. 9-4). Separation of the sensory retina from the pigment epithelium causes moderate to severe folding of the retina, resulting in apparent retinal duplication. The lens of infected eyes shows a spectrum of cataractous changes. Some severely affected eyes exhibit hemorrhages in the globe, congestion of the choroid, and extrusion of the lens. Panophthalmitis is prominent in eyes with a ruptured cornea. A tapeworm metacestode resembling *G. squali* was detected in the optic nerve of a chinook salmon (R. Armstrong, Aquatic Animal Health Consulting, Forestville, California, pers. comm.), which suggests that this may be the route of entry of the worm into the globe of the eye.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The infection is identified by detecting trypanorhynch metacestodes in the vitreous humor. Trypanorhynch cestodes are identified by the presence of four eversible, spiny tentacles that emerge from the apex of the scolex (Fig 9-3b).

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** At present there is no known treatment for *Gilquinia* infections in fish. The disease, therefore, can only be controlled by preventing infections. Fish that are feeding well on commercial diets and thus feed less on natural biota appear less susceptible to the infection. Therefore, assuring that fish are feeding well on pellets should reduce the prevalence of infection. The complete life cycle of the parasite is unknown, so precise recommendations for avoiding the infection are not available. Furthermore, preventing transmission of the parasite from dogfish to salmon via the arthropod first intermediate hosts would be very difficult because of uncontrolled water movement into netpens and unrestricted movement of dogfish around netpens.



**Figure 9-4.** *Gilquinia squali* (arrowhead) the vitreous humor of the eye of a chinook salmon. Arrows indicate retinal folding and apparent duplication. H & E. (Courtesy of J. Aquat. Animal Health).

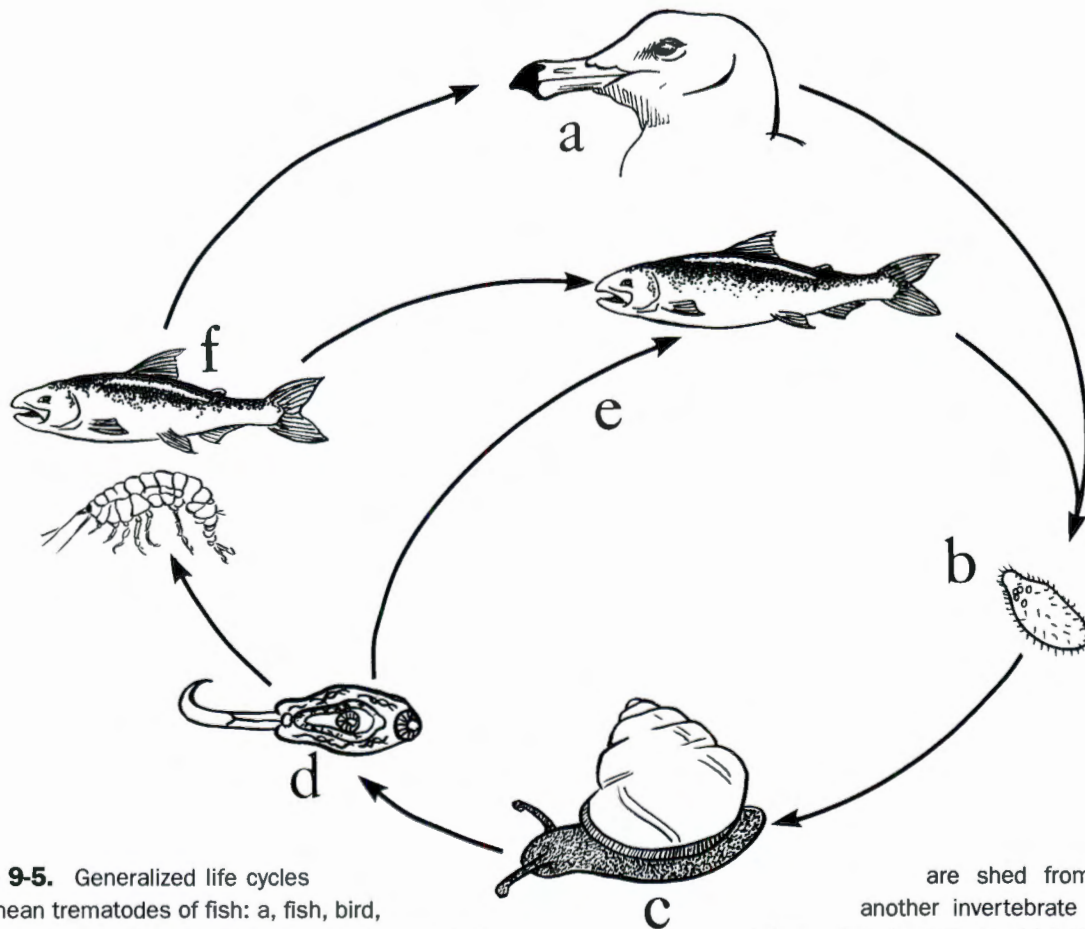
## Digenetic trematodes (flukes)

As with cestodes, fish can be intermediate hosts or definitive hosts for digenetic trematodes (Fig. 9-5). Almost all flukes have either a 2-host or 3-host life cycle, but there is a wide variety of life cycle patterns (Williams and Jones 1994). With a few exceptions among the marine fish blood flukes of the family Sanguinicolidae, molluscs (either snails or bivalves) are the first intermediate hosts of digeneans. Second intermediate hosts, where such occur in the life cycle, may be an invertebrate or a fish. Except in occasional circumstances where the life cycle has been foreshortened, the definitive hosts are to be found among the vertebrates. The species of concern in marine farming of salmon use either birds or fish as definitive hosts, with the fish serving as the second intermediate host. Cercariae of these species emerge from molluscs and infect the salmonid

host by direct penetration of the skin or gills, subsequently developing into a resting stage known as a metacercaria, which may be encysted or unencysted depending upon the final site of infection in the fish.

Heavy infections by metacercariae are of concern because they can cause morbidity. In addition, metacercarial infections of the skin or muscle can be important because they may reduce the aesthetic quality of the fish. Except for blood flukes and a group of tissue parasites of the family Didymozoidae found mainly in scombroid fishes, most adult flukes of fish infect the alimentary tract and seldom cause significant tissue damage.

The metacercariae of four digenean trematodes have caused problems in seawater pen-reared salmonid fishes: "neascus"-type, *Diplostomum* sp., *Cryptocotyle lingua* and *Stephanostomum tenue*.



**Figure 9-5.** Generalized life cycles of digenean trematodes of fish: a, fish, bird, or mammal may be the definitive host for digeneans; b, adult worms release eggs and miracidia hatch from eggs in the external environment or within the next host; c, invertebrates, especially snails and bivalves, are first intermediate hosts in which the miracidium undergoes several developmental and proliferative stages culminating in numerous cercariae (d) that

are shed from the host. Fish or another invertebrate may be the second intermediate host (f), in which the cercariae encyst in tissues and becomes a metacercariae. Definitive host (a) eats second intermediate host and the parasite develops into an adult, usually in the gut. Certain digeneans (e.g., blood flukes) do not have a metacercarial stage and the cercariae infect the definitive host directly (e).

### Black Grub in Coho Salmon

Black grub (larval type neascus) is the metacercarial stage of certain species of the family Diplostomatidae, which includes several genera (see Gibson 1996). Black grubs infect a variety of fishes in fresh water, including salmonids. Snails are the first intermediate hosts, and cercariae released from infected snails penetrate beneath the scales in the dermis of the fish host. Fish-eating birds serve as the definitive hosts. Mortality and morbidity have not been reported in infected salmon, but Lemly and Esch (1984) demonstrated that heavy infections of the "neascus"-type metacercariae of *Uvulifer ambloplitis* could kill bluegill sunfish when water temperatures decline.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Infected fish exhibit numerous small, black, raised, nodules in the skin, which are about 1-2 mm in diameter (Fig 9-6a).

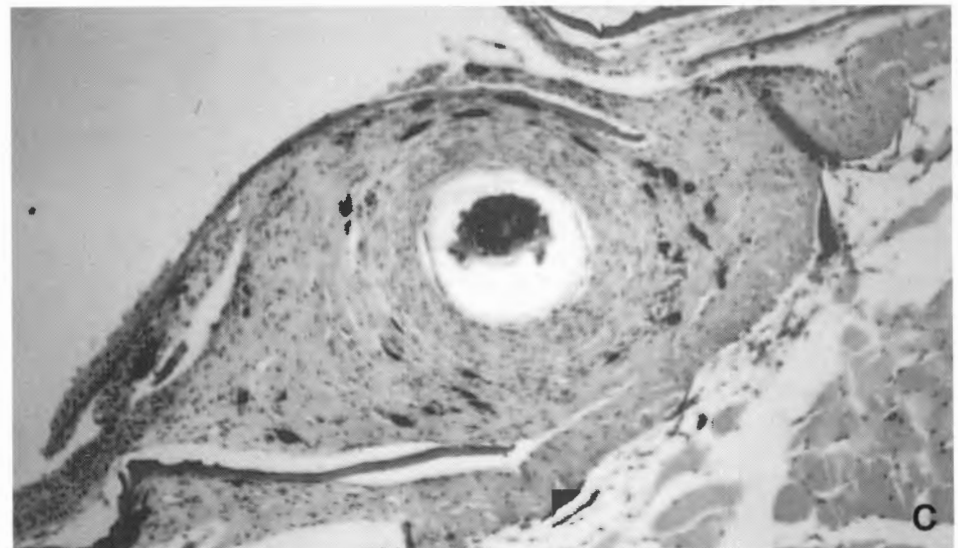
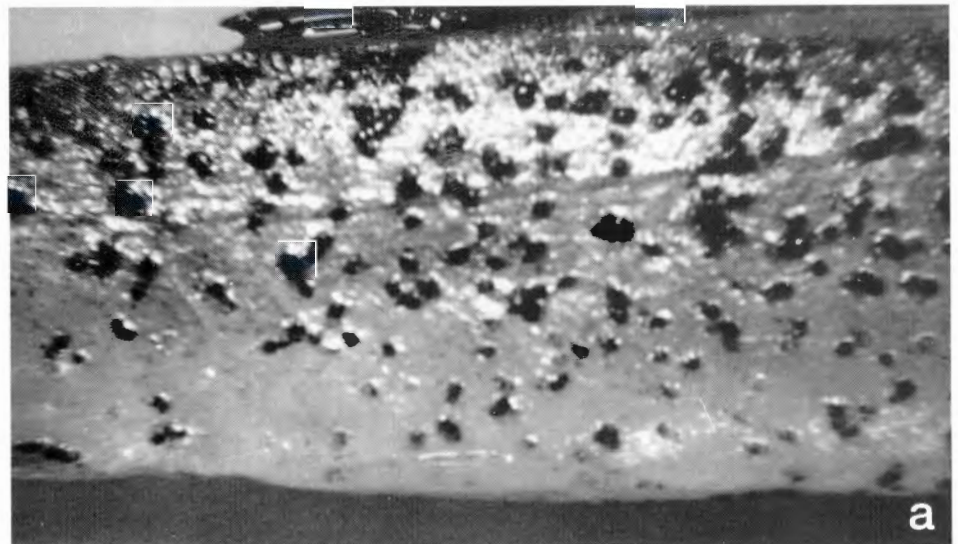
**MICROSCOPY.** Careful examination of wet mount preparations of the black cysts reveals a metacercaria identified

by the presence of two suckers (Fig. 9-6b). Tissue sections of infected skin reveal encysted metacercariae surrounded by a thick fibrinous capsule (Fig 9-6c). The periphery of the capsule contains numerous melanocytes.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Presumptive diagnosis can be obtained by the observation of small, multifocal, slightly raised black spots in the skin. Confirmation is obtained by observing metacercariae in the cysts in wet mount preparations or histological sections.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Fish become infected in fresh water by exposure to surface water containing infected snails. Disinfection of influent water or using ground water should eliminate or greatly reduce the infection. Based on reports from one fish farm, removing fish from freshwater hatcheries and introducing them to netpens before June or July may reduce the intensity and prevalence of the infection.

**Figure 9-6.** Black grub metacercariae. a. black grubs in the skin of a coho salmon smolts. b. Parasite excised from a cyst. Note two suckers, which are characteristic of digeneans. (Courtesy of G.L. Hoffman). c. Black grub (arrow) encysted in the dermis of coho.



### Black Spot Disease in Atlantic salmon

A condition similar to black grub in coho salmon is "black spot disease" caused by metacercariae of the digenean *Cryptocotyle lingua* in Atlantic salmon. In contrast to the former condition, this parasite has a marine life cycle, which involves a definitive (adult) stage in fish-eating birds and a cercarial stage in snails.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Infected fish exhibit few to numerous slightly raised black spots up to 1 mm in diameter in the skin, fins, cornea, and gills. Occasionally, encysted metacercariae may be found in internal organs. Fish seldom become clinically affected unless they are heavily infected.

**MICROSCOPY.** Both wet mounts and histological sections of the skin show similar findings as with black grub of coho salmon.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis of metacercarial infections in general is relatively easy using wet mounts or histological sections. However, more precise identifications to the genus or species level usually requires careful preparations of the metacercariae in stained whole mounts and examination of the internal anatomy.

Information on the first occurrence of the infection (i.e., marine vs freshwater) is useful for differentiating neascus from *Cryptocotyle*.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** As the cercarial stage is common in the periwinkle (*Littorina littorea*), cages located in shallow water and close to the shore are more prone to the infection. There is no known treatment for this infection.

### *Diplostomum* - Eye Fluke

In low salinity waters of the Baltic Sea, metacercariae of a species of *Diplostomum*, usually a parasite of freshwater fish, have been reported to infect the eyes of rainbow trout in netpens located in shallow water, close to shore (Vismanis et al. 1984). Buchmann and Uldal (1994) also reported *Diplostomum* sp. infection in the eyes of rainbow trout in a mariculture facility in Denmark. In this case, the fish had become infected in fresh water prior to being transferred to sea water.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** In one year (1977) blindness occurred in more than 17% of the trout reared in the Baltic Sea due to infection with *Diplostomum* metacercariae (Vismanis et al. 1984). In pens further from shore, where water depths were 9-12 m, intensities of infection were much lower than in the inshore pens (maximum 30 metacercariae per fish compared to more than 120 per fish in the inshore pens).

In the Danish case of trout diplostomosis, there was a significant negative correlation between the number of parasites in the least infected eye and fish weight, but not between the total number of parasites in both eyes and fish weight. Buchmann and Uldal (1994) suggested that the feeding ability of the trout was determined by the vision of the least infected eye.

**MICROSCOPY.** Examination of infected eyes reveals metacercariae in the lens or other tissues (e.g., the retina) depending on the particular *Diplostomum* species (Gibson 1996). Lens infections are associated with cataractous changes, and may result in lens dislocation, capsular rupture and detachment of the retina (Shariff et al. 1980; Wilcock and Dukes 1989).

**DIAGNOSIS.** In eye infections with *Diplostomum* (diplostomosis), cataracts may develop and a positive diagnosis is made by finding the characteristic unencysted metacercariae (Fig. 9-7) in the lens, vitreous humor, or retina.

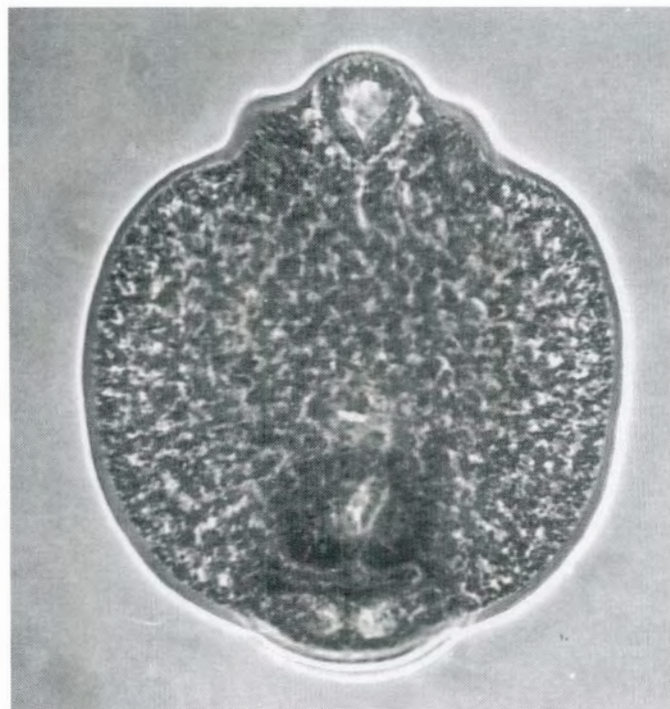


Fig. 9-7. *Diplostomum* from the eye of salmon.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** As with black grub, the infection can be avoided by preventing exposure of fish to infectious fresh water. Diplostomosis in rainbow trout in the Baltic Sea netpens was prevented by locating netpens in deeper water where the snail first intermediate hosts, *Limnaea* spp., are absent (Vismanis et al. 1984).

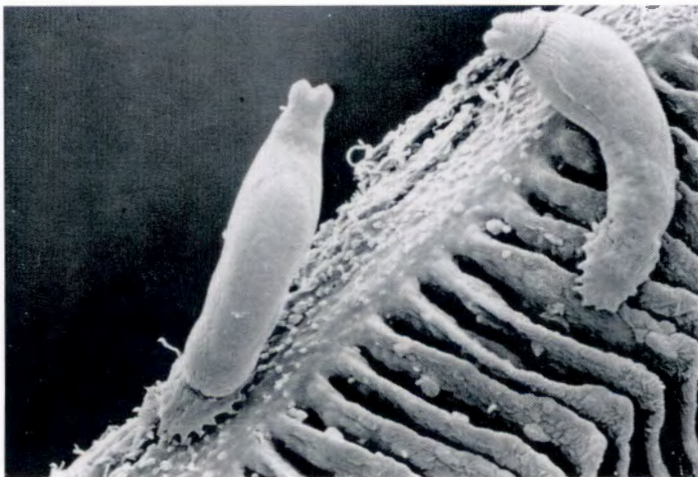
Although Heckman (1984) reported the efficacy of praziquantel and mebendazole against the eye-fluke *Diplostomum spathaceum* in the freshwater sculpin *Cottus bairdi* (administered by injection), there is no information available on the practical application of these drugs in mass treatment of salmonids.

### ***Stephanostomum* Heart Infections**

Heart (pericardial cavity) infections by metacercariae of *Stephanostomum tenue* caused high mortalities in pen-reared rainbow trout in Atlantic Canada (McGladdery et al. 1990). Rainbow trout are accidental hosts for this marine fluke, which normally infects mummichog or silversides as second intermediate hosts, and American eels as definitive hosts in the vicinity of the affected sea-pen sites. The first intermediate host was the mud dog whelk (*Nassarius obsoletus*), which was common around the affected netpens.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** The infection was associated with high mortalities in the summer months when water temperatures increase, presumably due to cardiac dysfunction (McGladdery et al. 1990).

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological sections reveal encysted metacercariae and a thick fibrogranulomatous layer on the surface of the heart and extending anteriorly on the bulbus arteriosus.

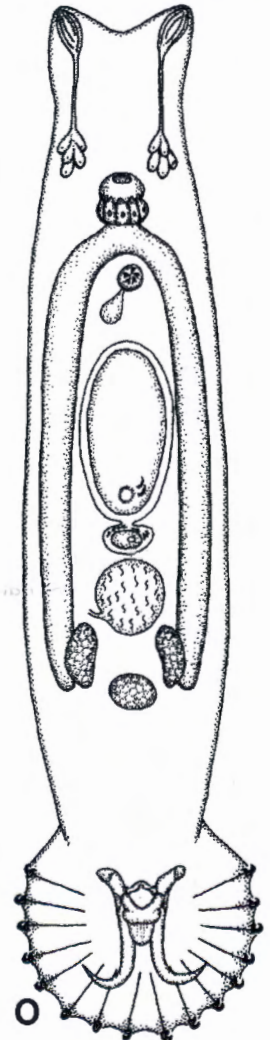


**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Maintaining netpens in water with over 7 m clearance from the bottom may reduce the intensity of infection (McGladdery et al. 1990).

### **Monogenean Flatworms**

Monogenean flatworms (Figs. 9-8, 9-9), often incorrectly called monogenetic trematodes, are common parasites of the skin, fins and gills of fishes. Several species cause disease in captive fishes. Unlike digenetic trematodes, monogeneans have a direct life cycle, and some are viviparous. Therefore, they can rapidly proliferate and spread in the confined environment of aquaculture systems. The only monogenean that we have detected in seawater-reared salmon on the Pacific coast of North America is *Laminiscus strelkowi*. Typical of its family, it is a small worm, approximately 0.5 mm in length. This parasite is frequently found on the gills of salmonids reared in netpens, and we have seen heavy infections in Atlantic and coho salmon.

**Figure 9-8.** Monogenean trematode *Laminiscus strelkowi*. O = opisthaptor, used to attach to host tissue.



**Figure 9-9.** Scanning electron micrograph of *Gyrodactyloides bychowskii* on the gills of Atlantic salmon (Courtesy of T. Atle Mo).

## Helminth and Molluscan Parasites

Very heavy infections have also been observed on the gills of pen-reared cutthroat trout in Puget Sound, Washington, USA (L.W. Harrell, National Marine Fisheries Service, Manchester, Washington, pers. comm.). The precise role of the parasite in disease in pen-reared salmon is unclear. In Norway, Mo and MacKenzie (1991) and Berland (1994) reported the occurrence of a similar monogenean, *Gyrodactyloides bychowskii*, on netpen-farmed Atlantic salmon.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Fish with heavy monogenean infections of the gills are often lethargic, exhibit labored respiration, and accumulate near the surface.

**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mount preparations of the gills of heavily infected fish will reveal numerous, actively moving monogeneans. Histological examination reveals the worms attached to the gill surface by the posterior attachment organ, the opisthaptor. Examination of coho salmon with moderate *L. strelkowi* infections revealed no significant histological changes in the gills. *Gyrodactyloides bychowskii* causes hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the gill epithelium (Mo and MacKenzie 1991).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Monogenean infections are diagnosed by observing the parasites in wet mount preparations of the gill or skin.

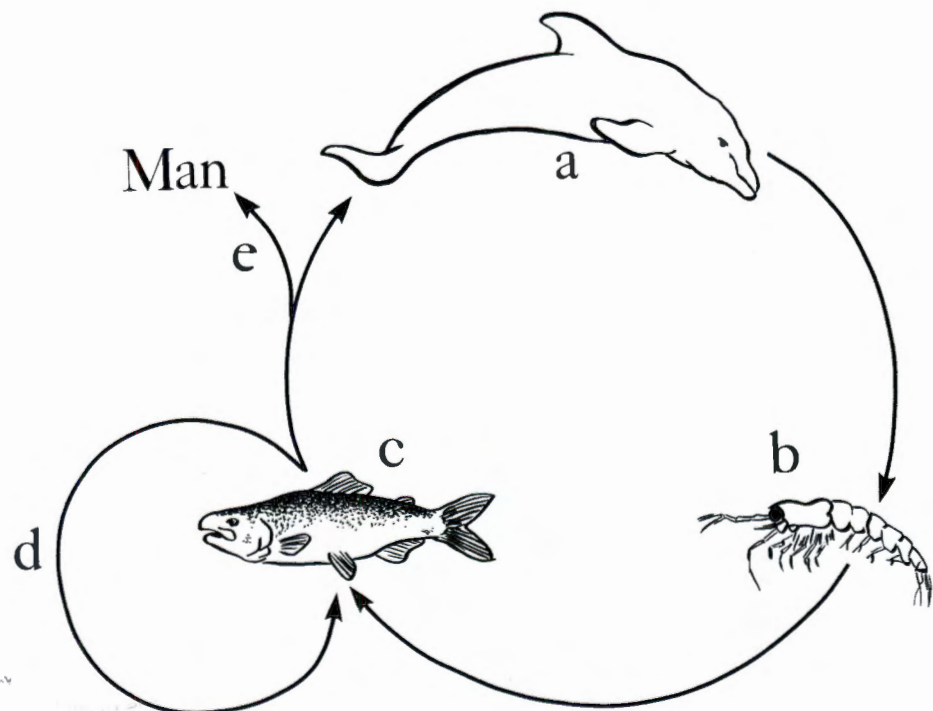
**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Monogenean infections are controlled with external therapeutic agents, such as formalin and organophosphates (Schmahl et al. 1989; Schmahl 1991, 1993). However, organophosphates are not legal for treating food fishes in Canada and the United States, although proprietary formulations of formalin are available.

### Nematodes

Nematodes (round worms) are common parasites of fishes, and occasionally infect pen-reared salmon. As with cestodes and digenetic trematodes, fish can be either definitive or intermediate hosts for nematodes. Crustaceans and, less frequently, other invertebrates are the first intermediate hosts for nematodes that infect fish. One nematode, *Philonema agubernaculum* causes severe visceral infections in salmon reared in netpens in freshwater lakes. It is possible that these infections could persist in fish if they were transferred to netpens.

Members of the family Anisakidae are the only important (and reported) nematodes of pen-reared salmon. The only nematode that has been reported to be associated with disease in salmon netpens is *Hysterothylacium aduncum*, which in its adult stage infects the digestive tract of fishes. However, we include a discussion of another anisakine nematode, *Anisakis* sp., which can infect humans (Figs.9-10, 9-11). Larvae of this

**Figure 9-10.** Life cycle of anisakine nematodes: a, marine mammals eat fish infected with third stage larvae (L3) - larvae develop into fourth stage larvae, then adults, in the gut of the mammal - eggs shed from mammals, hatch and second stage larvae (L2) eaten by crustaceans (intermediate host); b, L2 develops into L3 in crustacean; c, fish or invertebrate (e.g., squid) are paratenic (transport) hosts; d, L3 can be transmitted from fish to fish, squid to fish, or vice versa; e, man becomes infected after eating undercooked or raw fish - man is a dead end host in which the worms remain as L3 larvae or molt into L4 larvae.



worm commonly occur in wild-caught salmon, and have the potential to infect pen-reared salmon.

### *Hysterothylacium*

Large numbers of adult worms of the species *Hysterothylacium* (= *Thynnascaris*) *aduncum* were found blocking the anterior intestine of seapen-reared rainbow trout in Norway some months after feeding the trout fresh wild sprats (*Sprattus sprattus*) that contained juvenile *H. aduncum* in their viscera (Berland 1987). Intestinal infections of seapen-reared coho salmon and rainbow trout with a species of *Hysterothylacium* have also been observed in Chile (González and Carvajal 1998). Calanoid copepods are the first intermediate host of *H. aduncum*, whereas fish and various invertebrates, such as polychaetes, barnacles and amphipods act as second intermediate hosts (Svendsen 1990; González 1994).

In rainbow trout farms in the Baltic Sea, infections of the liver with juvenile nematodes identified as *Contracaecum* (= *Hysterothylacium*) *aduncum* have been reported by Vismanis et al. (1984). The parasite was considered to be identical with the juvenile nematode pathogen of Baltic cod that reduces liver size and decreases body condition factor in heavily infected fish. Fagerholm (1978, 1988) determined that the nematode in Atlantic cod livers is actually *Contracaecum osculatum*, and it is possible that the trout liver parasite also belongs to this species. Seals and other pinnipeds are the definitive hosts of *C. osculatum*.

Infection intensity in the Baltic farmed trout has been low and an impact comparable to that seen in heavily infected cod has not been observed in the rainbow trout. However, infection of the trout had been increasing through the late 1970s, raising the possibility that abundances could reach damaging levels.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Carvajal and González (1990b) suggested that heavily infected fish exhibit poor growth, and Berland and Egidius (1980) have attributed mortalities among pen-reared rainbow trout in Norway to heavy intestinal infections with *H. aduncum*.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis is based on the identification of the worm. Presumptive diagnosis is based on the observation of nematodes in gut lumen. The worms are whitish and cylindrical, and adults are about 40 to 80 mm in length (González and Carvajal 1994). Confirmation of the worm's identity requires microscopical examination of cleared or dissected worms for certain pathognomonic anatomical features of the worm's digestive tract (Möller and Anders 1986; Berland 1989). *Hysterothylacium* and *Anisakis* spp. can be differentiated from *Pseudoterranova* and *Contracaecum* in that they have straight digestive tracts, without a ventricular appendix or intestinal caecum. *Hysterothylacium* can be separated from *Anisakis* in that the former has the excretory pore at the level of the nerve ring, whereas it occurs near the anterior tip with *Anisakis*.

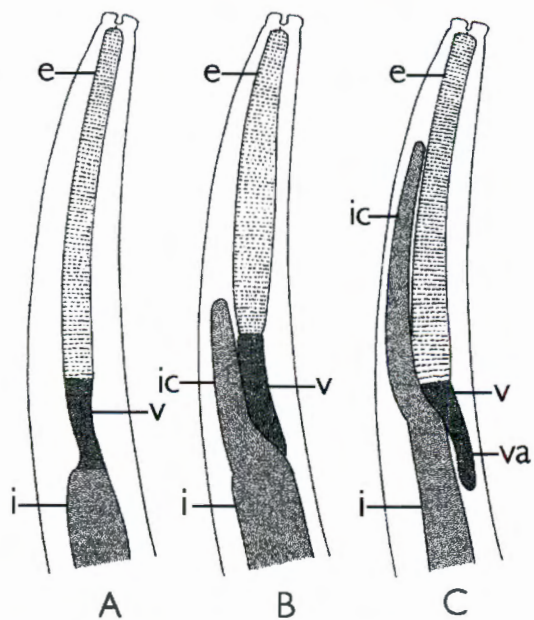
**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** To prevent infections with *Hysterothylacium* or *Contracaecum* species, or keep infection abundances low, the use of fresh wild marine fish or fish offal as feed for farmed fish should be avoided (Berland and Egidius 1980; Vismanis et al. 1984). Such fish serve as intermediate or paratenic (transport) hosts for the nematodes. González and Carvajal (1994) also referred to use of anthelmintics to reduce infection levels but did not specify which anthelmintics they employed.

### *Anisakis*

Larvae of *Anisakis* spp., and the closely related genus *Pseudoterranova*, are commonly found in wild marine fishes. These worms are of concern because they can infect humans who eat raw or undercooked fish (Margolis 1977; Bier et al. 1987; Deardorff and Overstreet 1990). The general life cycle of



**Figure 9-11.** Larval *Anisakis* nematodes in the viscera of a Pacific herring.



**Figure 9-12. Distinguishing characteristics of anisakine larval nematodes.** A. *Anisakis*-type. B. *Pseudoterranova*-type. C. *Contracaecum*-type. e = muscular portion of esophagus, i = intestine, ic = intestinal caecum, v = ventriculus, va = ventricular appendix. (Courtesy of A.C. Olson and Am. Soc. Clin. Sci.)

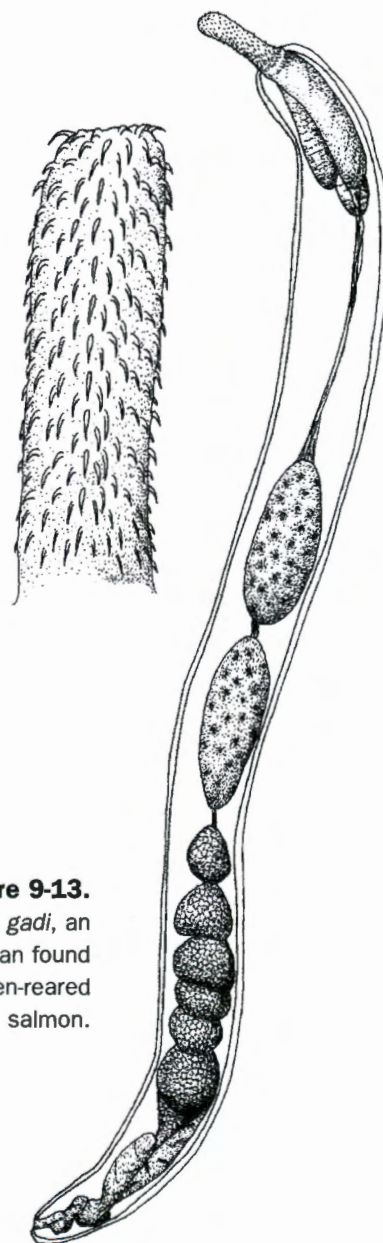
these worms (Fig. 9-10) involves crustaceans as the first intermediate hosts, fish as a second intermediate or transport hosts, and marine mammals as definitive hosts (Nagasawa 1990). Wild caught Pacific salmon are often infected with *Anisakis* larvae (Margolis 1982; Deardorff and Throm 1988), whereas the parasite has not been detected in salmon reared in netpens (Deardorff and Kent 1989; Bristow and Berland 1991a). However, farmed fish could become infected by feeding on infected fish (e.g., Pacific herring) or invertebrates that frequent netpens.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** *Anisakis* larvae are relatively nonpathogenic to salmon and morbidity has not been associated with the infection. Dissection of infected fish reveals encysted worms in the liver, mesenteries, and flesh (Fig. 9-11).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis is based on the identification of the worm. Presumptive diagnosis is based on the observation of encapsulated, whitish nematodes in the viscera or body musculature. The worms are cylindrical, and usually range in length from 17 to 34 mm. Confirmation of the worm's identity requires microscopic examination of cleared or dissected

worms for certain pathognomonic anatomical features (Olson et al. 1983; Berland 1989) (Fig. 9-12). See diagnosis for *Hysterothylacium*.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** The apparent absence of *Anisakis* larvae in farmed salmon is probably because most of the diet of salmon consists of manufactured feeds. Some fish farmers have used fresh Pacific herring to supplement the diet of their fish. This practice should be avoided because this fish is often heavily infected with the worm, which can be transmitted from prey to predator fish. However, frozen herring or other fish could be used because freezing fish for at least 24 hr at  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  will kill the worm.



**Figure 9-13.** *Echinorhynchus gadi*, an acanthocephalan found occasionally in pen-reared salmon.

### Acanthocephala

Acanthocephala (spiny-headed worms), as adults, are parasitic in the intestine of vertebrates. Many species occur in fishes. The life cycle involves one intermediate host, an arthropod, and for some species a paratenic or transport host also plays an important role in transmission to the definitive host but is not biologically essential for completion of the life cycle. For species using fish as definitive hosts, the intermediate hosts are small crustaceans.

No species of acanthocephalan has been reported to cause significant disease in seapen-reared salmonids. Two species, *Echinorhynchus gadi* (Fig. 9-13) and *Pomphorhynchus laevis*, have been reported to occur in low numbers in rainbow trout farms off the Baltic coast (Vismanis et al. 1984), and *E. gadi* has been observed in seapen-reared Atlantic salmon on the east coast of Canada (Burt 1994).

### MUSSEL LARVAE

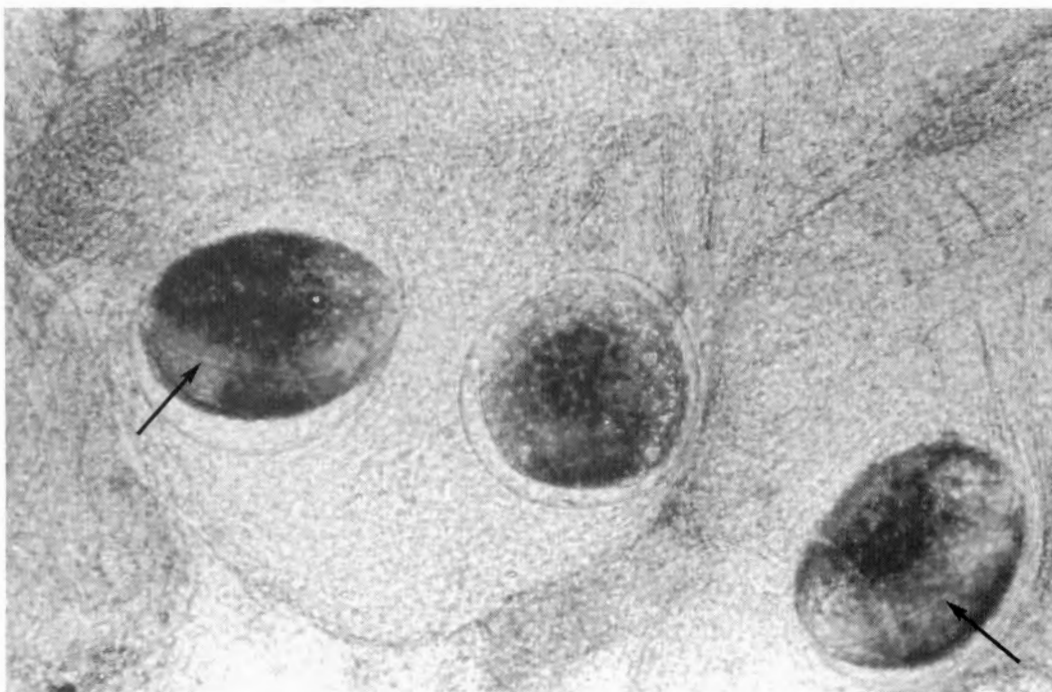
Larvae of certain freshwater mussels (glochidia) frequently infect the gills of fishes. Gill infections by larvae of the mussel *Mytilus edulis* have been reported in seawater pen-reared Atlantic salmon in Scotland (Bruno 1987, 1989) and Norway (Flesjaa 1992). In both cases, heavy infections were associated with severe gill damage and mortality.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** The infection was associated with reduced growth and mortalities as high as 45% (Bruno 1987). Infected fish shake their heads and gasp, whereas others are listless before death. Infected gills exhibit increased mucus production and small white bodies in the secondary filaments.

**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mounts will reveal the bivalved larvae (Fig. 9-14). Histologically, heavily infected gills exhibit extensive epithelial hyperplasia and fusion of the secondary lamellae associated with the veliger larvae.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Numerous small, raised, whitish nodules throughout the filaments is suggestive of the infection. Positive diagnosis is achieved by observing post-veliger mussel larvae (about 0.4 mm in diameter with typical bivalve shells) by microscopy.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There is no available treatment for this infection. As with other marine parasites, avoiding the infection in netpens would be very difficult. Fortunately, this infection appears to be rare, with only two reported occurrences.



**Figure 9-14.** Mussel larvae in gills. Arrows = valve opening.

# CRUSTACEAN PARASITES

Stewart C. Johnson

Parasitic crustaceans are often important pathogens in aquaculture and severe disease has been associated with caligid copepods (sea lice) in netpen farms. A large section of this chapter is, therefore, devoted to sea lice, with an extensive review on their biology and treatment.

## ECTOPARASITIC COPEPODS

Members of three families of parasitic copepods have been reported to cause disease in sea-farmed salmonids. These families are the Pennellidae, the Ergasilidae and the Caligidae. Of these three families, members of the Caligidae (also referred to as sea lice) are the most important with respect to the marine-rearing of salmon.

### Family Caligidae (Sea Lice)

The term sea lice is commonly used to refer to several species of marine ectoparasitic copepods of the family Caligidae that infect salmonids. Reported species of sea lice from marine-reared salmon include *Caligus clemensi*, *Caligus curtus*, *Caligus elongatus*, *Caligus orientalis*, *Caligus teres*, *Caligus* sp., *Lepeophtheirus cuneifer*, and *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*. Other species in the family Caligidae are economically important parasites of a wide variety of both wild and marine-reared fishes (reviewed in Costello 1993). Of these species, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (also referred to as the salmon louse) and *Caligus elongatus* are responsible for the majority of serious disease outbreaks and high economic losses to salmon farmers throughout the Northern Hemisphere. Other *Caligus* species are responsible for disease outbreaks in stocks of salmon in the Southern Hemisphere.

*Lepeophtheirus salmonis* is limited in its host range to salmonids, except for very rare cases (Kabata 1979). In comparison, the other species of sea lice have broad host ranges that include both non-salmonid teleost and elasmobranch hosts (Parker et al., 1968; Margolis et al. 1975; Kabata 1974b, 1979, 1988; Bruno and Stone 1990; Urawa and Kato 1991). Many of these non-salmonid hosts are common in the vicinity of netpen sites and serve as a source of parasites for salmon (Bruno and Stone 1990; Shaw and Opitz 1993).

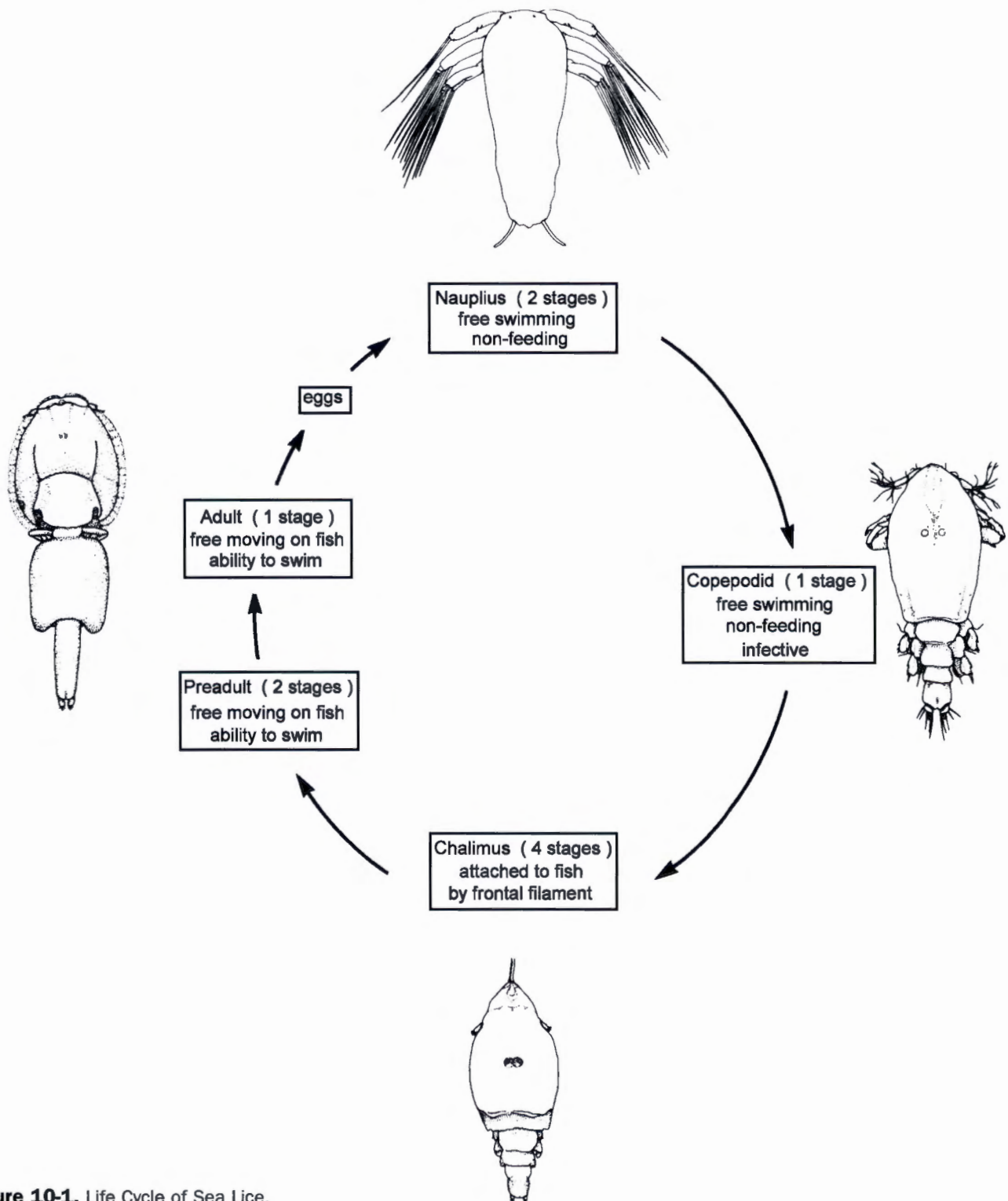
With exception of *C. elongatus*, all species of sea lice found on salmon that have been studied have ten developmental stages (see Piasecki 1996). These stages include two free-living

nauplius stages, one free-swimming infectious copepodid stage, four attached chalimus stages, two preadult stages, and one adult stage (Johnson and Albright 1991b; Schram 1993) (Fig. 10-1). Sea lice molt between each of these developmental stages.

In laboratory studies the occasional transfer of preadult and adult *L. salmonis* between salmon has been observed, but transfer between hosts was considered a insignificant route of infection (Bruno and Stone 1990). However, a recent study by Ritchie (1997) suggests that mobile stages of *L. salmonis* do transfer among fish in netpens. Both the preadult and adult stages of *Caligus* species have been reported free swimming in the plankton, and infection of sea-farmed salmonids with preadult and adult stages of *C. elongatus* and *C. clemensi* is known to occur (Wootten et al. 1982; Hogans and Trudeau 1989b; unpublished data for British Columbia). Infection by *Caligus* preadults and adults most commonly occurs when large numbers of infected non-salmonid hosts become resident in the vicinity of net pens.

Sea lice carry their eggs as elongate cylindrical strings that are attached to the genital segment (Fig. 8-2g). The number of eggs produced by sea lice is highly variable depending on the species of sea lice, as well as environmental (seasonal) and host (Hogans and Trudeau 1989b; Tully 1989; Costello 1993; Pike et al. 1993; Ritchie et al. 1993; Tully and Whelan 1993; Hogans 1995). Species of host, host age (maturation state), general condition of the host, and other host factors can also effect the number of eggs carried by sea lice. Sea lice living on older (sexually mature), highly stressed or diseased hosts generally carry more eggs than those on younger and/or non-stressed or healthy hosts. Atlantic salmon immunized with extracts derived from adult *L. salmonis* were shown to have a lower proportion of ovigerous copepods than control fish. Furthermore, those from immunized fish showed a significant reduction (26%) in the average number of eggs carried (Grayson et al. 1995).

Egg production in sea lice is a continuous process, and newly formed egg strings are visible within the genital segment. For both *L. salmonis* and *C. elongatus*, new egg sacs can be extruded within 1 day of hatching. As egg strings near hatching they develop a darker coloration which is due to the development of pigmentation in the nauplii. Low salinities (< 15 ppt.) and low water temperatures (< 3°C) markedly reduces egg hatching success in *L. salmonis* (Johnson and



**Figure 10-1.** Life Cycle of Sea Lice.

Albright 1991c; Hogans 1995). Development of the egg to the first naupliar stage is primarily controlled by water temperature, although other factors such as salinity may have an effect. Egg development times for *L. salmonis* were 17.5, 8.6, and 5.5 days at 5, 10 and 15 °C , respectively (Johnson and Albright 1991c).

The two naupliar stages are free-swimming in the plankton and serve as dispersal stages. The naupliar stages are non-feeding and not infectious. The duration of this planktonic phase (nauplius I to copepodid) is primarily controlled by temperature, although other environmental parameters such as salinity may also have an effect. In laboratory studies survival

of the planktonic (naupliar and copepodid) stages of sea lice is strongly effected by the culture conditions under which they are maintained (Johnson and Albright 1991c; Pike et al. 1993).

The free-swimming infectious copepodid stages of sea lice are non-feeding up until they attach to a suitable host. Prior to attachment, copepodids rely upon maternally derived lipid droplets for energy and for this reason their survival as free-swimming organisms is limited. At salinities of 15 to 30 ppt and temperatures of 5 to 15 °C average survival times for *L. salmonis* copepodids range between 2 and 8 days (Wootten et al. 1982; Johnson and Albright 1991c).

The infectious copepodid stage of sea lice attaches to the host by means of well developed second antennae. Copepodids are capable of changing position on the host, and can become dislodged from the host (Bron et al. 1991, 1993a; Kabata 1979). After a period of feeding the copepodid stage molts to the first chalimus stage. All chalimus stages are physically attached to the host by means of frontal filaments that serve to anchor them to hard structures such as scales, cartilage and fin rays (Bron et al. 1991; Pike et al. 1993). For this reason chalimus larvae are not removed by most chemical treatments. In naturally and experimentally infected fish, copepodids and chalimus larvae can be found on all the body surfaces but are generally more abundant on the fins (Bron et al. 1991; Johnson and Albright 1992a,b; Tully et al. 1993; Johnson et al. 1996).

With the molt to the first preadult stage the copepods move off the fins on to the other body surfaces. Except during molting, both preadult and adult sea lice are mobile and remain in contact with the host by using the anterior portion of their body as a suction cup. When present in low densities, preadult and adult sea lice are most commonly found in the perianal region and on the dorsal surface behind the dorsal fin.

Development rates for *L. salmonis* on both Atlantic and chinook salmon have been determined from both laboratory studies and field observations. Based on laboratory studies development from copepodid to adult male takes from 234 to 280 degree days on naive Atlantic salmon and 380 degree days on naive chinook salmon (Johnson 1993). Development from copepodid to adult female takes 281 to 400 degree days on Atlantic salmon and about 444 degree days on chinook salmon (Johnson 1993). Based on laboratory data, *C. elongatus* developed from copepodid to adult males and adult females in 247 degree days (Piasecki and MacKinnon 1995). Generation times for *C. elongatus* and *L. salmonis* have been estimated from field collected data (Tully 1989). The generation time of *C. elongatus* was approximately 81, 66 and 50 days when the average seawater temperature was 8.0, 13.0 and 16.0 °C, respectively. The generation time of *L. salmonis* was

approximately 93, 76, 56 and 48 days when the average seawater temperature was 7.0, 8.0, 12.0 and 15.5 °C, respectively.

Species of salmon are known to differ in the susceptibility to infection with *L. salmonis*. Experimental infections with *L. salmonis* of Atlantic, chinook and coho salmon showed that Atlantic salmon were the most susceptible to infections, while coho salmon were the most resistant species (Johnson and Albright 1992a). In Canada, Atlantic salmon and rainbow trout are generally more heavily infected with sea lice than chinook or coho salmon when raised at the same site (unpublished data). Based on laboratory studies, differences in susceptibility between species is related to the magnitude of their innate host responses to *L. salmonis*. In coho salmon these responses include well developed epithelial hyperplasia and inflammatory responses, while in Atlantic salmon only minor tissue responses occur (Jones et al. 1990; Johnson and Albright 1992a). Examination of the attachment and feeding sites of *C. elongatus* chalimus larvae on the body of Atlantic salmon revealed only minor tissue responses (MacKinnon 1993).

Administration of the stress hormone cortisol increases the susceptibility of coho and chinook salmon to infection with *L. salmonis* by reducing the magnitude of their tissue responses (Johnson and Albright 1992b; unpublished data). Depressed immune function due to other acute or chronic disease states or the process of sexual maturation can result in increased susceptibility to sea lice. In British Columbia, higher numbers of sea lice with higher numbers of eggs per female were found on sexually mature versus immature coho salmon that were raised at the same site (unpublished data).

### Aspects of the Behavior of Sea Lice

Important to our understanding of the dynamics of sea lice epizootics is a knowledge of their distribution and behavior in the field. This is especially true for the naupliar and infectious copepodid stages. At present our knowledge is limited to studies of the distribution and behavior of *L. salmonis*. Cues such as light, chemical, pressure, and water flow have been suggested to be important factors controlling the distribution and behavior of these stages, including host location by copepodids (reviewed in Bron et al. 1993a). In the laboratory, both the naupliar and copepodid stages of sea lice have been demonstrated to have a strong positive phototaxis to direct light sources suggesting that they may be found in surface water during the day (Johannessen 1978; Wootten et al. 1982; Bron et al. 1993a). However, caution should be exercised when using this information to infer distribution in the field, as it is well

recognized that for many zooplankton species that positive phototaxis to direct light sources in the laboratory is artifactual (see Forward 1988).

The naupliar stages showed only small differences in depth distribution between the night and day, whereas copepodids were seen to display a distinct diurnal vertical migration, gathering near the surface during the day, and spreading out into deeper layers at night (Heuch et al. 1995). With respect to pen-reared salmon, these authors suggest that salmon become infected during daytime when they come to the surface to feed. Huse and Holm (1993) reported that infestation of Atlantic salmon by *L. salmonis* was significantly higher with fish maintained in a 6 m deep netpen when compared to a 20 m deep netpen, suggesting higher rates of infection occur in surface waters.

Any factor that decreases water movement through sea cages may result in the retention of high numbers of nauplii and copepodids, both which are relatively weak swimmers within the sea cage. Costelloe et al. (1996) investigated the dispersion of *L. salmonis* larvae (nauplii and copepodids) from sea cages. The highest levels of larvae were consistently found within the sea cages, and relatively few larvae were recovered from waters surrounding the sea cages. Reduced water movement through the sea cages, due to net fouling, was responsible for the high retention of larvae within the cages.

Sea lice may also function as vectors of viral and bacterial diseases of fish (Nylund et al. 1991, 1993). It has been demonstrated that the sea lice species *L. salmonis* can function as a vector for the agent of infectious salmon anaemia (ISA),

especially during the epidemic and endemic phases (Nylund et al. 1993, 1994). Although not implicated in the transfer of *Aeromonas salmonicida*, the causative agent of furunculosis, this bacterium has been isolated from the surface of *L. salmonis* (Nese and Enger 1993).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** The attached copepodids, chalimus, preadult and adult stages of sea lice feed on mucus, skin, and blood (Kabata 1970; Brandal et al. 1976; Bron et al. 1993b). Disease is caused by the feeding activities of the sea lice. Due to their small size, damage by copepodid and chalimus larvae is generally limited to a small area around their point of attachment, where they erode the epidermis and sub-epidermis (Bron et al. 1991; Johnson and Albright 1992a,b). However, heavy infections of *C. clemensi* on wild pink salmon and *L. salmonis* on wild sea trout have been reported to cause serious fin damage – e.g., complete removal of the fins (Parker and Margolis 1964; Tully et al. 1993).

Because the preadult and adult parasites are larger and capable of moving on the surface of the fish, damage by these stages is more severe and widespread, with heavily infected salmon commonly show gray patches (extensive areas of skin erosion and hemorrhaging) on the head and back, and a distinct area of erosion, dark coloration, and sub-epidermal hemorrhages in the perianal region (Wootten et al. 1982). In seriously diseased salmonids, open lesions, in which the epidermis is breached and the underlying tissues exposed, commonly occur on the head and/or behind the dorsal fin



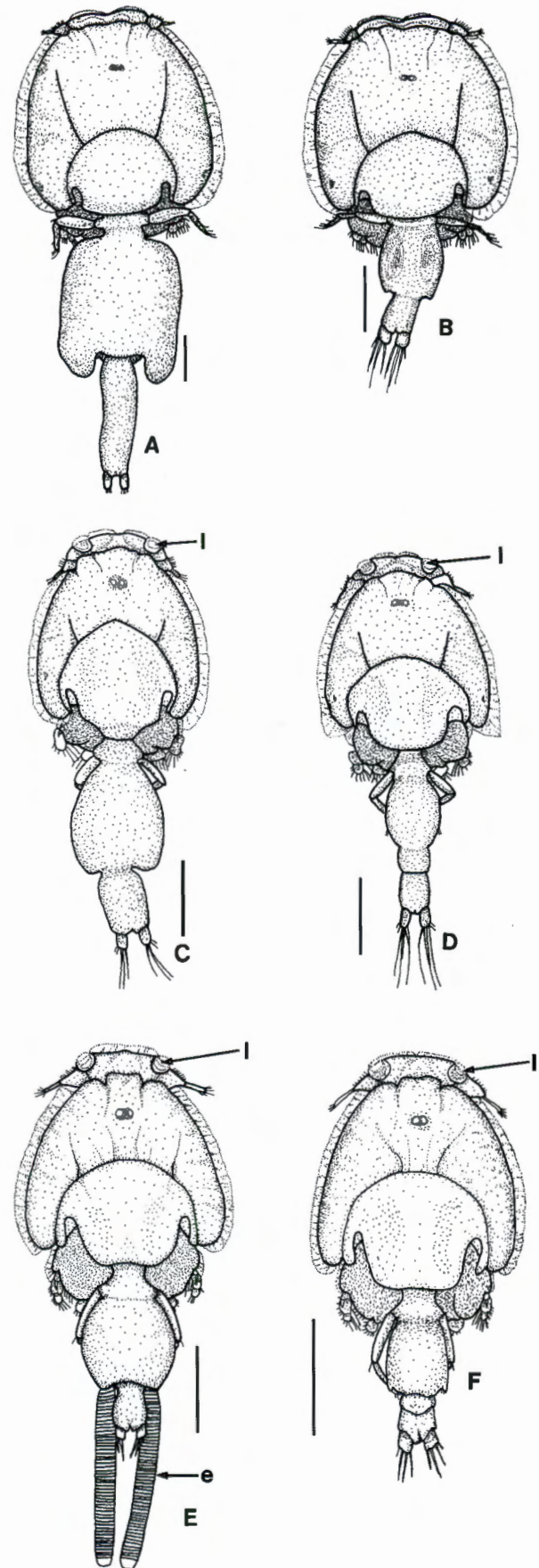
**Figure 10-2.** II and IV stage larvae of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* attached to a fin.

## Crustacean Parasites

(Jónsdóttir et al. 1992; Johnson et al. 1996). Heavy infections reduce the market value of the fish and ultimately result in death. Death may occur due to the development of secondary diseases (e.g., vibriosis, furunculosis) exacerbated by the high levels of accompanying stress, or in severe cases where the epidermis is breached, death may be due to a loss of physiological homeostasis including osmotic stress, anemia, and hypoproteinemia (Wootton et al. 1982; Tully et al. 1993; Nylund et al. 1993; Grimnes and Jakobsen 1996). The relationship of the number of sea lice to severity of the disease is dependent on 1) size and age of the fish, 2) the general state of health of the fish, and 3) the species and developmental stages of the sea lice present.

**MICROSCOPY.** Examination of the fins, gills and skin under a dissecting microscope will demonstrate the developmental stages of the parasite (Fig. 10-2). Histological examination of tissue sites of copepod feeding reveals that the epidermis of infected Atlantic salmon is eroded, and the dermis exhibits hemorrhagic areas (Wootton et al. 1982; Bron et al. 1991; MacKinnon 1993). Fins of Atlantic and chinook salmon infected with chalimus larvae of *L. salmonis* become eroded. In contrast, the skin and fins of coho salmon infected with the chalimus larvae of *L. salmonis* show pronounced epithelial hyperplasia and an inflammatory response (Johnson and Albright 1992a,b).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis is confirmed by observing the copepods and determining their specific identity through microscopic examination. Copepodids and chalimus larvae are small (< 4 mm in length) and can occur on all exterior surfaces of the body and fins as well as in the buccal cavity and on the gills. Their small size requires the use of a magnifying glass or dissecting microscope to detect their presence. Preadult and adult sea lice are visible to the naked eye. They occur on the body surfaces, especially on the head, back, and in the perianal region. Preadult and adult stages of *Caligus* species can be distinguished from *Lepeophtheirus* species by the presence of lunules on their anterior margin (Fig. 10-3). A key to aid in the identification of adult sea lice of the Northern Hemisphere is given in Johnson and Margolis (1994).



**Figure 10-3.** Adult stages of sea lice. *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*, female (A), male (B). *Caligus elongatus*, female (C), male (D). *Caligus teres*, female (E), male (F) (A, B, C, D, redrawn from Kabata 1979; E, F, redrawn from Wilson 1905).  
e = egg sac; I = lunule.

It is possible to identify the copepodid and chalimus stages but their identification is difficult and requires a detailed knowledge of copepod structure. The developmental stages of *C. clemensi*, *C. elongatus* and *L. salmonis* can be identified by reference to Kabata (1972), Piasecki (1996) and Johnson and Albright (1991b), respectively. Supplementary descriptions of the developmental stages of *L. salmonis* are given in Schram (1993). The copepodid and chalimus stages of *C. clemensi* and *L. salmonis* can be identified by reference to Kabata (1972), Johnson and Albright (1991b) and Schram (1993). The earlier developmental stages of the other sea lice species have not been described.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Sea lice control is best carried out by the implementation of an integrated pest management scheme. Such approaches utilize information on the biology and behavior of sea lice and the efficacy of various treatments to develop management plans that reduce the frequency of treatments and amount of drugs needed to control the infestations.

Proper site selection and husbandry practices can reduce the incidence of sea lice disease. For example, farm sites should be situated in areas where water current patterns are such that the infectious copepodid stages are not retained on site. Areas with abundant wild hosts of sea lice should also be avoided. Fish reared in sites with poor water quality may be placed under stress resulting in higher incidences of disease, including sea lice disease. The use of single year class sites, and the fallowing of farm sites between restocking can also significantly reduce the need for treatments for *L. salmonis* (Bron et al. 1993c; Grant and Treasurer 1993). This approach is not as effective against *C. elongatus* due to its broad host range and ability of the preadult and adult stages to move from fish to fish (Bron et al. 1993c). In cases where farms belonging to different companies are in close proximity, cooperative agreements between companies with respect to single year class stocking, periods of fallowing, and timing of sea lice treatments have proven useful in reducing the severity of sea lice outbreaks (Grant and Treasurer 1993).

A great deal of effort has gone into the development of treatments for sea lice. Bath or dip treatments with dichlorvos, trichlorfon, azamethiphos, cypermethrin, carbaryl, pyrethroids and hydrogen peroxide have been used to control sea lice infections on farmed salmonids (Brandal and Egidius 1979; Costello 1993; Johnson et al. 1993; Roth et al. 1993a,b; Thomassen 1993a,b). Excellent reviews on the chemotherapeutic control of sea lice are given in Roth et al. (1993a) and Costello (1993). It is important to remember that there can be marked differences between salmon species in

their ability to tolerate sea lice treatments (see Johnson and Margolis 1993; Johnson et al. 1993)

The organophosphorus insecticides, dichlorvos, marketed as 'Nuvan 500EC' or 'Aquaguard SLT', or in its related trichlorfon form as 'Neguvon', were the first chemicals widely used to control sea lice (Brandal and Egidius 1977; Grave et al. 1991a,b). Brandal and Egidius (1977) reported the first use of trichlorfon for the treatment of salmonids infected with sea lice. In their study, trichlorfon, which was administered orally, resulted in a decline in the number of sea lice present and a high level of mortality in the treated fish. Dichlorvos and trichlorfon have been used since the 1960's as a bath treatment for parasites in pond fish culture (reviewed in Schmahl et al. 1989). These compounds were administered to salmonids as a bath treatment following the methods described by Brandal and Egidius (1979). These treatments effectively remove both the preadult and adult stages of sea lice but not the chalimus larvae. Therefore, successive treatments usually at two to four week intervals are required to control infections (Wooten et al. 1982). It was thought that by early 1990 resistance of *L. salmonis* to dichlorvos was being seen at some farm sites (Jones et al. 1992).

The organophosphate insecticide azamethiphos (marketed as Salmosan) is presently used in Europe and Canada for sea lice control. This chemical is administered to salmon as a bath treatment, and like the other organophosphates shows little efficacy against the attached chalimus stages (Roth et al. 1996). This chemical is more efficacious against *L. salmonis*, has a wider therapeutic margin and appears to be more tolerated by Atlantic salmon than the other organophosphates (Hodneland et al. 1993; Roth et al. 1996).

Although organophosphates are recognized as toxic to a wide variety of marine organisms, they are released into the surrounding waters after treatment is completed, where it is argued that their impact on non-target species is minimal due to the rate of dilution and their rapid breakdown (Egidius and Moster 1987; Cusack and Johnson 1990; Dobson and Tack 1991). This practice has resulted in conflict between environmental groups and salmon farmers over the use of these chemicals, and has led Scotland and Ireland to consider banning their use.

Pyrethrin and pyrethroid compounds are currently being used for sea lice control (Boxaspen and Holm 1991 a,b; Roth et al. 1993). The synthetic pyrethroid cypermethrin is believed to be more efficacious than azamethiphos for the control of *L. salmonis* on Atlantic salmon. Clinical field trials are ongoing in Northeastern United States using cypermethrin, which is widely used in Norway.

Bath treatments with hydrogen peroxide have been used to control sea lice in Norway, Faeroe Islands, United Kingdom and North America (Bruno 1992; Thomassen 1993a,b; Bruno and Raynard 1994). Thomassen (1993 a,b) reported that bath treatments of hydrogen peroxide at a concentration 1.5 g/l for 20 minutes effectively removes from 85 to 100% of the preadult and adult stages of sea lice without toxicity to Atlantic salmon, but had no significant effect on the intensity of infection with the attached chalimus stages. In addition, high proportion of the preadult and adult stages removed from the fish recovered after treatment (Johnson et al. 1993; Bruno and Raynard 1994). With respect to *L. salmonis*, these stages are unlikely to reinfect the treated hosts. Preadult and adults of species of *Caligus* are generally more active swimmers and reinfection is possible if they recover. The use of hydrogen peroxide is rather impractical and its use has been essentially abandoned in Norway.

The toxicity of hydrogen peroxide to fish increases with increasing water temperatures, concentrations, and exposure times (Johnson et al. 1993; Roth et al. 1993a; Bruno and Raynard 1994). Atlantic salmon are less sensitive to hydrogen peroxide than chinook salmon (Johnson et al. 1993). Histological sections of gills from fish that have experienced acute toxicity to hydrogen peroxide show extensive epithelial lifting and necrosis (Johnson et al. 1993; Thomassen 1993a,b).

Bath treatments cause high levels of stress that can result in the development of secondary diseases (e.g., vibriosis and furunculosis) following treatment. In addition, production levels of treated fish are compromised due to lower growth and feed conversion rates. To avoid physical damage during treatments, associated high levels of stress, and the high costs of bath treatments, a great deal of effort has gone into developing oral treatments for sea lice.

Palmer et al. (1987) reported the results of preliminary studies on the efficacy of oral doses of ivermectin for the control of sea lice on Atlantic salmon. Although this drug was found to be effective in reducing populations of sea lice, the drug had a narrow margin of safety. Ivermectin has been demonstrated to be effective in controlling all developmental stages of sea lice (Smith et al. 1993; Johnson and Margolis 1993). Our studies showed that ivermectin can be very toxic to Atlantic salmon and that the level of toxicity varied between salmon species. Atlantic salmon fed 0.05 mg/kg on alternate days became anorexic after 20 days, and ivermectin was lethal to fish fed at higher doses (Johnson et al. 1993). Fish suffering from ivermectin toxicity are listless, show ataxia, and then die in a few days. Due to long tissue withdrawal times and concerns about the impact of ivermectin residues in the

sediments beneath the netpens, this drug is unlikely ever to be licensed or registered for use in aquaculture (Burrige and Haya 1993; Costello 1993). At present, however, ivermectin can be prescribed in some jurisdictions for treatment of sea lice, especially on smolts.

The oral administration of insect growth regulators to control sea lice was first described by Hoy and Hornberg (1991 cited in Roth et al. 1993a). In their study oral administration of diflubenzuron, a chemical that inhibits chitin synthesis, resulted in significant reductions in both adult and larval stages of sea lice. Oral treatments with the insect growth regulators Lepsidon (containing diflubenzuron) and Ektobann (containing teflubenzuron) are currently under development in Norway. Treatments using these chemicals are being conducted on a limited scale in Norway and the Faeroe Islands under special permit. These compounds when administered orally are highly efficacious against the copepodid, chalimus and preadult stages. However, they have no efficacy against the adult stages which no longer molt. A portion of these compounds when fed may be deposited to the sediments in the feces, with a maximum uptake by the fish of 30%. Associated with this deposition is the potential for a negative impact on benthic crustaceans, including commercially important species. This problem will have to be addressed before these compounds can undergo licensing and registration for use. Licensing of these compounds in some areas, such as the United States, may be very difficult due to laws which limit the use of diflubenzuron within 5 km of the coast (Roth et al. 1993a).

The effectiveness of alternative treatments such as hanging bags of sliced onions in sea pens and the addition of garlic to salmon feeds is at best questionable (see Costello 1993).

Biological control of sea lice using cleaner-fishes (wrasses) is widely used in Norway, Shetland, Scotland and Ireland (reviewed in Costello 1993; Treasurer 1993; Kvenseth 1993; Tully et al. 1996). The use of wrasses to control *L. salmonis* on Atlantic salmon was first proposed by Bjordal (1988, 1990). In both laboratory and field studies wrasses removed sea lice from salmonids, but not always in a predictable manner. A survey of fish farmers in Scotland that have tried wrasses to control sea lice showed that the majority felt that this sea lice control measure was beneficial, particularly when used in conjunction with Dichlorvos treatments (Anonymous 1991). However, problems encountered using wrasses to control sea lice included the requirement of smaller mesh size in nets to prevent their escape, some wrasses were intimidated by larger salmon and tended not to clean them, while other wrasses became aggressive and inflicted scale and eye damage to the salmon, and some farmers feared that the wrasses ate salmon

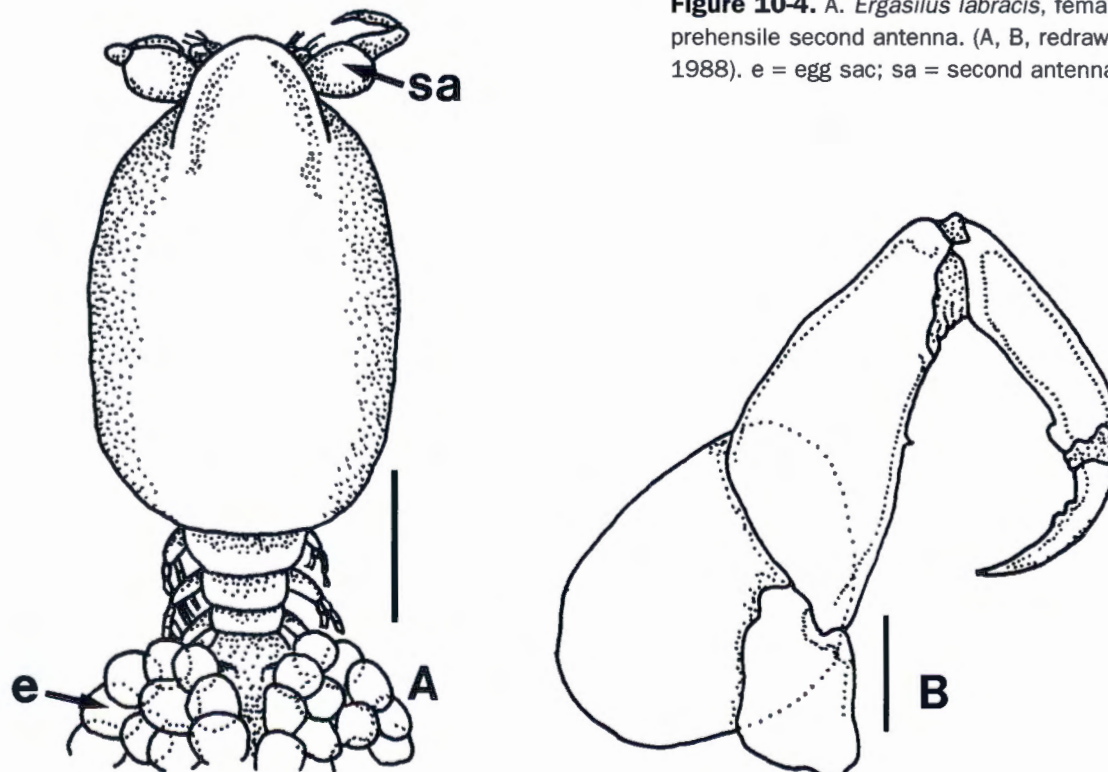
feed and would abandon their cleaning behavior (Anonymous 1991). Other problems with the use of wrasse is their high over-winter mortalities, limited availability, and high purchase costs. The efficacy is limited to early in the season (when lice are active). Nevertheless, wrasses are used in over half of the fish farms in Norway. A bonus is that they also reduce the fouling of the cages.

There are no vaccines available for the control of sea lice. Ongoing research has demonstrated that Atlantic salmon can produce antibodies when injected with crude extracts of *L. salmonis* (Grayson et al. 1991). However, salmon naturally infected with *L. salmonis* and *C. elongatus* fail to produce an antibody response (Grayson et al. 1991; MacKinnon 1991). There was no difference in the number of copepods carried on control and Atlantic salmon that had been immunized with extracts derived from adult *L. salmonis* when challenged under laboratory conditions (Grayson et al. 1995). However, there were fewer copepods with eggs and a significant reduction in the average number of eggs carried by those copepods on the immunized fish. These results support the view that development of a vaccine for sea lice is possible.

### Family Ergasilidae

In the family Ergasilidae only one species, *Ergasilus labracis*, has been reported to cause disease in marine-reared salmon (Fig. 10-4). High levels of mortality in Atlantic salmon parr reared in brackish water have been attributed to this species (O'Halloran et al. 1992). Other species in the family Ergasilidae have been reported to be economically important parasites of wild and marine-reared non-salmonid fishes (see Paperna 1975).

**DIAGNOSIS.** In this family only the adult female copepods are parasitic. Adult males and juvenile copepods of both sexes are free-living. Females attach to the host using modified second antennae that terminates in a strong claw. Diagnosis is confirmed by detecting the presence of copepods, and determining their specific identity through microscopic examination. As adult females are small (approximately 1 mm in length), the use of a hand lens or dissecting microscope may be required to confirm their presence. *Ergasilus labracis* can be easily distinguished from the other parasitic crustaceans of salmonids by its body shape and structure of its second antenna. Keys to aid in the identification of *Ergasilus* species are given in Kabata (1979; 1988).



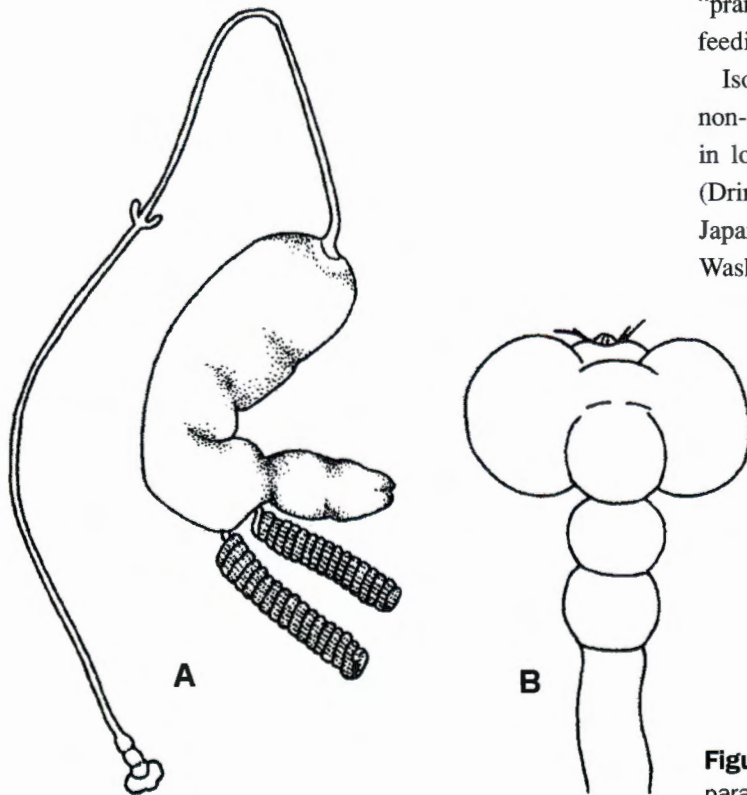
**Figure 10-4.** A. *Ergasilus labracis*, female, dorsal; B. Same, prehensile second antenna. (A, B, redrawn from Kabata 1988). e = egg sac; sa = second antenna

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** O'Halloran et al. (1992) reported that a single dose of ivermectin fed at 0.2 mg/kg fish resulted in a 98-99% reduction in the intensity of *E. labracis* on Atlantic salmon parr, but also caused some mortality in the fish. Feeding at a dose rate of 0.05 mg/kg fish twice weekly gave a similar result without an increase in the mortality rate. Although not yet tested, some of the other compounds used to control sea lice may work on this species.

### Family Pennellidae

One member of the family Pennellidae, *Haemobaphes disphaerocephalus*, has been reported in pen-reared Atlantic salmon (Kent et al. 1997b). This parasitic copepod normally infects eulachon (family Osmeridae), and this was the first report of a *Haemobaphes* species infecting salmon. The parasite penetrates the branchial vasculature, and causes anemia. Fortunately, the infection has been observed in only a few Atlantic salmon reared in British Columbia.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Infected fish are anemic and may be lethargic. Examination of the opercular cavity reveals the coiled egg sacs and blood engorged body of the parasite (Fig. 10-5). The long neck and anterior hold fast are internal within the gill arch (Fig. 10-5).



**DIAGNOSIS.** *Haemobaphes* is characterized by attachment at the gill arch and coiled egg sacs. Specific identification requires examination of the anterior holdfast (see Kabata 1988), which must be very carefully dissected from tissues.

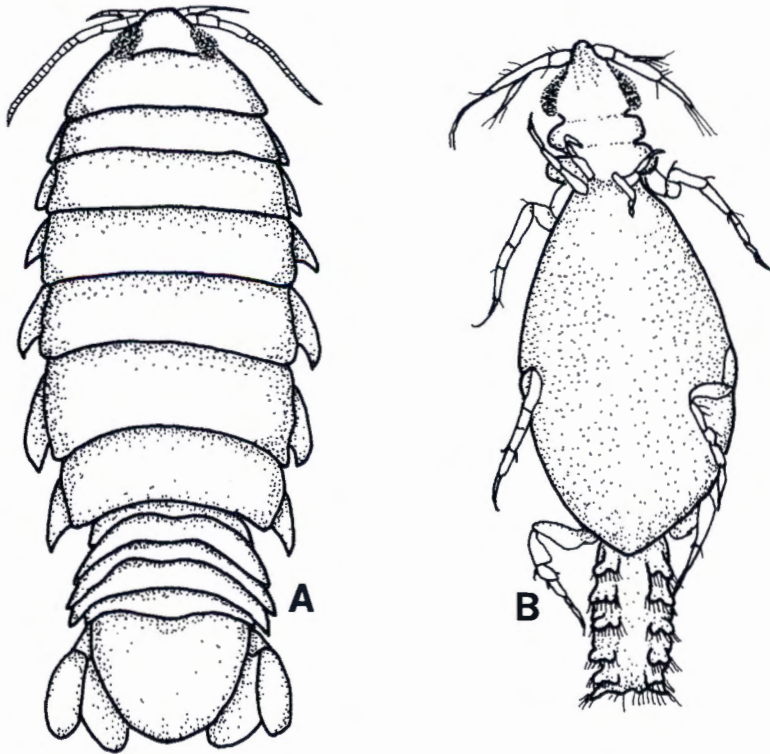
**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There is no suitable drug available for treating this infection. As the infective larvae are free-swimming, it would be difficult to prevent the infection in netpens.

### ECTOPARASITIC ISOPODS

Four species of isopods, *Ceratothoa gaudichaudii*, *Rocinela maculata*, *R. belliceps pugettensis*, and *Gnathia* sp. have been reported from seawater-reared salmonids (Novotny and Mahnken 1971; Awakura 1980 1983; Drinan and Rodger 1990; Inostroza et al. 1993). These species belong to the two suborders Flabellifera and Gnathiformes. Members of the suborder Flabellifera, which includes the species *C. gaudichaudii* and *R. maculata* might be best thought of as micropredators or scavengers. All members of this suborder have a typical isopod shape (Fig. 10-7) and follow a typical isopod life cycle. Members of the family Gnathiformes (e.g., *Gnathia* sp.) have a modified body shape with the larval, adult female and adult males differing considerably in their morphology (Fig. 10-6). Only the larval stages (referred to as "praniza") are parasitic, and feed on host blood. Adults are non-feeding and live in tubes in the sediments.

Isopods have been reported to cause serious disease in both non-salmonid and salmonid fishes. Isopods have been reported in low numbers from pen-reared Atlantic salmon in Ireland (Drinan and Rodger 1990), and pen reared coho salmon in Japan (Awakura 1980, 1983), Chile (Inostroza et al. 1993), and Washington State, USA (Novotny and Mahnken 1971). In Chile, *C. gaudichaudii* has been reported from a wide variety of native hosts. This low host specificity has allowed this parasite to successfully infect the coho and Atlantic salmon, causing disease at certain netpen sites (Inostroza et al. 1993). Novotny and Mahnken (1971) report that feeding experiments using natural plankton as a food source for pink salmon (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) resulted in their exposure to *Rocinela belliceps pugettensis*. Isopods were seen to quickly attach to the fish and cause death within a few minutes of settling.

**Figure. 10-5.** *Haemobaphes disphaerocephalus*. a. entire parasite. b. close-up of anterior holdfast.



**Figure 10-6.** General structure of Flabellifera and Gnathiform isopods. A. *Rocinela* sp., dorsal; B. *Gnathia* sp., ventral. (A, redrawn from Kabata 1988; B, redrawn from Kabata 1970).

#### CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.

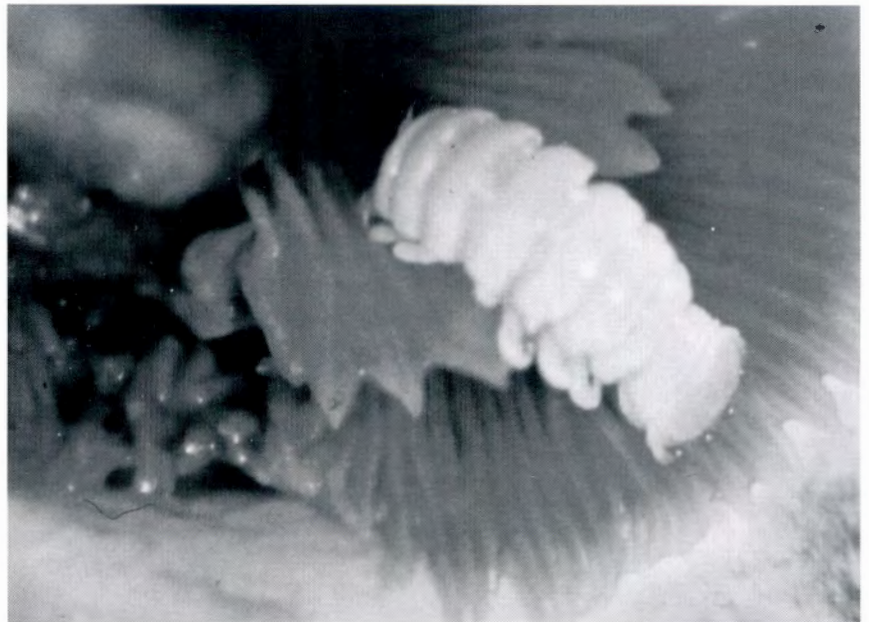
*Ceratothoa gaudichaudii* feeds on host blood, attaching to the inner mouth surfaces and less frequently to the gills (Sievers et al. 1995). Disease is caused by their attachment and feeding activities. Damage to the host includes severe erosion of gill lamellae and ulcers on the gill arch and inside the mouth.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Adult Flabellifera of the species (e.g., *Ceratothoa*) which have been reported from marine-reared salmonids are large (1 - 4 cm) and are easy to see with the naked eye. They have been reported from the mouth, the gills, and the body of salmonids (Fig. 10-7). The small size of praniza larvae (up to 4 mm) requires the use of a hand lens or dissecting microscope to detect their presence (Fig. 10-6).

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Sievers et al. (1995) evaluated the efficacy of eight commercial insecticides against *C. gaudichaudii* on Atlantic salmon. Sixty minute bath treatments with the organophosphates,

trichlorfon (Neguvon) and dichlorvos (Nuvan 1000) at concentrations of 300 and 3 ppm, respectively were found to be 100 percent effective against this parasite without toxicity to the fish.

Atlantic salmon infected with three to six praniza per fish were found to have no isopods after a lice treatment with an organophosphate (Drinan and Rodger 1990). Praniza infection of eels in tanks was successfully controlled by switching the tanks from salt to freshwater (Mugridge and Stallybrass 1983).



**Figure 10-7.** *Ceratothoa gaudichaudii* isopod on the gills of Atlantic salmon (Courtesy of R. Inostroza).

## BRANCHIURANS

The parasitic crustaceans of the order Branchiura (commonly called fish lice) are economically important parasites of salmonids and other fish species cultured in freshwater (Fig. 10-8). Although present in the brackish and marine waters, their occurrence on salmonids has only rarely been reported. Several specimens of an unidentified species of *Argulus* have been collected from marine reared chinook salmon in Washington State, U.S.A. (Novotny and Mahnken 1971). In British Columbia we occasionally find *Argulus pugettensis* on pen-reared coho salmon but have not seen any disease associated with their presence (unpublished observation). Stuart (1990) reported the presence of *Argulus* sp. on marine reared salmonids in Nova Scotia, Canada, but does not report any disease.

Branchiurans, although parasitic, can spend considerable time off their hosts and are strong swimmers easily capable of transferring between hosts. Female branchiurans mate while swimming and deposit their fertilized eggs on underwater

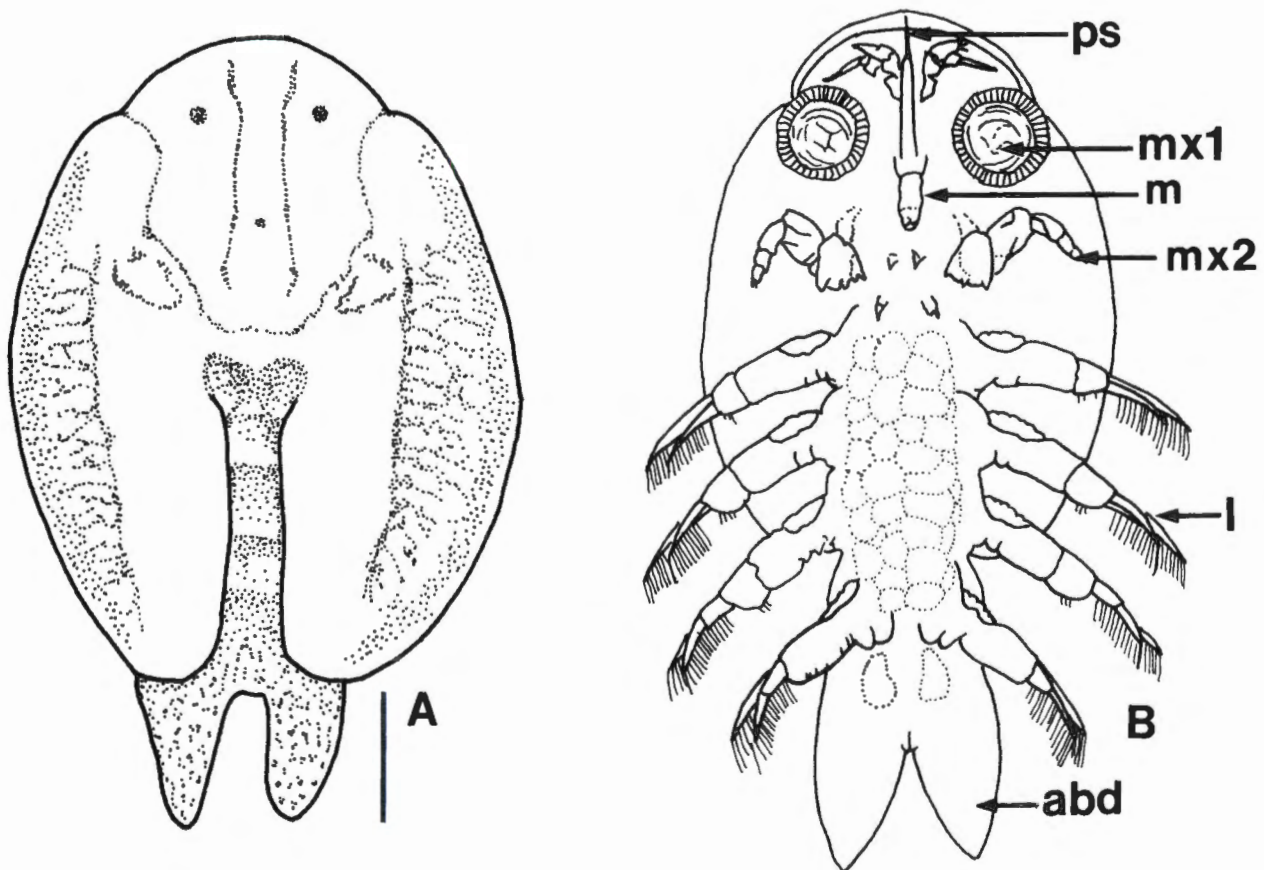
structures. They develop through several planktonic and/or benthic larval stages before infecting hosts. Branchiurans feed on host body fluids and tissues. Digestive secretions from the mouth and a specialized feeding apparatus called the “preoral stylet” which pierces the skin, prepare host tissues for maceration and ingestion.

Morphological features characteristic of branchiurans include: an oval shaped dorsal shield that covers most of the appendages, an abdomen with a Y-shaped posterior margin, the preoral stylet, and cup-like suckers (modified first maxillae) which are used to maintain position on the host (Fig. 10-8).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Adult branchiurans reported from marine-reared salmonids range in size up to 1.8 cm and are generally easy to see with the naked eye or a hand lens. They are generally found on the external body surfaces of salmonids.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There are no reported treatments for branchiurans on marine reared salmonids. Branchiuran infections of freshwater fishes have been treated with a wide variety of chemicals, including organophosphates (Schmahl et al. 1989).

**Figure 10-8.** General structure of *Argulus* spp. A. *Argulus pugettensis*, female, dorsal; B. *Argulus alosae*, ventral. (A, redrawn from Kabata 1988; B, redrawn from Cressey 1978).



# HARMFUL ALGAL BLOOMS

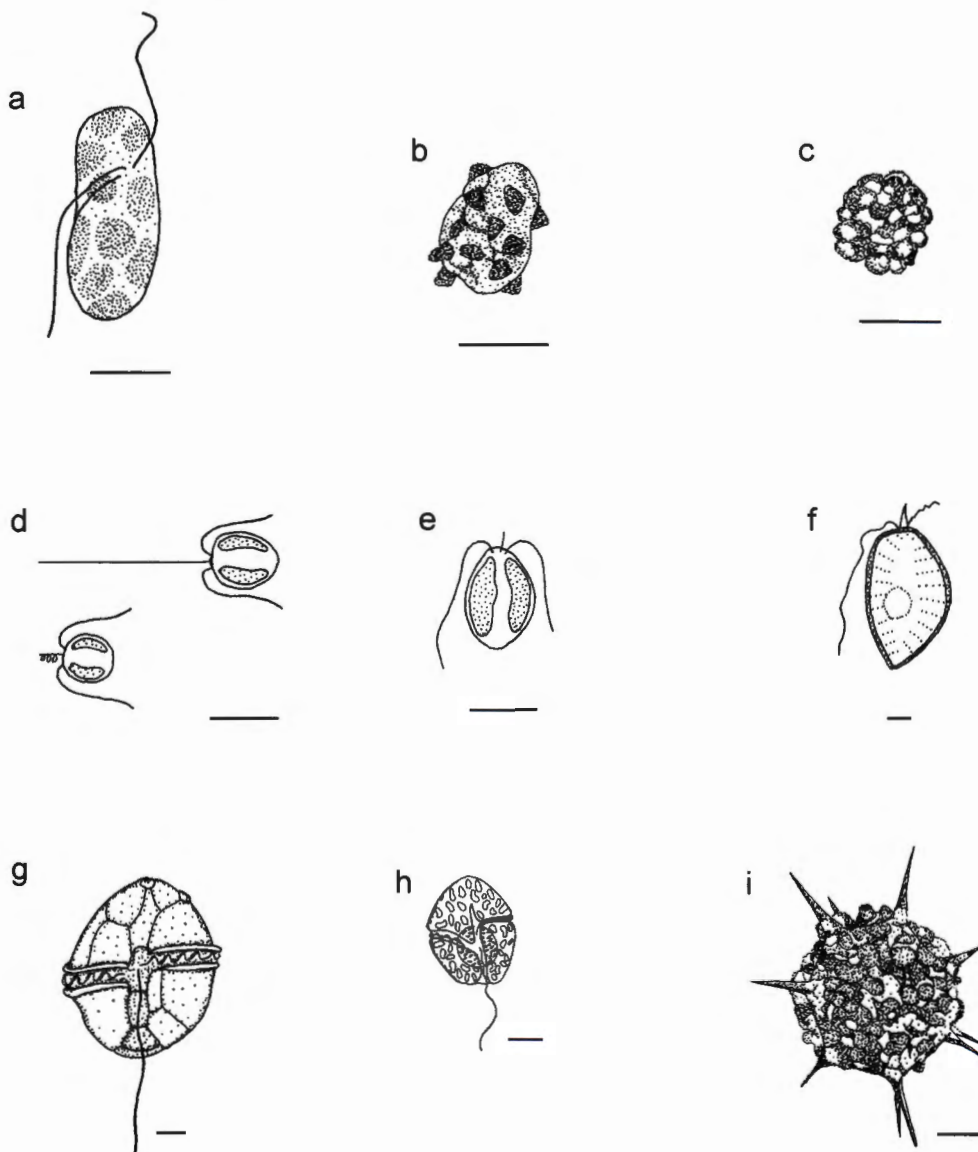
M.L. Kent and J.N.C. Whyte

## Introduction

The term harmful algal blooms (HABs) is now referred to 'red tides' or 'brown tides' commonly used for describing dense visible patches of pigmented microalgae, that have grown fast or 'bloomed' to color the surface water. Not all harmful phytoplankton species are highly colored, yet produce potent phycotoxins or can inflict physical damage to fish (Fig. 11-1, 11-2). The occurrence, geographic distribution, and duration of these natural phenomena have increased throughout the world and have become a major economic threat to the commercial fisheries and aquaculture industries (White 1988;

Hallegraeff 1993; Taylor and Horner 1994; Bruslé 1995). Classes of microalgae containing genera with known fish lethality include chloromonads (*Chattonella*, *Fibrocapsa*, *Heterosigma*); diatoms (*Chaetoceros*, *Skeletonema*, *Thalassiosira*, *Nitzschia*, *Amphora*; *Leptocylindrus*); dinoflagellates (*Alexandrium*, *Gambierdiscus*, *Gymnodinium*, *Gyrodinium*, *Pyrodinium*, *Amphidinium*, *Pfiesteria*); silicoflagellates (*Dictyocha*); cyanobacteria (*Microcystis*, *Anabaena*, *Aphanizomenon*) and prymnesiomonads (*Chrysochromulina*, *Prymnesium*). In general, blooms of these genera of algae can be lethal to fish from anoxia caused by the process of bloom decay, asphyxiation caused by excess mucus

formation due to mechanical damage or irritation of gill tissue, gas-bubble trauma due to extreme oxygen saturation from algal photosynthesis or from the production of ichthyotoxins producing gill toxicity, hepatotoxicity, neurotoxicity or hemolysis. Netpen reared fish have less opportunity to avoid HABs than wild fish, resulting in considerable economic hardship to the farmers. This chapter is focused on algal species that adversely affect netpen salmonids.



**11-1.** Harmful flagellate algae. Bar = 10  $\mu$ m.

*Heterosigma carterae*.

a. bean-shaped cell with one forward and one trailing flagellum. b. bumpy, potato shape. c. "raspberry form" in Lugol's preservative.

d. *Chrysochromulina polylepis*.

e. *Prymnesium parvum*.

f. *Prorocentrum micans*.

g. *Alexandrium tamarense*.

h. *Gyrodinium aureolum*.

i. *Dictyocha speculum*.

# Harmful Algal Blooms

## 11-2. Harmful diatoms.

Bar = 50  $\mu\text{m}$  unless otherwise indicated.

a. *Chaetoceros concavicornis*.

Insert showing details of barbs.

b. *Chaetoceros convolutus*.

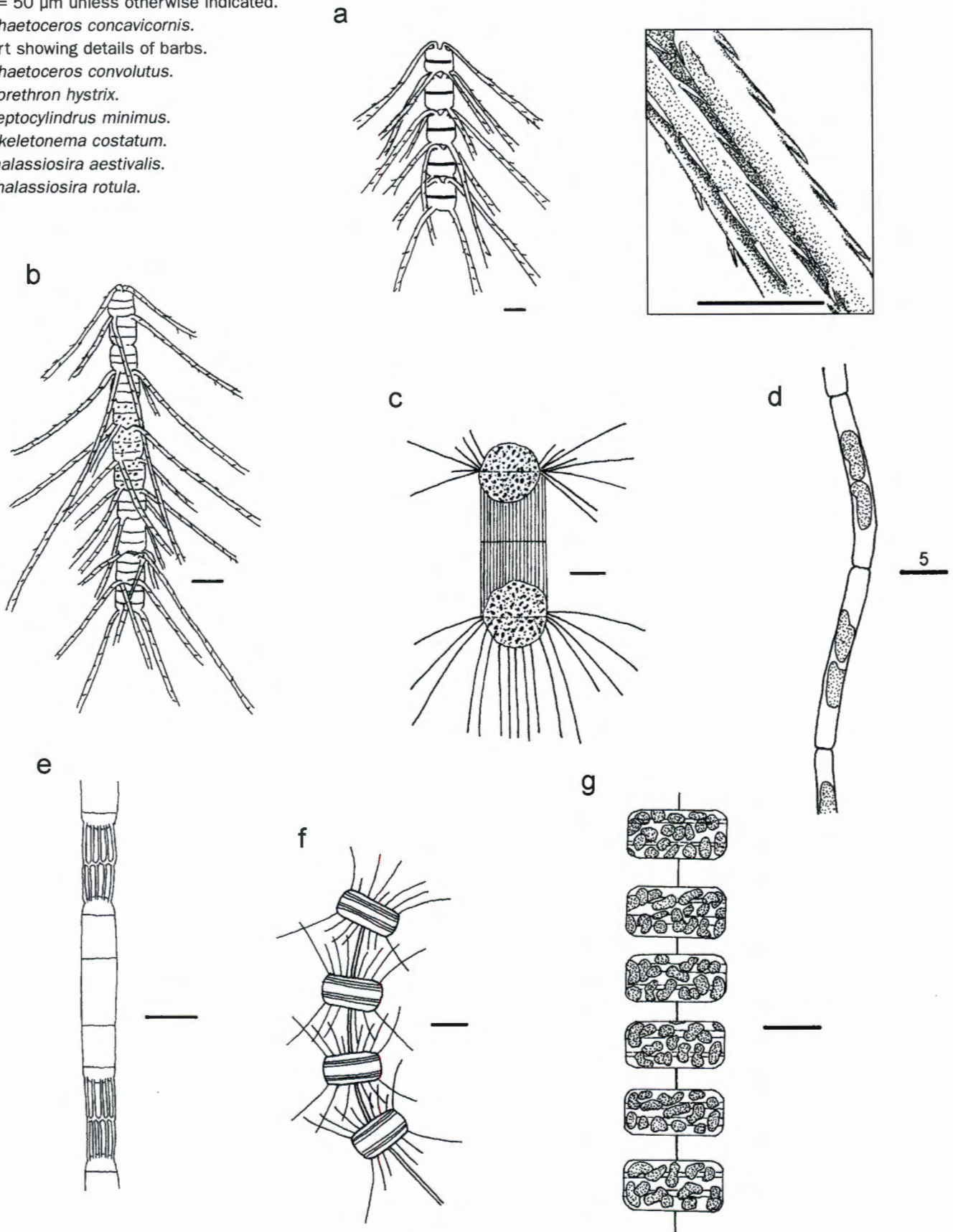
c. *Corethron hystrix*.

d. *Leptocylindrus minimus*.

e. *Skeletonema costatum*.

f. *Thalassiosira aestivalis*.

g. *Thalassiosira rotula*.



*Heterosigma carterae* (formerly *H. akashiwo*, often misidentified as *Olisthodiscus luteus*), *Chaetoceros concavicornis*, *C. convolutus*, *Corethron* spp., are the major causes of pen-reared salmonid mortalities in North America (Brett et al. 1978; Harrison et al. 1983; Gaines and Taylor 1986; Rensel et al. 1989; Speare et al. 1989; Horner et al. 1990; Black et al. 1991; Albright et al. 1992, 1993; Rensel 1992; Taylor, 1993; Taylor and Haigh 1993; Taylor et al. 1994). Mortalities of farmed salmon in New Zealand have been caused by *Prymnesium calathiferum* and *Heterosigma carterae* (Taylor et al. 1985; Chang et al. 1990, 1993; MacKenzie 1991). In Europe, major kills to farmed salmonids have been caused by *Gyrodinium aureolum* (considered identical or closely related to *Gymnodinium mikimotoi*), *Chrysochromulina polylepis*, *C. leadbeateri*, *Prymnesium parvum*, *Chaetoceros wighamii*, *Dictyocha speculum* (= *Distephanus speculum*) and the flagellate X (most likely *Heterosigma*) (Tangen 1977, 1979; Ayres et al. 1982; Dahl et al. 1982; Gowen et al. 1982; Jones et al. 1982; Parker et al. 1982; Johnson 1988; Bruno et al. 1989; Erard-le-Denn and Ryckaert 1989; Aune et al. 1992; Dahl and Tangen 1993; Graneli et al. 1993; Heidal and Mohus 1995). Farmed salmonids have been killed by *Alexandrium tamarensis* (formerly *Protogonyaulax tamarensis* = *Gonyaulax tamarensis* = *G. excavatum*) in the Faeroe Islands (Mortensen 1985; Simonsen et al. 1995). *Chaetoceros convolutus* and *Leptocylindrius minimus* have caused mortalities in farms in Chile (Clément and Lembeye 1993).

### Mitigation Techniques

As HABs are natural phenomena, the process of ameliorating the adverse effects on farmed fish must rely on improved husbandry, technologies, and procedures that include monitoring of algae at various depths on farmed sites. Site selection for fish farms is fundamentally important because HAB events are annual occurrences in certain coastal areas. Bloom avoidance can be managed by moving pens away from an encroaching bloom, however this can be equally stressful and lethal to caged fish. Stationary pens can be made deeper to allow the fish to swim below the surface bloom, or can be constructed in a manner that allows for lowering of the pens during a surface bloom. Non-permeable perimeter skirting of pens with polyester aprons allows for upwelling of deeper colder water either by simple deep aeration within the pen or the pumping of deep water by air-lift or hydraulic pumps. Using these techniques prevents advection of surface blooming algae into the pens, reduces any anoxic conditions caused by the algae, inhibits growth of many alga by lowering water

temperature, and de-stratifies the water column by vertical convection to inhibit growth of flagellates, such as *H. carterae*, that require calm stratified water for growth. Care should be exercised, however, in using these techniques if the blooms are of harmful diatoms because maximum cell densities of these species can be at depths of about 20 m, hence the need for accurate monitoring of the water column. In addition, care must be exercised with use of air-lift pumps that can cause gas supersaturation with resultant gas bubble trauma to the fish. Newly developed self-contained bag-culture systems for fish with pumped water from controllable depths into PVC-coated woven polyester bags, promises to negate many of the problems associated with HABs. Intake water level into these bags can be governed by the depth of the bloom adjacent to the pen.

If contact with the bloom cannot be avoided, then losses can be reduced by lowering the oxygen demand and general stress on the fish. This can be achieved by cessation of feeding just prior to and during the bloom, and minimizing personnel traffic on the walkways, both strategies that discourage the fish from moving up into a surface bloom. It is particularly important to lower oxygen demands on exposed fish because most harmful algae damage the gills. Yang and Albright (1994a) prevented suffocation of coho salmon on exposure to *Chaetoceros concavicornis* cells by suppressing gill mucus production with the mucolytic agent L-cysteine ethyl ester in the diet. Mucolytic agents should be used with caution because mucus is an important barrier to pathogens. This therapy has yet to be demonstrated in field trials. Yang et al. (1995) prevented death of rainbow trout when exposed to *H. carterae* by adding the enzymes superoxide dismutase and catalase to the toxic culture of the alga. Both *Chattonella antiqua* and *H. carterae* produce superoxide, hydroxyl radicals, and hydrogen peroxide, which are destroyed by these enzymes (Tanaka et al. 1992, 1994). Oxygen radicals can strip the mucus from fish gills leading to osmoregulatory failure and fish death.

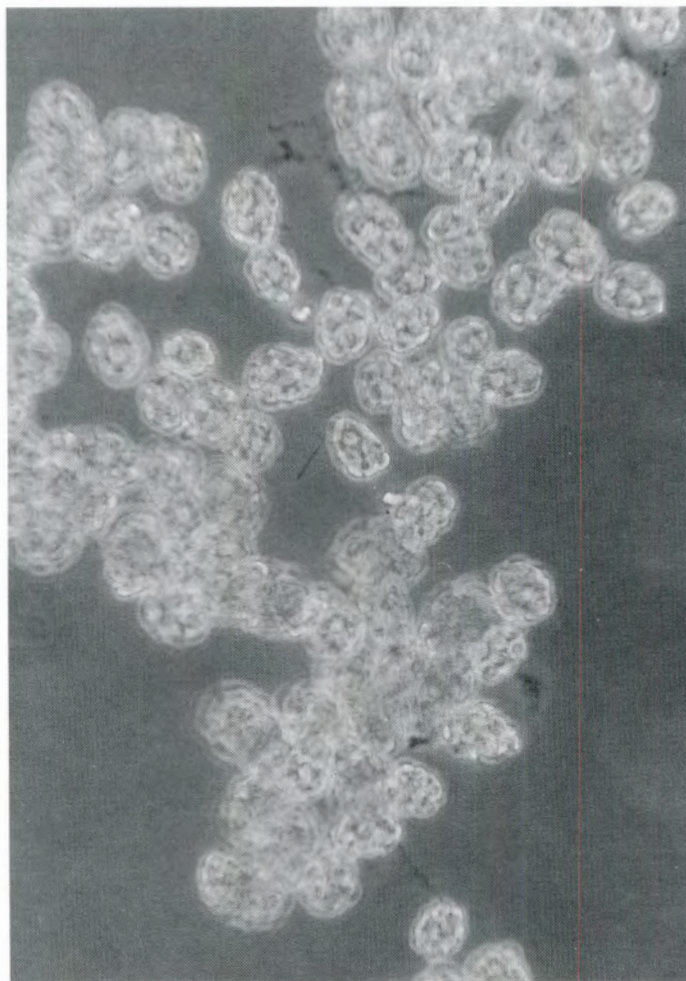
### *Heterosigma carterae*

Several blooms of *Heterosigma carterae* (formerly *H. akashiwo* = *Olisthodiscus luteus*) have been associated with high mortality in pen-reared salmon in the Pacific Northwest since 1986 (Taylor and Haigh 1993). Fish kills associated with blooms of *H. carterae* have also been reported in Europe (Johnson 1988), Japan (Honjo 1994), and New Zealand (MacKenzie 1991). Bioassays with juvenile chinook salmon in blooms of *H. carterae* indicated that morbidity in fish was due to a labile ichthyotoxic agent (Black et al. 1991). Blooms

## Harmful Algal Blooms

generally occur during the summer, and massive mortalities have been observed in all species of pen-reared salmon throughout British Columbia (Egan 1990; Black 1991) and Washington (Rensel et al. 1989). High mortalities were observed in pen-reared chinook during two separate blooms when the concentration of *H. carterae* in water was 200,000 and 800,000 cells/ml (Black et al. 1991). Hershberger et al. (1997) reported that the alga was attracted to low salinity waters, which may account for blooms occurring during warm weather following heavy rains. Disturbance of the water column by wave action and wind disperses most *Heterosigma* blooms.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Rapid, high mortality (often reaching near 100%) occurs shortly after water containing a toxic bloom enters the netpens. Not all blooms of this alga are toxic as formation of toxicity depends on the physiological stage of the alga, which is reflective of environmental conditions. In general, toxicity is triggered in the alga by nutrient deprivation when in the stationary phase of growth (Black, E. British Columbia Ministry of Fisheries, pers.



comm.). Affected fish accumulate at the surface in the net corners, are lethargic, often appear anesthetized and exhibit labored respiration. Fish do not exhibit any distinctive external or internal pathological changes. However, some affected fish may exhibit excessive mucus on the gills.

**MICROSCOPY.** In wet mount preparations, the live alga can appear in a number of morphological shapes from bean-shaped (nutrient rich) to flattened warty bean-shaped (lacking nutrient) to bumpy potato-shaped (usually nutrient deplete stationary phase) motile cells (Fig. 11-1, a, b, c). The following is a description of *H. carterae* by Gaines and Taylor (1986):

*"The organism occurs as microscopic, bean shaped single cells, usually 12-22  $\mu$ m long, propelled by two very fine, whip-like flagella which arise from the side of the cell near the front, one pointing forwards and one trailing behind. The cells turn slowly as they swim forward. The shape varies from being smoothly oval (flattened in the same plane as the flagella) to being bumpy and potato-like in outline. Each cell contains usually 20 or fewer (but may have up to 50) greenish-brown bodies termed chloroplasts.... Small shining dots on its surface are mucus-producing bodies, termed mucocysts".*

As the alga has no cell wall, preservation in Lugol's solution (see Appendix III) causes the cell membrane to collapse to the appearance of a cluster of grapes (Fig. 11-1, c).

The histopathological changes in fish dying from exposure to *H. carterae* have not been adequately described. We have observed acute, diffuse necrosis of the gill epithelium in dying fish collected from the field during a *Heterosigma* bloom. These fish were suffering the affects of the bloom for several hours before collection, and this change was not observed in fish that were killed by more acute exposure (Black et al. 1991).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Because moribund fish do not exhibit distinctive pathological changes, the diagnosis of disease caused by *H. carterae* is based on the observation of a high concentration of the alga in the water associated with rapid mortality in the exposed fish. Methods for collecting and enumerating planktonic algae are described by Gaines and Taylor (1986).

**11-3.** *Heterosigma carterae* preserved in Lugol's.

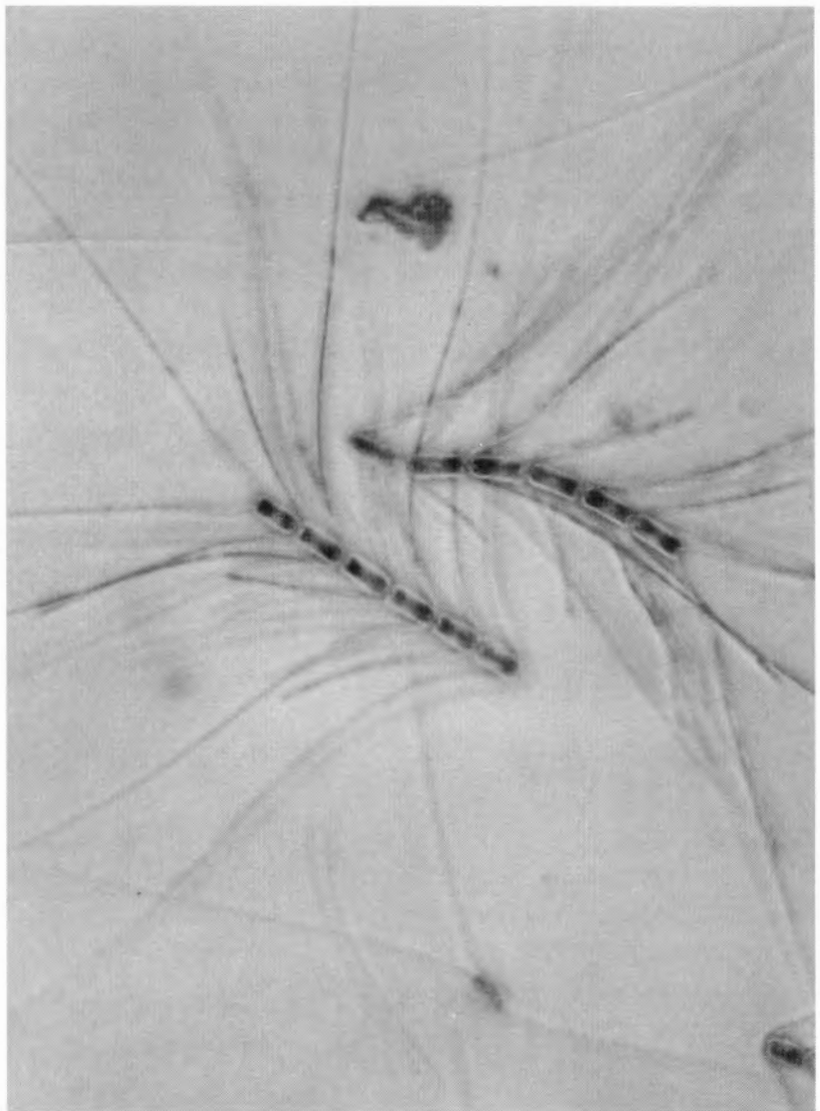
***Chaetoceros* and *Corethron* spp.**

*Chaetoceros concavicornis* (Fig. 11-2a), *C. convolutus* (Fig. 11-2b) and a *Corethron* sp. (Fig. 11-2c) have been associated with mortality at several locations where salmon are reared in seawater netpens. Mortalities due to *Chaetoceros* spp. have been reported in pen-reared salmon at many sites in British Columbia and Washington State (Gaines and Taylor 1986; Rensel et al. 1989; Horner et al. 1990; Albright et al. 1992), in Alaska (Martin et al. 1981; Farrington 1988), and Chile (Clément and Lembeye 1993). Mortality caused by *Chaetoceros* is usually very rapid, and high mortality can occur within a few days during heavy blooms. All salmon species are susceptible. Atlantic salmon and sockeye salmon appear to be the most susceptible species, and larger fish are more susceptible than smaller fish (Brett et al. 1978; Marsh 1988). Speare et al. (1989) reported high mortality in pen-reared coho associated with a bloom of *Corethron* sp., a diatom similar to *Chaetoceros*. Both genera of diatoms cause disease in fish through physical damage to the gill (Bell 1961; Bell et al. 1974; Farrington 1988; Speare et al. 1989). The diatom initially causes massive increase in gill mucus production, despite no signs of penetration by the spines of the diatom, followed by degenerative changes of the gill epithelium. Hypoxia due to respiratory dysfunction is the ultimate cause of death (Rensel 1993; Yang and Albright 1992).

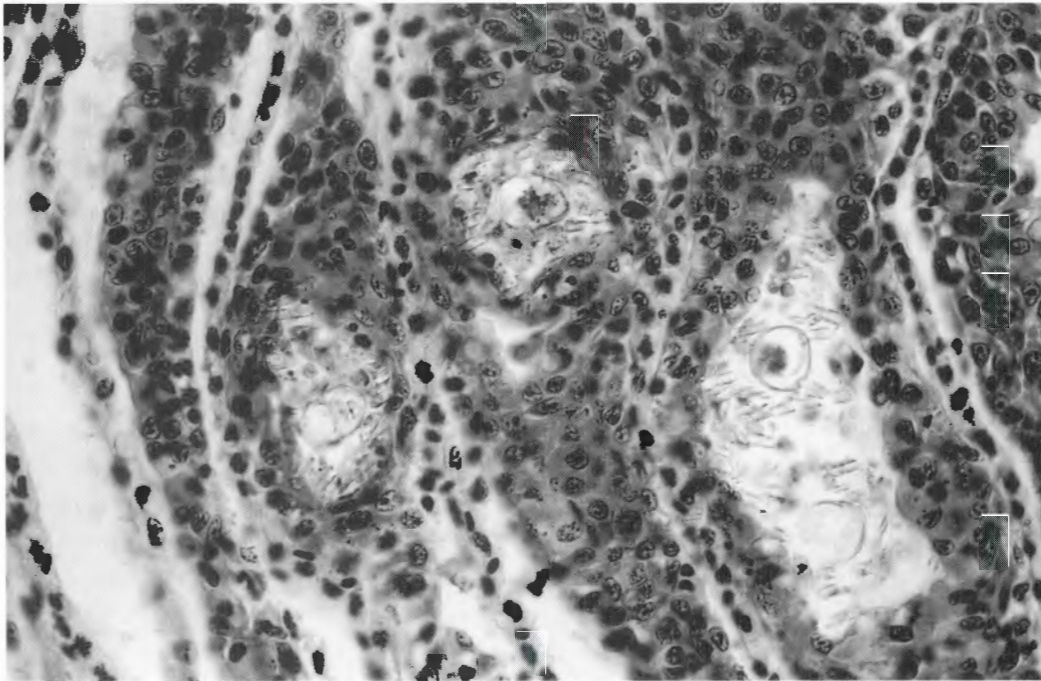
In netpens, mortality in sockeye salmon associated with *Chaetoceros* blooms occurred at about 1 cell/ml (Kennedy et al. 1976). High mortality occurred in sockeye, coho and chinook during a bloom of *Chaetoceros* at 8-32 cells/ml (Brett et al. 1978), and 8 cells/ml killed Atlantic salmon in netpens (Marsh 1988). In laboratory experiments 3,000-18,000 cells/ml were required to achieve an LC<sub>50</sub> in chinook and chum salmon (Farrington 1988). The high concentration of *Chaetoceros* that is required to kill salmon in the laboratory has been attributed to a loss of barbs on the setae when the alga is grown in culture. Sublethal cell concentrations, 0.4 to 5.0 cells/ml, may increase fish's susceptibility to infectious diseases, such as vibriosis, due to suppression of the immune system (Albright et al. 1993; Yang and Albright 1994b).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Typical of gill diseases, affected fish accumulate near the surface, are lethargic, and exhibit labored respiration and flaring of the opercula. Fish may also exhibit a coughing response (Rensel 1992). Examination of gills reveals excessive mucus and may reveal white patches of hyperplastic tissue at the base of the primary filaments, particularly at the bend in the gill arch (Fig. 12-3b). The internal organs of affected fish appear normal.

**MICROSCOPY.** Wet mount preparations of the gills may reveal masses of diatoms entrapped in excessive mucus. Histological examination of the gills reveals severe hyperplasia and necrosis of the epithelium (Fig 11-5). Hyperplasia of the epithelium results in fusion of the secondary lamellae, and in severe cases, the primary lamellae may be fused. Affected gills



**11-4.** *Chaetoceros convolutus*. Wet mount.



**11-5.** *Chaetoceros* sp. entrapped in coho salmon gills associated with epithelial hyperplasia

often exhibit prominent inflammation. Speare et al. (1989) observed a marked neutrophil response in the extravascular spaces and in the lymphatic-like central venous sinusoidal spaces of the gills. Diatoms can be found on the surface of the gill epithelium or embedded in the hyperplastic tissue, particularly at the base of the primary lamellae (Fig. 11-5). The embedded portions of the diatoms may be entrapped by multinucleate giant cells. Mild fibroplasia may be observed associated with diatom remnants in recovering fish (Speare et al. 1989).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis of *Chaetoceros* or *Corethron* disease can be based on the occurrence of large numbers of diatom chains with barbed spines or setae in the water associated with respiratory distress in the salmon. Histological examination, which reveals the presence of entrapped diatoms and associated gill damage, is also useful.

### Miscellaneous algae

#### *Leptocylindrus* sp.

Blooms of the diatom *L. minimus* (Fig. 11-2d) have occurred at several locations in Chile since 1989 (Clément and Lembeye 1993; Clément 1994). Although not confirmed, it appears that the diatom causes mechanical damage to the gills. Atlantic salmon accumulate in the corners or bottom of the pen, while exposed rainbow trout accumulate at the surface, often with their dorsal fin exposed (Clément 1994). The gills of affected

fish exhibit pallor, increased mucus secretion, and epithelial hyperplasia. Death occurs when concentrations of the diatom exceed 10,000 cells/ml.

#### *Chrysochromulina* spp.

A massive and widespread bloom of the prymnesiomonad flagellate *C. polylepis* (Fig. 11-1d) occurred in May and June 1988 at the Kattegat and Skagerrak coasts of Norway, Denmark, and Sweden, and affected more than 120 fish farms (Lindahl and Dahl 1990; Graneli et al. 1993). In addition to killing numerous pen-reared salmon in Norway, this alga also killed many naturally occurring marine organisms (Saunders 1988; Nielsen et al. 1990). In 1991, a bloom of a similar alga, *C. leadbeateri*, killed about 500 tonnes of pen-reared Atlantic salmon in northern Norway (Johannessen et al. 1991; Aune et al. 1992; Heidal and Mohus 1995). The mechanism by which *Chrysochromulina* spp. kills fish has not been completely elucidated, but Edvardsen et al. (1990) demonstrated that the alga *C. polylepis* produces a hemolysin. The toxin also damages the gills, causing increased gill permeability. Salmon quickly died following exposure to 4 to 8 million cells/L in full strength sea water, while fish were unharmed when exposed to the same concentration at 16 ppt, which is much closer to isotonic conditions (Underdal et al. 1989). Toxic extracts collected from the *C. leadbeateri* bloom were similar to those of *C. polylepis* (Aune et al. 1992). Blooms of *C. polylepis* are often harmless, and thus Nielsen et al. (1990) suggested that the alga is only toxic under certain environmental conditions.

### *Skeletonema* sp. and *Thalassiosira* sp.

Mortality and gill lesions in Atlantic salmon reared in a seawater netpen in British Columbia were associated with a dense bloom of diatoms containing predominantly *Skeletonema costatum* (Fig. 11-2e), *Thalassiosira aestivalis* (Fig. 11-2f) and *T. rotula* (Fig. 11-2g) (Kent et al. 1995b). Gills of moribund and dead fish exhibited excessive mucus production. Histological examination revealed necrosis of the gill epithelium and edema at the base of secondary lamellae. The edematous spaces contained an inflammatory infiltrate. The mechanism of gill damage was not determined, but was likely due to physical irritation by the algae. None of these diatoms had been previously reported to cause disease in fish, which illustrates that many diatoms have the potential to be harmful if they occur in high enough density..

### *Gyrodinium* species

The dinoflagellate *G. aureolum* (Fig. 11-1h) is the most harmful alga to aquacultured fish in Europe. Blooms in the late summer or autumn have caused deaths of between 2000-3000 tons of pen-reared Atlantic salmon and rainbow trout in Norway, Scotland and Ireland (Tangen 1977, 1983; Dahl and Tangen 1993). Mortalities usually occur when concentrations exceed 10,000 cells/ml, whereas lower concentrations (e.g., 1,000 cells/ml) are associated with inappetence. The alga produces the hemolytic and ichthyotoxic agents, 1-acyl -3-digalactosylglycerol and octadecapentaenoic acid, also found in *C. polyilepis* (Yasumoto et al. 1989), which causes necrosis of the gill epithelium (Roberts et al. 1983). Furthermore, blooms have been associated with liver necrosis (Dahl and Tangen 1993). Blooms of unidentified *Gyrodinium* species have also caused inappetence in pen-reared salmon, but not abnormal mortalities in Chile (Clément and Lembeye 1993).

### *Prymnesium parvum*

This euhaline prymnesiophyte flagellate *P. parvum* (Fig. 11-1e) has caused losses of 750 tonnes of pen-reared salmon in the Ryfylke fjord system of Norway (Johnsen and Lein 1989). The alga produces a toxin, which is cytolytic, hemolytic and neuroactive.

### *Prorocentrum micans*

A bloom of the dinoflagellate *P. micans* (Fig. 11-1f) was associated with mortality of pen-reared coho salmon in Chile in April of 1983 (Lembeye and Campodonica 1984). Affected fish were excited and the organism apparently caused obstruction of the gills.

### *Alexandrium tamarense*

Exposure of pen-reared salmon and trout in the Faeroe Islands to an intense bloom of the dinoflagellate *A. tamarense* (Fig. 11-1g) caused 77% mortality. Examination of gills revealed necrosis and sloughing of the epithelium of secondary lamellae, and hemorrhaging. No other organ revealed any histopathological features (Mortensen 1985). The high hemolytic activity in cell extracts of *Alexandrium* (Underdal et al. 1989) is not caused by the associated PSP toxins (Simonsen et al. 1995).

### *Dictyocha* spp.

Mortalities of netpen rainbow trout in France and Atlantic salmon in the Shetland Isles were caused by the silicoflagellate *D. speculum* (Fig. 11-1i). Gills of the affected fish showed extensive necrosis and sloughing with separation of the secondary gill lamellae and moderate hyperplasia at the base of the filaments (Bruno et al. 1989; Erard-Le-Denn and Ryckaert 1989). Mortalities of pen-reared salmon on the west coast of Vancouver Island also have been attributed to this alga.

---

# IDIOPATHIC AND NON-INFECTIOUS DISEASES

M.L. Kent and T.T.Poppe

Several diseases of unknown or non-infectious causes have afflicted pen-reared salmonid fishes. These include cataracts (caused by various etiologies); netpen liver disease, caused by microcystin from an unknown natural source; heart diseases such as cardiomyopathy syndrome and coronary arteriosclerosis; and "water belly", which may be caused by a nutritional or osmoregulatory problem. Furthermore, chronic peritonitis has been associated with oil-adjuvant vaccines administered by intraperitoneal injection.

## Heart Diseases

Various idiopathic lesions of the heart and pericardial cavity are occasionally observed both in wild and farmed fish. Coronary arteriosclerosis has been known for a long time in feral Pacific salmonid stocks, but is also described from Atlantic salmon. Different types of malformations seem to be an increasing problem in farmed Atlantic salmon.

### Cardiomyopathy syndrome (CMS)

This chronic, progressive disease has been observed since 1984 in farmed Atlantic salmon in Norway and a few cases have been diagnosed in the Faeroe Islands (Bruno and Poppe 1996). The cause(s) have not been determined, but recently Grotmol et al. (1997) reported the presence of a nodavirus-like agent in affected heart tissue. Although transmission experiments have been negative, viral particles have been observed by electron microscopy and the lesions and epidemiology may be consistent with a viral etiology. The most serious losses typically occur in the autumn 12-18 months after transfer to sea water.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Fish in the terminal stages of the disease are often in good body condition, showing no or few clinical signs before they die. They may however, go off the feed and swim sluggishly around for a few days before they die. Such fish frequently develop skin hemorrhage and edema, exophthalmia and ascites. At necropsy, fibrous peritonitis, ascitic fluid and blood or a blood clot surrounding the heart are typical findings (Fig. 12-1c). The atrium and sinus venosus are usually dilated and may contain blood clots. Sometimes, clotted blood may also be found on the dorsocranial surface of the liver.

**MICROSCOPY.** Characteristic lesions are found in the spongious myocardium of the atrium and ventricle (Amin and Trasti 1988; Ferguson et al. 1990). These lesions are comprised of muscular degeneration, proliferation of the endocardial cells, and infiltration with macrophages and lymphocytes subendocardially and in the degenerated muscle. Blood clots will frequently be found in atrium. Focal necrosis in the hepatic parenchyma may also occur.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis is based on the characteristic gross and pathognomonic histopathological lesions. Diseased fish may also be diagnosed while still alive by means of ultrasound imaging (Sande and Poppe 1995). The disease has little resemblance to other diseases, but hemopericardium may be observed in fish dying from other causes.

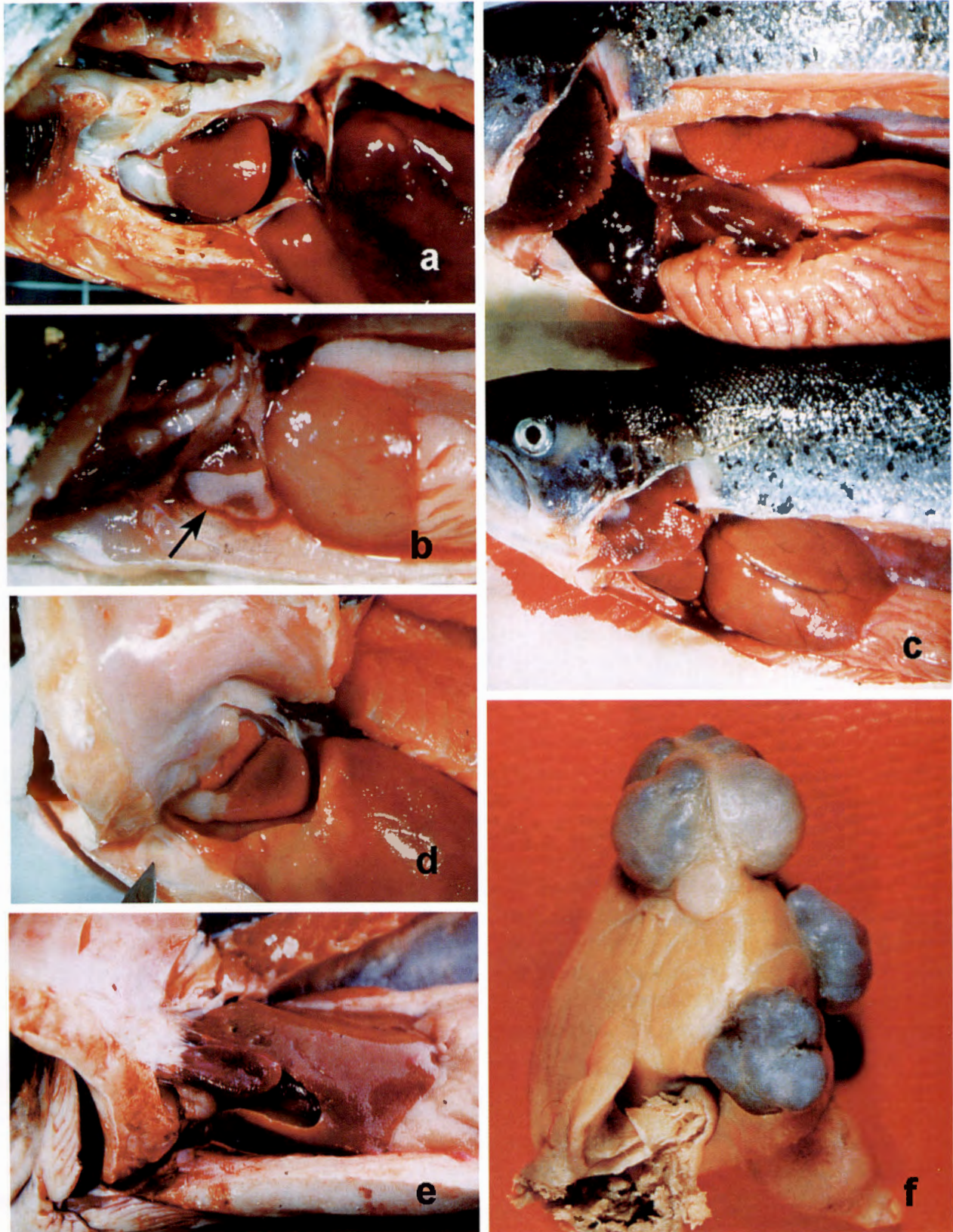
**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** There are great differences in susceptibility to CMS between different families, and selective breeding may be a good way to control the disease in the future. Also, many farmers have experienced that fallowing of sites for a year or two before new fish are introduced has reduced the problem considerably.

### Coronary Arteriosclerosis

This condition is so common in many salmonids that it has been discussed whether this is a "normal abnormality" or genuine pathological changes.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY .** There are no specific clinical signs of the disease. Fish with coronary arteriosclerosis may die suddenly for no other apparent reason.

**MICROSCOPY.** The condition is characterized by hyperplasia of the endothelium and smooth muscle in the walls of the coronary vessels, resulting in narrowing of the lumen and thereby reduction of the blood-flow. The significance of moderate lesions is unknown and there is usually no clinical signs or grossly visible lesions. Occasionally, a complete occlusion of the vessel may occur, thereby leading to degeneration with subsequent calcification of those parts of the outer compact myocardium supplied with arterial blood from the coronary vessels.



**Figure 12-1.** Heart diseases in Atlantic salmon. a. Situs inversus (up-side-down heart). b. Hypoplasia of the ventricular compact myocardium. Note fatty tissue (arrow) around heart. c. Upper fish with cardiomyopathy syndrome. Note blood clot

surrounding the heart. Lower fish is normal. d, e. Hypoplastic septum transversum. Note indentation in the liver caused by the posteriorly enlarged, sac-shaped ventricle. f. hemangiomas on the ventricle wall.

## **Idiopathic and Non-Infectious Diseases**

---

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis is based upon histological examination of the coronary vessels.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** The lesions are related to the absolute size of the heart and accelerate in parallel to factors responsible for rapid growth and can be modified by sex hormones and feed composition (Davie and Thorarensen 1996; Farrell et al. 1986; House et al. 1979; Saunders et al. 1992; Schmidt and House 1979). Excessively rapid growth has been associated with coronary arteriosclerosis, and thus reducing the feeding rate may ameliorate the problem.

### **Malformations of the heart**

Several types of malformations of the heart have been observed in farmed Atlantic salmon in recent years. The most common types seem to be aplasia of the septum transversum and situs inversus of the ventricle. Hypoplasia of the outer compact layer of the ventricular myocardium has also been observed recently. The end result of the three malformations described is reduced cardiac output and more strain on the heart. This will lead to cardiac failure with secondary lesions as a result of poor blood supply, altered pressure and reduced circulation.

#### **Hypoplastic septum transversum**

In fish with this malformation, the natural restraints for myocardial growth are absent, and the ventricle may grow to a considerable size and become dislodged into a depression in the liver surface (Fig. 12-1d,e). The shape of the ventricle is often like a tube or sac in contrast to the normal triangular or pyramidal shape. The normal function of the heart is depending upon the subambient pressure inside the pericardium created when the ventricle contracts and the characteristic shape which is important for optimum force during contraction (Farrell and Jones 1992). As the heart itself is dislocated, vessels may become compressed and the end result will be reduced cardiac output.

#### **Situs inversus**

In some cases the heart seems to be turned more or less upside down within a normal pericardial cavity (Fig. 12-1a), thereby taking an irregular shape and compression of the vessels may result. This condition is being seen more frequently in Atlantic salmon in Norway, both in the freshwater and in the seawater phase. At necropsy, the ventral part of the heart (with the apex) is rotated counterclockwise on its transverse axis, resulting in the atrium being located under the

ventricle. The shape of the ventricle is altered and the bulbus arteriosus is stretched. Fish with this malformation are usually smaller than normal and seem to be less tolerant to stressors, such as handling and grading. In some populations, this condition has been observed in 5 to 10% of the fish.

#### **Hypoplasia (or aplasia) of the ventricular compact myocardium**

Fish with this lesion are typically smaller than their siblings and have ascites and exophthalmia. At necropsy, the heart is partly surrounded by fatty tissue and the ventricle is considerably smaller than normal. Histology reveals a total aplasia or severe hypoplasia of the outer, compact myocardium of the ventricle. Muscle cells and nuclei in the inner, spongy myocardium are hyperplastic. The epicardium is typically heavily infiltrated by fatty tissue.

#### **Cardiac Hemangiomas**

Hemangiomas (blood vessel neoplasms) originating from the wall of the ventricle has recently been observed at harvest in farmed Atlantic salmon in Iceland and Norway. To date, less than 1% of fish have been affected. The condition is characterized by cyst-like extrusions from the muscular ventricle wall (Fig. 12-1f). The cysts may be multiple and are up to 10 mm in diameter. The wall may also be thickened. Histological examination reveals that the lumen of the cysts communicate with the ventricular lumen.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis of heart malformations are based upon gross and histological findings.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** No treatments are known for these conditions. The causes are not known, but hereditary factors and high temperature during incubation seem to be the most likely explanations.

### **Skeletal Deformations**

Numerous different malformations, in particular skeletal malformations, have been described in several freshwater and marine fish species, both wild and farmed, over the years. Such lesions are usually easily observed even for the untrained eye and the descriptions of such lesions date back several hundred years. In farmed salmonids, the skeletal malformations most frequently seen are lordosis (vertical deviation) and scoliosis (horizontal deviation). Fusion of vertebrae may also result in local shortening of the spine leading to humpback formation or shortening of the tail. Malformations of cranial bones

(e.g., jaws, operculum) are also frequently seen. Such abnormalities are quite common in fry and usually leads to impaired survival in wild fish. Farmed fish, on the other hand, may survive longer in their sheltered environment and may therefore develop lesions seldom seen in wild fish.

Although several factors are known to cause skeletal malformations in farmed fish, the vast majority of such lesions have an obscure and probably multifactorial etiology. Inadequate levels of different nutrients like phosphorous, amino acids and vitamins (e.g., vitamins C and D) are known to cause such lesions. Infections due to *Myxobolus cerebralis* and *Flavobacterium psychrophilium* that originate during the freshwater phase of development should also be considered if the presmolts were reared on surface water. Hypoxia, high temperatures and exposure to acidic water, heavy metals and organophosphates during incubation and early life-stages may also cause skeletal deviations (Ferguson 1989). Inbreeding is also believed to be a possible cause of this condition (Aulestad and Kittelsen 1971; Poynton 1987). Healing of fractures after electric shocks or after medication with chelating drugs such as oxytetracycline should also be considered (From et al. 1985).

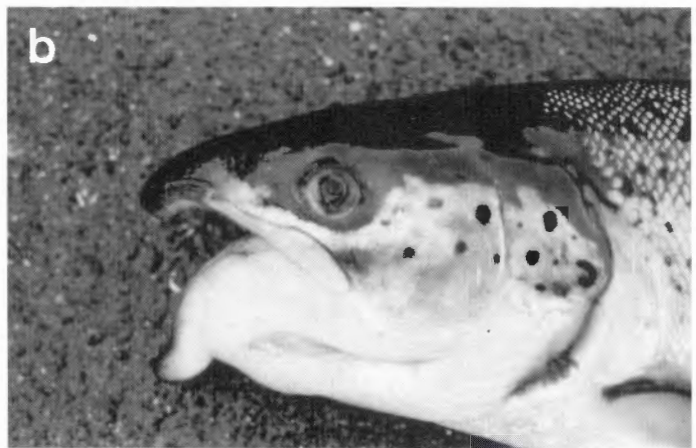
### CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.

Malformations may be confined to one particular part of the skeleton, or include most of the length of the vertebral column. Commonly occurring head deformities include shortening of the opercula, shortening of jaws like in “pug-heads” or ventral deviation of the mandible (Fig. 12-2). In the vertebral column, the malformations may be in the form of shortening of the anterior (“humpback”) or posterior (“short-tail”) part of the vertebral column, or deviations and curvatures like in “saddlebacks”. Most malformations are easily seen, but sometimes they are not discovered until the fish are filleted. Depending on the extent and location of the malformation, affected fish may show variable clinical signs that may include aberrant swimming behavior or impaired food intake.

**MICROSCOPY.** Depending on the etiology, microscopy of affected parts of the vertebral column may reveal reduced length and increased diameter of individual vertebrae. This may frequently be associated with mineralization and fusion. If

*Myxobolus cerebralis* is suspected, particular attention should be paid to the possible destruction of cartilage and bone in affected areas.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis is based on characteristic gross lesions and microscopic examination of affected areas. It is important to exclude the possibility of myxosporean infection (*Myxobolus cerebralis*) or healed fracture.



**Figure 12-2.** Skeletal deformities. Malformation of the head (a) and jaws (b). c. Fusion of vertebrae causing humpback appearance.

## **Idiopathic and Non-Infectious Diseases**

---

**TREATMENT AND CONTROL.** No treatment is known for the malformations described above. As long as the exact etiology of most of the spinal deformations seen in modern aquaculture is unknown, it is difficult to give any advice for the control of the malformations other than optimizing the environmental factors including feeds.

### **Cataracts**

Cataracts resulting in opaqueness of the lens of the eyes are frequently observed in pen-reared salmon. They can be caused by infectious agents (e.g., larval helminths), by nutritional imbalances, sudden drop in temperature, by intoxication, or by genetic factors (Hargis 1991). Furthermore, they may be induced in smolts poorly adapted to sea water.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Opacity of the lens is characteristic of cataracts (Fig 9-3).

**MICROSCOPY.** Cataracts are comprised of various histological lesions including fiber lysis and regeneration, and other dysplastic changes. See Wilcock and Dukes (1987) and Hargis (1991) for reviews of ocular pathology of fishes.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Cataracts are usually diagnosed by observing opacity of the lens.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Cataracts are difficult to control because the precise etiology is seldom verified in field situations.

### **Post-Vaccination Peritonitis**

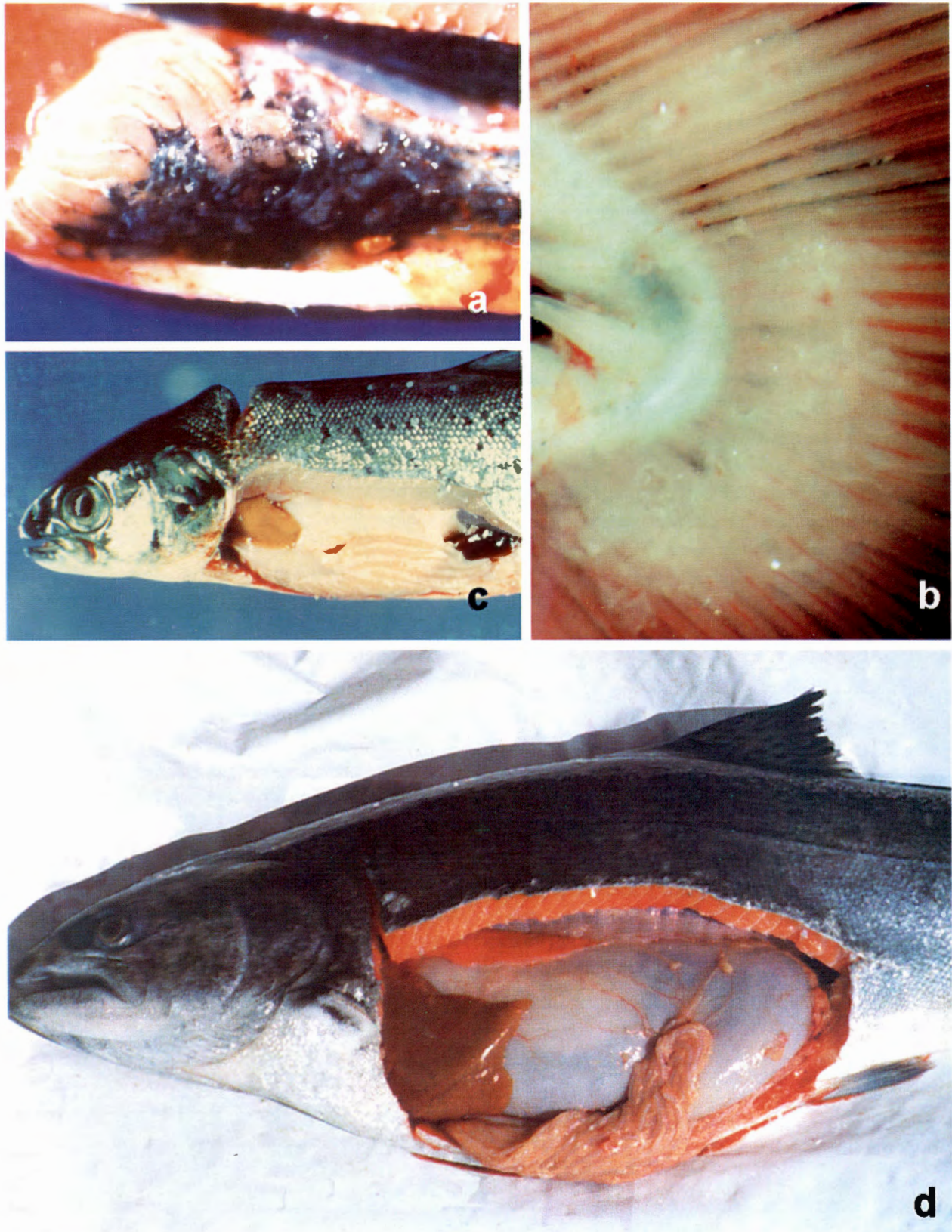
The aquaculture industry has benefited considerably from the oil-adjuvanted vaccines for intraperitoneal immunization against furunculosis and other septicemic diseases (Erdal and Reitan 1992; Midtlyng 1996). One of the few negative effects is the development of adhesions in the abdominal cavity (Lillehaug et al. 1992; Midtlyng et al. 1996). In most cases, these lesions are of acceptable extent and severity and of little or no significance for the fish or the end product. In a few cases, however, the abdominal reaction to the vaccine components can be extremely severe and lead to very serious lesions (Poppe and Breck 1997). There can be little doubt that the most extensive lesions may interfere to a considerable degree with normal motility and function of the gastrointestinal tract and normal gonadal development. Furthermore, the animal welfare aspect of the condition should not be overlooked.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Heavily affected fish are typically smaller and darker than unaffected fish in the same cages. They are usually inactive and congregate near the surface. A distention of the anterior part of the abdomen is a frequent finding. Adhesions are typically found near the injection site, i.e. cranially to the pelvic fins and usually involves the spleen and pyloric caecae with adhesions attached to the visceral wall by fibrous strands. More severe lesions are often found dorsally and cranially to the liver which is often adhered to the anterior part of the swimbladder and kidney, the gonads, the oesophagus and the septum transversum that separates the pericardial cavity from the peritoneal cavity. Adhesions may also be found in the posterior portion of the abdominal cavity, where they may interfere with bladder and hindgut function. In most cases the lesions are white or light grey, but adhesions stained black due to accumulation of melanomacrophages have also been seen (Fig. 12-3a). The lesions may develop into fairly thick aggregates, up to 10-15 mm in thickness.

**MICROSCOPY.** The tissue between the visceral organs and the body wall is dominated by fibrous tissue often arranged in swirls and granulomas. Round or oval spaces with a sharp periphery represent oil droplets from the vaccine are engulfed by the fibrous tissue (Fig. 11-8). Lymphocytes and macrophages are frequently found, and in some cases eosinophilic granular cells (EGC) dominate completely. Numerous melanomacrophages are found when the lesions are macroscopically dark. Granulomas of variable extent may also be encountered in internal organs like the kidney and liver. Pancreatic tissue is often completely surrounded by the fibrotic lesions.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The diagnosis is based upon the characteristic gross and histopathological lesions with numerous EGC's plus anamnestic information. The lesions may have some resemblance to post-spawning peritonitis, encapsulated tapeworm larvae (*Diphyllobothrium* spp.) and chronic BKD, but the adhesions associated with these diseases are usually not as firm as in post-vaccination peritonitis.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** It is not known what causes the extensive adhesions in a few cases and it is therefore difficult to give any advice other than the vaccination should be performed on healthy fish that are subjected to a minimum of stress, before and after the vaccination. Furthermore, the vaccination should be done in accordance with the information given by the producer.



**Figure 12-3.** a. Post-vaccine peritonitis. Note extensive melanization of granulation tissue in adhesions around pyloric caeca. b. White patches in gills due to epithelial hyperplasia associated with entrapped *Chaetoceros* diatoms.

c. Netpen liver disease. Note atrophied, yellow liver. d. Water belly in a chinook salmon. Note extremely enlarged stomach with very thin wall.

### **Netpen Liver Disease**

A toxicopathic liver disease, referred to as netpen liver disease (NLD), has repeatedly been observed in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) during the summer at several netpen sites in Washington State, USA and British Columbia, Canada (Kent et al. 1988b; Kent 1990). The disease is characterized by diffuse hepatic megalocytosis, and diffuse necrosis and inflammation of the liver. Although NLD affects primarily Atlantic salmon during their first year in sea water, the disease has been also observed in pen-reared chinook salmon and rainbow trout. We have also observed essentially identical liver lesions in wild-caught chinook salmon from the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia (Stephen et al. 1993). Netpen liver disease begins in the summer, usually is chronic with steady, persistent mortality, and may continue through the early autumn. Fish that survive until the winter recover. Mortality associated with the disease is extremely variable; fish from some sites may exhibit only mild to moderate liver damage and no significant increase in mortality, whereas in other sites there has been severe liver damage and almost 90% cumulative mortality by the end of the summer.

Kent (1990) proposed that NLD is most likely caused by a naturally occurring toxin, possibly an algal toxin. Andersen et al. (1993) presented biological and chemical evidence which suggested that a toxin indistinguishable from microcystin LR, a potent hepatotoxin produced by blue-green algae, was the cause of NLD. Liquid chromatography-linked protein phosphatase analysis (LCPP) of liver tissue from salmon with NLD demonstrated the presence of a phosphatase inhibitor identical to microcystin LR, whereas control fish showed complete absence of the compound. In addition, salmon injected with purified microcystin LR exhibited liver lesions similar to those seen in NLD, including hepatic megalocytosis. Microcystin LR has also been detected in the biota growing on netpens (Andersen et al. 1993; Williams et al. 1998).

Atlantic salmon post-smolts often feed on the natural biota around netpens, and thus they probably contract the disease by eating zooplankton or other biota containing the toxin (Kent et al. 1996). Although microcystin occurs in zooplankton, the actual alga that produces the toxin in the marine environment has not been identified.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish may be dark, lethargic and accumulate in the netpen corners. The liver of affected fish may be small, yellow, opaque, and friable (Fig. 12-3c). However, fish can have severe liver damage without any obvious macroscopic changes to the liver. Other organs appear normal.

**MICROSCOPY.** The hallmark histological change of NLD is prominent hepatic megalocytosis (Fig 12-4). Affected livers also exhibit a variety of other pathological changes. Early in the disease the liver shows vacuolation of hepatocytes, individual cell necrosis of hepatocytes scattered throughout the parenchyma (hepatocyte dropout), nuclear pleomorphism of hepatocytes, and bile preductual cell proliferation. Moderate and severe lesions are characterized by prominent nuclear pleomorphism leading to hepatic megalocytosis, diffuse necrosis and hydropic degeneration of hepatocytes (Fig. 12-4), loss of the liver parenchyma architecture, perivascular and peritubular cuffing by inflammatory cells, and ceroid deposition in macrophages. Islands of regenerating hepatocytes are frequently observed, demonstrating concurrent degeneration and regeneration.

After affected fish are moved to clean water they exhibit almost complete regeneration of the liver in 3 mo. (Kent 1990). However, individual hepatocytes with megalocytosis can be found in regenerated livers at least 9 mo. after fish are moved to clean water. Therefore, the presence of these megalocytic hepatocytes in fish collected during the winter can be used as an indication that the fish previously had NLD.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis of NLD is based on the presence of the histological changes described above in pen-reared salmon. However, this change can be induced by a variety of hepatotoxins and may be found in fish with other liver diseases.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Reports to us from veterinarians and fish farmers have suggested that post-smolts exhibiting inappetence toward commercial pellets often have a higher prevalence of NLD. These observations suggest that fish that are well-imprinted on commercial pellets will feed less on the natural biota, and thus may be less prone to NLD. In controlled field experiments we confirmed this hypothesis (Kent et al. 1996). Therefore, assuring that fish feed well (i.e., are imprinted well on pellets) shortly after seawater entry will greatly reduce the severity of the disease. In addition, introduction of fish in the winter or early spring, which is before the seasonal occurrence of NLD, will allow time for the post-smolts to adapt to sea water and re-establish a strong feeding response to artificial diets.

**Water Belly (Bloat)**

Distention of the abdomen due to massive fluid accumulation in the stomach has been observed in pen-reared Atlantic salmon, chinook and coho throughout the Pacific Northwest. The syndrome has also been observed in pen-reared rainbow trout in Europe (Staurnes et al. 1990). Apparently the fluid in the stomach is primarily sea water. The cause of water belly is unknown, but some have suggested that it is exacerbated by rapid changes in pellet size or overfeeding. Staurnes et al. (1990) proposed that water belly may be related to disturbances in fat and carbohydrate metabolism.

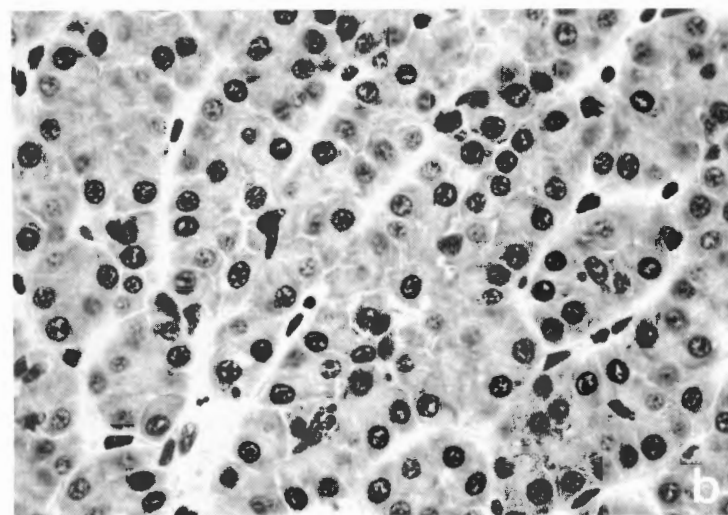
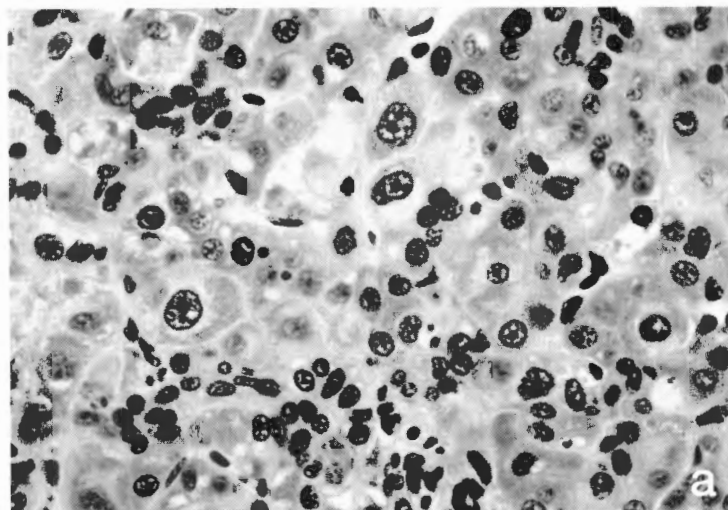
**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Although water belly has been associated with morbidity and mortality, affected fish often appear otherwise normal and can survive for weeks with the condition. Fish with water belly exhibit severe distention of the abdominal wall. Dissection reveals a massively enlarged stomach with a very thin wall (Fig. 12-3d).

The stomach is filled with watery, clear fluid. Atrophy of the liver has also been observed in affected fish (Hicks 1989).

**MICROSCOPY.** Fish do not exhibit any significant histological changes, other than thinning of the stomach wall.

**DIAGNOSIS.** The disease is diagnosed by observation of massive accumulation of watery, clear fluid in the stomach.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Some farmers have reported that decreasing the feeding rate may alleviate the problem (Hicks 1989).



**Figure 12-4.** Atlantic salmon liver with netpen liver disease (A). Note loss of parenchyma architecture and nuclear pleomorphism of hepatocytes leading hepatic megalocytosis. B = normal liver. Note cord pattern of parenchyma and homogeneity of hepatocyte nuclei. H & E.

---

# NEOPLASTIC DISEASES AND RELATED DISORDERS

M.L. Kent

As with other forms of agriculture, neoplasms are occasionally observed in individual fish (often at harvest). However, most of these do not pose a significant economic problem to fish farmers because only a few fish are usually affected. However, some of these diseases (e.g., plasmacytoid leukemia, swimbladder sarcoma) affect enough fish in a given population to be of concern. The following is a description of some common neoplasms found in pen-reared salmon. Cardiac hemangiomas are covered in the previous chapter (see page 100).

## Plasmacytoid Leukemia

A plasmacytoid leukemia (PL) of salmon, referred to as marine anemia by fish farmers, caused high mortality at several chinook farms in British Columbia in the late 1980's (Kent et al. 1990a; Newbound and Kent 1991b). Now the disease is considered endemic, rather than epidemic, and has been reported at essentially all chinook farms in British Columbia (Stephen and Ribble 1995b; Stephen et al. 1996). Plasmacytoid leukemia has also been observed in pen-reared coho and Atlantic salmon in Chile. Diseases histologically identical to PL have also been observed in freshwater-reared chinook in California (Hedrick et al. 1990) and Washington (Harshbarger 1984; Morrison et al. 1990), and we have seen PL in freshwater-reared chinook in British Columbia.

Plasmacytoid leukemia is characterized by infiltration and proliferation of immature plasma cells (plasmablasts) in the visceral organs and retrobulbar tissue. The disease is usually detected in chinook after they have been in sea water for approximately one year, and outbreaks are often recognized following BKD epizootics. Mortalities associated with PL have varied considerably; whereas mortalities are usually chronic and moderate, at least one farm has lost approximately 50% of the production stock in the fish's second year in sea water.

The etiology of PL has not been determined, but field observations and laboratory transmission studies clearly indicate that the disease is caused by an infectious agent (Kent and Dawe 1990; Newbound and Kent 1991a). Plasmacytoid leukemia of chinook is readily transmitted by injection of homogenates of affected kidney and spleen tissue. In addition, we have experimentally infected sockeye salmon and Atlantic salmon by injection of affected chinook tissues (Newbound and Kent 1991a). Two agents have been suggested to be the cause

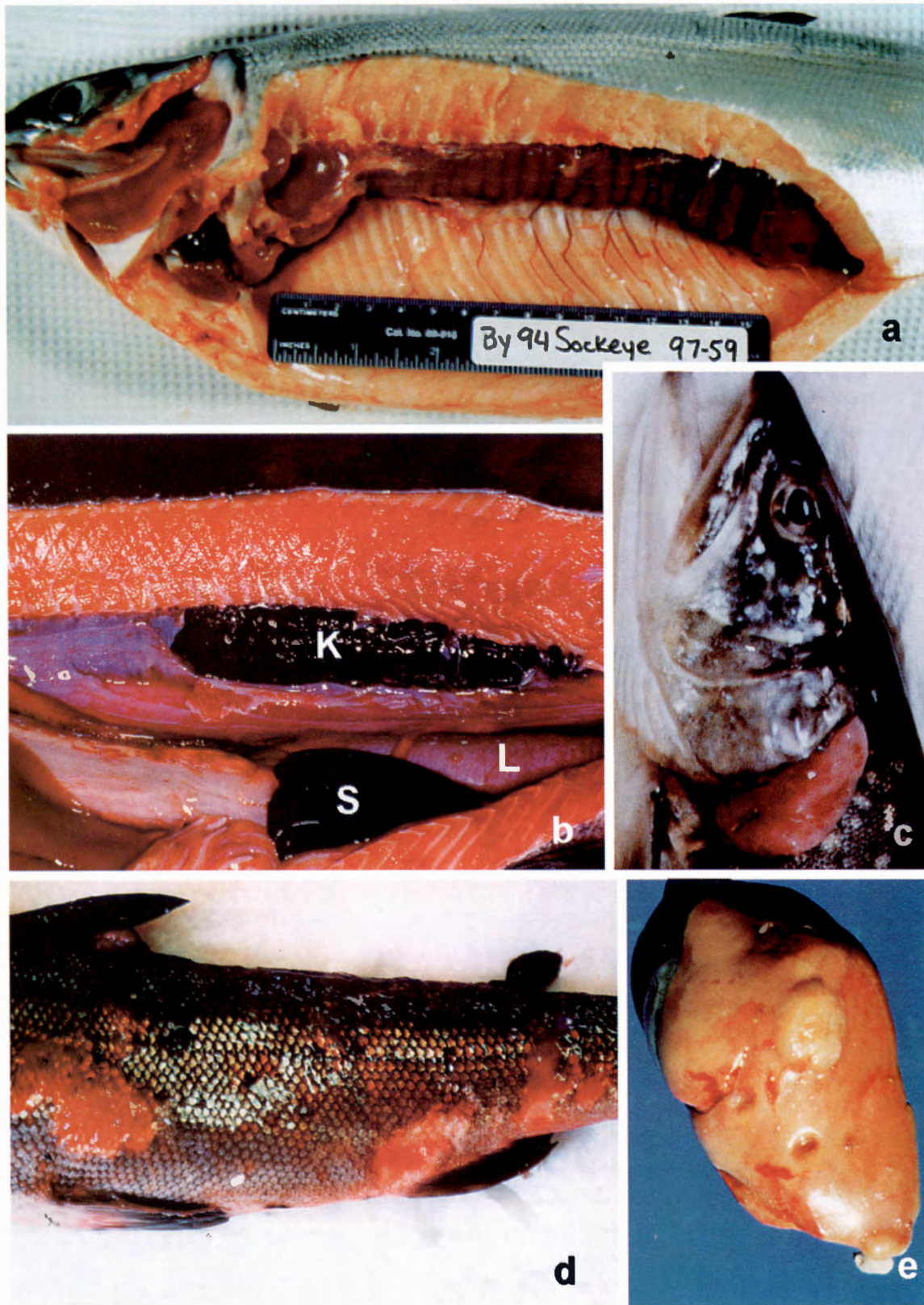
of PL; a microsporidian parasite, *Nucleospora salmonis* (pages 65 and 66), and an oncogenic virus (e.g., retrovirus). The microsporidium has been observed in the nuclei of the plasmablasts from many fish with PL in British Columbia and in similar diseases in United States and Chile. However, experimental studies have produced conflicting results.

Our earlier transmission studies suggested that the microsporidium is not the primary cause of PL, and that an oncogenic retrovirus is the cause of the disease (Eaton and Kent 1992; Kent et al. 1991a). Essentially all infectious leukemias and related disorders are caused by oncogenic viruses (particularly retroviruses) and these have been associated with some blood neoplasms of fishes (Papas et al. 1976; Gross 1983). Virus-like particles similar to retroviruses have been detected in affected fish (Kent et al. 1991a), and Eaton and Kent (1992) consistently found increased reverse transcriptase activity, a retroviral enzyme, in fish with PL.

It is possible that PL actually represents two separate diseases; one caused by the virus and one caused by the microsporidium. Studies with fumagillin and TNP-470 (Hedrick et al 1991a; Higgins et al. 1998) support the microsporidian hypothesis. Moreover, in essentially all cases that we have investigated in recent years, and in reports from other countries, *N. salmonis* is consistently observed in the proliferating plasmablasts.

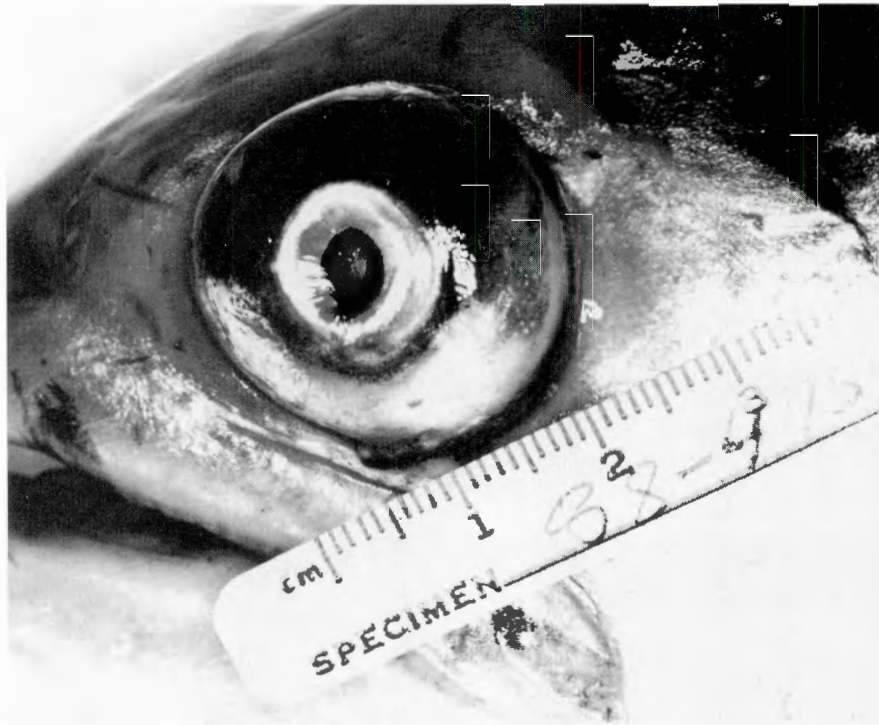
Interestingly, the only other member of the family Enterocytozoidae, *Enterocytozoon bienersi*, is associated with a retroviral disease, AIDS in humans (Desportes et al. 1985; Bryan et al. 1990). *Renibacterium salmoninarum*, the cause of BKD, may also be a cofactor in PL. Laboratory transmission studies indicate that the bacterium is not the primary cause of the disease. However, given the high prevalence of BKD that proceeds most outbreaks of PL, it is possible that the bacterium may exacerbate the proliferation of plasmablasts seen in PL. Conversely, PL-affected fish may be predisposed to BKD.

Transmission studies suggest that PL is not easily transmissible in sea water. However, the disease can be transmitted by *per os* exposure (Baxa-Antonio et al. 1992), and we have transmitted the disease by cohabitation in fresh water. Anecdotal field observations from Chile and British Columbia suggest that vertical transmission of PL is a possibility (Kent et al. 1993), but we have not been able to achieve vertical transmission of the disease in laboratory field studies.



**Figure 13-1.** a. Lymphosarcoma in sockeye salmon. Note extremely enlarged kidney (Courtesy of K. Johnson). b. Plasmacytoid leukemia in chinook. Note enlargement of the spleen (S), lower intestine (L) and kidney (K). c. Thymic lymphoma in lake trout. Note pink tumor extending out of

opercular cavity (Courtesy of C. Smith). d. epidermal papillomata in Atlantic salmon. Note raised, hyperemic skin lesions. e. Hepatocellular carcinoma in rainbow trout. Note raised yellow nodules in liver (Courtesy of C. Smith).



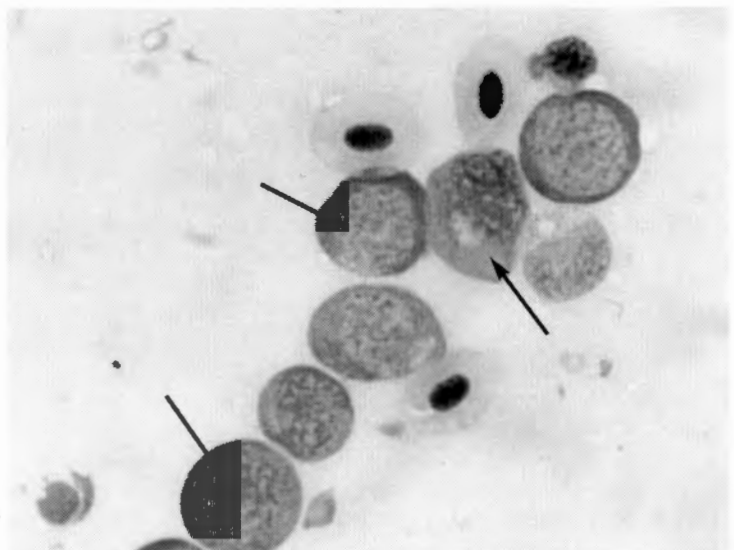
**Figure 13-2.** Severe exophthalmus in chinook salmon with plasmacytoid leukemia.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish are dark, lethargic, and often swim near the surface. Pallor of the gills, indicating anemia, is a common finding. Many of the fish with PL exhibit severe bilateral exophthalmus (Fig. 13-2). Some of these fish may exhibit severe eye involvement with relatively minimal visceral changes and anemia. Dissection of affected eyes reveals that the exophthalmus is due to massive accumulation of white or hyperemic tissue in the orbit of the eye. When visceral involvement occurs, internal examination reveals enlargement of the spleen and kidney (Fig. 13-1b). Petechiae may occur in the liver, mesenteric fat, pancreas, heart and skeletal muscle. The lower intestinal wall may be markedly thickened. Some fish have ascites consisting of a clear or serosanguinous fluid. Hematocrit values of blood from affected fish are quite variable, and may reach as low as 2%.

**MICROSCOPY.** Imprints stained with Giemsa or Diff-Quik from the kidney, liver, and the eye reveal numerous plasmablasts (Fig. 13-3). In these preparations, the cells have a smooth contour, vary in size from 10 to 20  $\mu\text{m}$ , and contain sparse to moderate amounts of basophilic cytoplasm. Nuclei are large, occasionally indented, and contain a smoothly homogeneous to moderately reticulated chromatin pattern. A juxtannuclear hof is visible in some cells.

Histological examination of affected fish reveals a proliferation of plasmablasts essentially in every organ (Figs. 13-4), including kidney, spleen, liver, intestine, pancreas and associated mesenteric fat, meninges, heart, skeletal muscle, skin, and the eye (Kent et al. 1990a). In histological sections, the plasmablasts contain large, often deeply clefted or lobated nuclei, and prominent nucleoli. They have a moderate amount of finely granular, eosinophilic or amphophilic cytoplasm, and many of these cells are mitotically active. The eye, spleen, and kidney are the primary organs affected.

In the eye, there is massive infiltration of plasmablasts into the periorbital connective tissue and ocular muscles. Kidneys



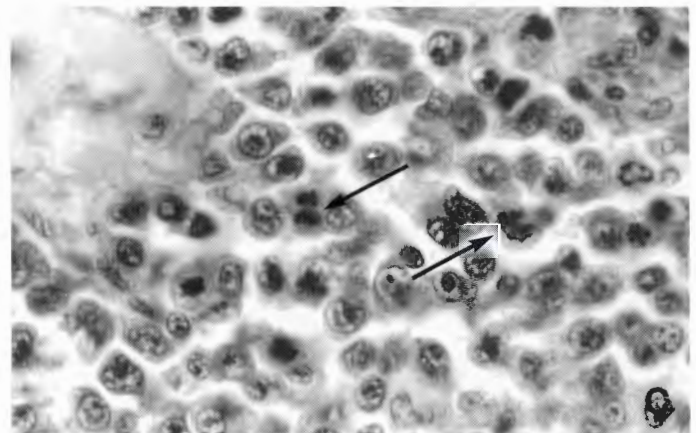
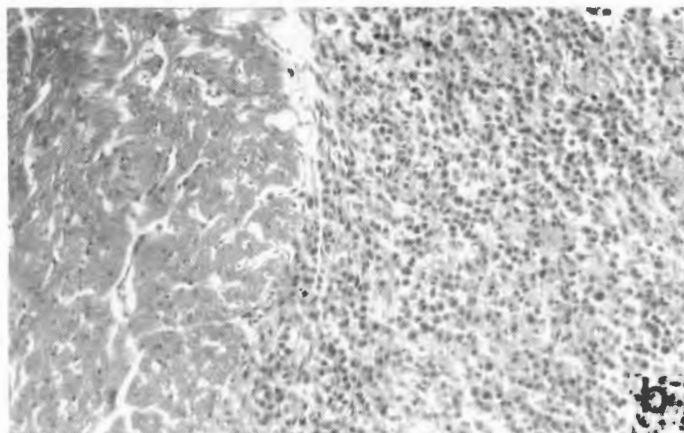
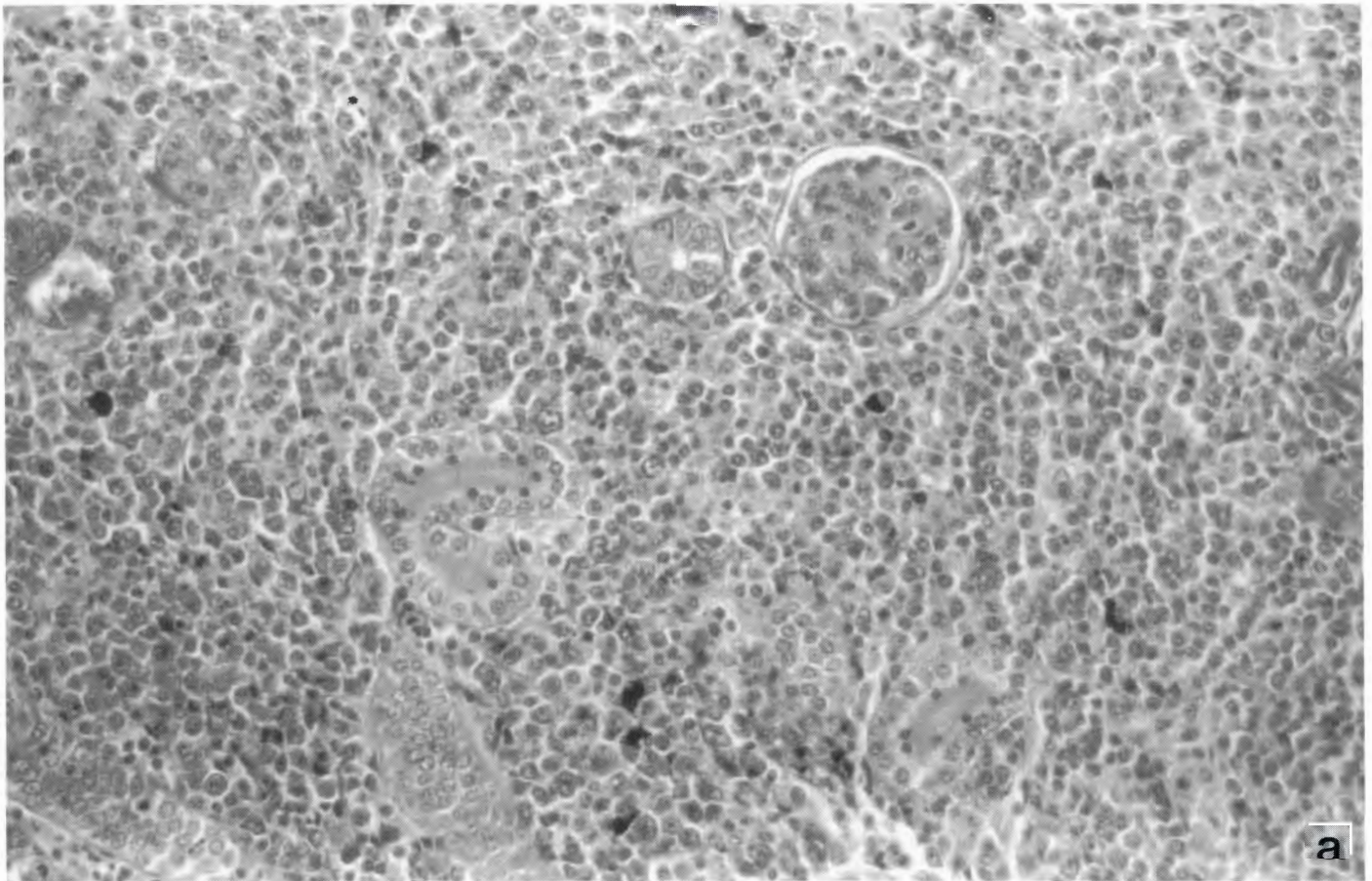
**Figure 13-3.** Plasmacytoid leukemia. Liver imprint stained with Giemsa. Arrow = plasmablasts.

exhibit prominent hyperplasia of the interstitium due to proliferation of the plasmablasts (Fig. 13-4). Thickened basement membranes in the capillaries of the glomerulus are often observed. In severely affected fish, there is a perivascular infiltration of the plasmablasts within the liver, and the cells often proliferate within the sinusoids.

The pericardium of the ventricle, atrium, and bulbus arteriosus of the heart may be infiltrated by the plasmablasts, which forms a thick cellular capsule that surrounds the heart. The cells may also infiltrate the endocardium, particularly in the bulbus arteriosus, and plasmablasts occur throughout the

vascular sinuses of the heart. When the lower intestine is affected, there is massive proliferation of the plasmablasts in the lamina propria and in the submucosa, resulting in expansion of the intestinal villi.

**Figure 13-4.** Histology of plasmacytoid leukemia (Courtesy of Dis. Aquat. Org.) a. Hyperplasia of the kidney interstitium caused by proliferation of plasmablasts. b. Proliferation of plasmablasts in pericardium. c. Plasmablast proliferation in pancreas. Note numerous mitotic figures (arrows).



## Neoplastic Diseases and Related Disorders

**DIAGNOSIS.** Confirmatory diagnosis of PL based on gross pathological changes is impossible because these changes are very similar to those of fish with BKD. Nevertheless, Stephen and Ribble (1996) developed an algorithm for field investigations of PL employing gross pathological signs that is reasonably accurate. Presumptive diagnosis and distinction from BKD can be achieved by the examination of Giemsa-stained and Gram-stained imprints of the liver and kidney, respectively. Examination of an organ that is normally not a site of hemopoiesis, such as the liver, is recommended because differentiation of abnormal populations of plasmablasts from normal hemoblasts in organs such as the spleen and kidney may be difficult. The occurrence of large numbers of immature blood cells (presumably plasmablasts) in the liver (Fig. 13-3), and the absence of numerous *Renibacterium* organisms in the kidney and liver allows for a presumptive positive diagnosis for PL. However, a false negative diagnosis can occur using these criteria alone because PL-affected fish may exhibit concurrent BKD, and fish with PL do not always exhibit numerous plasmablasts in the liver.

Therefore, confirmatory diagnosis should be based on histological examination. Diagnosis by histology is based on the occurrence of renal interstitial hyperplasia of cells resembling the plasmablasts, and proliferation of these cells in at least one non-hemopoietic organ. Stephen and Ribble (1996) expanded the case definition of PL based on histology, which included the following characteristics: 1) hyperplasia of the interstitial cells of the posterior kidney; 2) increased proportion (>15%) of large mononuclear cells, blast cells and mitotic figures in the renal interstitium; 3) the presence of mononuclear cell infiltrates, composed primarily of large mononuclear cells and blasts, in at least one organ other than the spleen or kidney; 4) no important signs of granuloma formation or necrosis in the organs examined. Concurrent BKD can mask the histological diagnosis – i.e., the severe, chronic inflammatory response that occurs throughout the viscera and occasionally the eye in fish with severe BKD can mask the detection of the plasmablast infiltrates.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** The mode of transmission of PL and the source of the infection in the field is still unclear. Therefore, precise recommendations for the control of the disease at affected sites are not available. Given the infectious nature of PL and its ability to cause high mortality, fish should not be transferred from sites with PL to sites where the disease has not been found. Until the risk of vertical transmission has been further evaluated it would be prudent not to use eggs or smolts that originated from brood stock with a history of PL. If

this is not possible, the individual spawners should be examined, and eggs and sperm from PL-positive fish should be discarded.

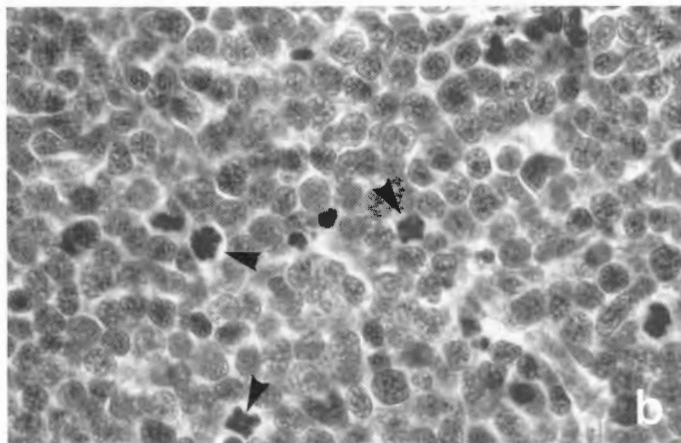
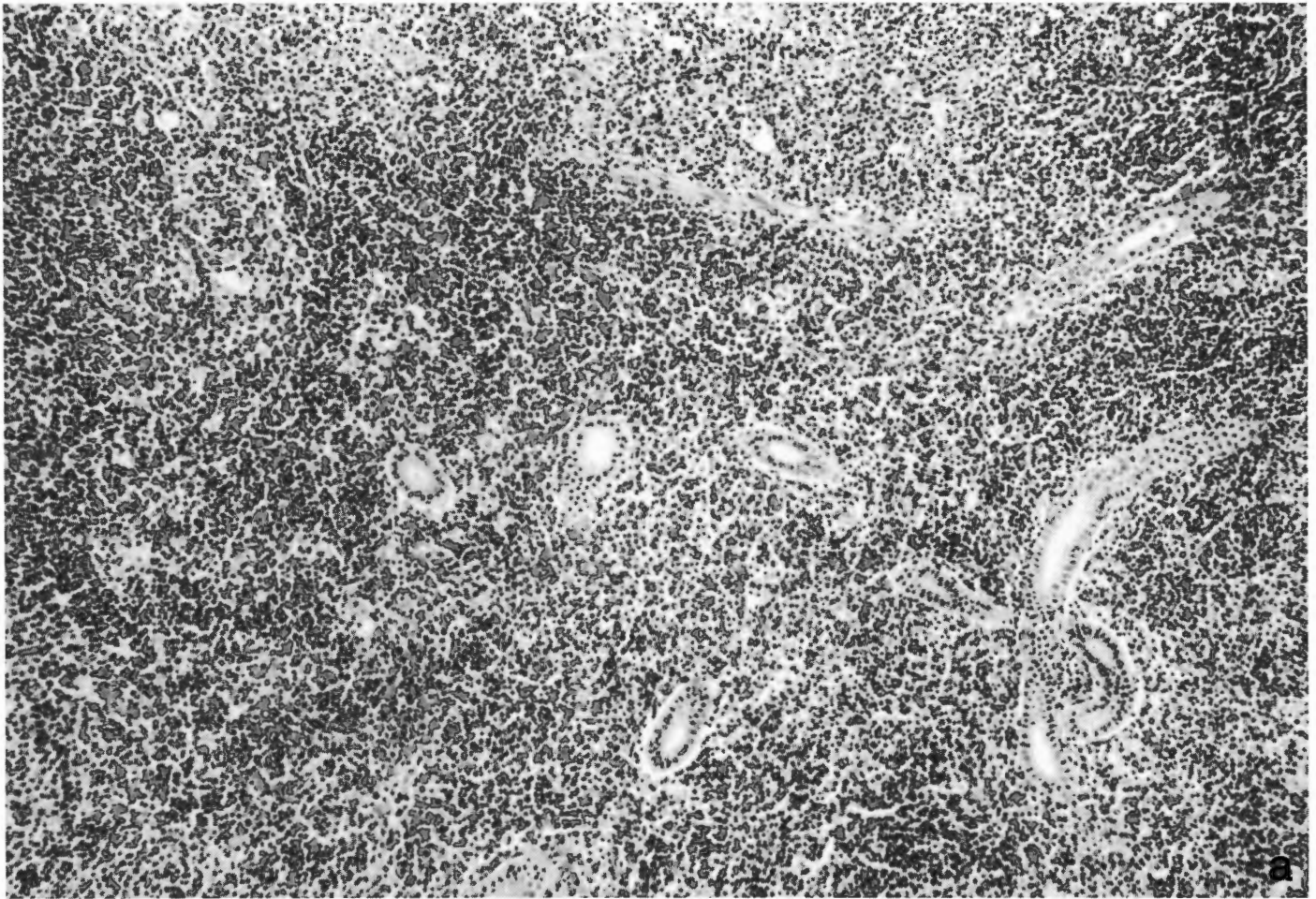
There are no commercially available anti-leukemia drugs for fish. However, Hedrick et al. (1991b) reported that treatment of a disease similar to PL in California with fumagillin, an anti-microsporidial drug, reduced infections by *N. salmonis* and the concurrent leukemia-like condition. We have achieved similar results with a fumagillin analog, TNP-470 (see page 66). This indicates that, although *N. salmonis* is not believed to be the primary cause of the PL, elimination of potential co-factors, such as *N. salmonis* infections and BKD, may be helpful for the control of PL. However, this drug is not useful for treating PL in cases where *N. salmonis* is not associated with the condition (Kent and Dawe 1993).

### Lymphosarcoma and Lymphoma

Lymphosarcomas and lymphomas are occasionally observed in wild and cultured salmonids, and there are a few reports of these neoplasms from pen-reared salmonids. One case in Chile, many fish with visceral lymphosarcoma were observed at harvest (Inostroza, R., pers. comm.). The kidney or thymus are usually the primary organs involved, but these neoplasms may occur on the skin or scattered through the trunk musculature (Roald and Håstein 1979). Oncogenic viruses are often the cause of lymphoid tumors, including those of fishes (Papas et al. 1976; Bowser and Casey 1993), but to date none have been isolated from lymphosarcomas of salmonids.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** As with plasmacytoid leukemia, fish with disseminated lymphosarcomas may be anemic. However, it is remarkable how severely affected a fish may be without showing outward morbidity. Discrete lymphomas are usually solid, whitish lesions. For example, thymic lymphomas appear as white masses in the opercular cavity (Fig. 13-1c). With disseminated (malignant) lymphosarcoma, the kidney is often extremely enlarged along the entire length (Fig. 13-1a).

**MICROSCOPY.** Lymphoid tumors are usually identified by histology. The infiltrated organ or tumor mass is deeply basophilic. In contrast to PL, the proliferating lymphoblasts of these neoplasms have minimal cytoplasm and are monomorphic (Fig. 13-5). Characteristic of neoplasms, there is often an abundance of mitotic figures.



**Figure 13-5.** Lymphosarcoma in kidney of sockeye salmon. a. Massive infiltration of proliferating lymphoblasts in kidney interstitium. b. high magnification showing enlarged nucleus, prominent nucleolus, and minimal cytoplasm. Note numerous mitotic figures (arrowheads).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis is confirmed by histological examination of affected tissues.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Fortunately this neoplasm is usually only an incidental finding in netpen farms. These neoplasms are often caused by oncogenic viruses (e.g., retroviruses), some of which may be vertically transmitted. Therefore, it would be prudent not to use fish with lymphoid tumors for brood stock.

### Swimbladder Sarcoma

Leiomyosarcomas of the swimbladder have been reported from pen-reared Atlantic salmon (McKnight 1978). Duncan (1978) observed retrovirus-like particles in the tumors, but the etiology of this neoplastic disease has not been confirmed.

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** Affected fish are generally in poor condition and lethargic. Internal examination reveals multiple, large masses in the swimbladder. Typical of sarcomas, the tumors are whitish, hard, and in severely affected fish they may occupy the entire length of the swimbladder (Fig. 13-6).

**MICROSCOPY.** Histological examination reveals that they arise from the junction of the inner smooth muscle layer and the areolar tissue zone. The tumors are well-differentiated, and consist of bundles of spindle cells (McKnight 1978).

**DIAGNOSIS.** Presumptive diagnosis is observation of multiple, firm nodules in the swimbladder, and identification of the tumor is based on histological analysis.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Duncan (1978) presented evidence that the disease is caused by an oncogenic virus, but the source of the infection has not been elucidated. As with other viral diseases, avoidance of infected stocks is probably the best method for controlling the disease.

### Hepatocellular Carcinoma

Neoplasms of the liver are often caused by chemical carcinogens, and the most recognized cause of this lesion in salmonids in aquaculture is caused by aflatoxin. The toxin is produced by *Aspergillus* spp., which commonly grows in rancid feeds containing cotton seed meal. Rainbow trout are particularly sensitive to the toxin (Halver 1976; Wales 1967; Hendricks et al. 1984), and in the early 1960's many epizootics occurred in freshwater trout farms before the cause was recognized. Fish exposed to high doses may develop tumors as short as 4 months post exposure (Hendricks et al. 1984). We know of one report of an outbreak of hepatocellular carcinoma in seawater pen-reared rainbow trout, which occurred in Denmark (Rasmussen et al. 1986).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** The disease is characterized by the appearance of an enlarged liver with multiple nodules (Fig. 13-1e).

**MICROSCOPY.** Hendricks et al. (1984) describes the histological progression of aflatoxin-induced liver tumors in rainbow trout. Early in development, preneoplastic nodules are often observed in the liver parenchyma. Aggressive carcinomas are then found. Aflatoxin exposure may also induce other liver lesions, such as ceroidosis, adenofibrosis, hepatic megalocytosis, and pancreatic cell metaplasia (Wales 1967; Hendricks et al. 1984).



**Figure 13-6.** Swimbladder fibrosarcoma in Atlantic salmon.

**DIAGNOSIS.** Diagnosis of hepatocellular carcinoma is based on histology. Because other agents may induce this neoplasm, confirmatory diagnosis is obtained by detecting high levels of aflatoxin in the feed.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** Avoidance of cottonseed meal and proper handling and storage of feeds will eliminate the risk of aflatoxin-induced liver tumors in fish.

BIOMOS (a high polymer melanin-like metal complex) in combination with tetracycline added to the feed reduced the incidence of affected fish. They concluded that this positive effect was due to overall improvement of the health status of the fish. As with other viral diseases, probably the best method for dealing with epidermal papillomatosis is avoidance of affected fish and improvement of culture conditions.

### Epidermal Papillomatosis

Epidermal papillomas are one of the most common neoplasms of fishes, and have been observed on numerous fish species. Some are associated with exposure to chemical carcinogens (Harshbarger et al. 1993), whereas as others are apparently caused by oncogenic viruses (Wolf 1988a; Bowser and Casey 1993). Epidermal papillomas (warts) have been reported from both wild and farmed Atlantic salmon (Bylund et al. 1980; Rand 1985; Smail 1989), and has been observed in marine-cultured rainbow trout (Roberts and Bullock 1979) and Atlantic salmon (Carlisle 1977; Carlisle and Roberts 1977). The condition is particularly common in fish undergoing smoltification, but may persist or first appear after transfer to sea water. Virus particles have been visualized in the lesions (Carlisle 1977; Shchelkunov et al. 1992), and a virus is probably the underlying cause of the disease. However, stressors, such as environmental and hormonal changes, are probably important co-factors (Smail 1989).

**CLINICAL SIGNS AND GROSS PATHOLOGY.** The warts appear as multifocal, raised, light-colored or hyperemic plaques on the skin (Fig. 13-1d). The lesions appear to grow in size and coalesce. Advanced lesions may then regress and be sloughed, sometimes leaving an ulcer. The lesions seldom cause high mortality in sea water, but have been a significant problem in a few freshwater outbreaks. Affected fish may be lethargic (Karaseva and Beskrovny 1991).

**MICROSCOPY.** Typical of epidermal papillomata, histological examination of the lesions reveals massive, focal hyperplasia of the epidermis, which often form convoluted folds.

**CONTROL AND TREATMENT.** In sea water, Smail (1989) recommended reduced handling to minimize damage to the skin. Bylund et al. (1980) found that baths with formalin or NaCl reduced the severity of the condition in salmon held in freshwater. Karaseva and Beskrovny (1991) reported that

---

## APPENDIX I - GLOSSARY

**Amphophilic.** Staining readily with both acid or basic dyes. Amphophilic material usually is purple in hematoxylin and eosin-stained tissue sections.

**Anemia.** Reduction below normal levels of red blood cell mass in the circulatory system. Anemia is caused by hemorrhage (hemorrhagic anemia), increased red blood cell destruction (hemolytic anemia), nutritional deficiencies (e.g., iron, folic acid or vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiencies), and suppression of hemopoiesis (aplastic anemia).

**Ascites.** Accumulation of serous fluid in the peritoneal cavity. A form of edema.

**Ataxia.** A loss of muscular coordination with impaired balance.

**Atrophy.** Reduction in mass of a tissue or organ, due to a reduction in cell number or cell size.

**Autolysis.** The initial degenerative changes in dead cells as a result of the action of endogenous enzymes. Postmortem autolysis occurs after the animal has died.

**Basophilic.** Having an affinity to basophilic dyes. In hematoxylin and eosin-stained tissue sections basophilic material stains blue.

**Caseation.** Caseous necrosis. Formation of necrotic tissue which, due to its focal nature, is soft, pasty or cheese-like.

**Cataract.** A loss of transparency in the lens of the eye.

**Cataractous Changes.** Denoting pathological changes associated with the formation of cataracts.

**Ceroid.** Wax-like, golden or yellow-brown intracellular material. A type of lipofuscin. Ceroid is usually formed from remaining indigestible breakdown products in phagolysosomes.

**Coelozoic.** Living within the lumina (tissue spaces) of organs, such as the lumina of renal tubules or the gall bladder.

**Coracidia.** Plural for coracidium, a larva with a ciliated epithelium that hatches from the egg of certain tapeworms.

**Definitive host.** Host in which a parasite achieves sexual maturity.

**Digitiform.** Finger-like.

**Ecchymotic.** Denoting hemorrhages larger than petechiae, often up to 2-3 cm.

**Edema.** Accumulation of abnormal amounts of fluid in the intercellular tissue spaces. Edema can be caused by decreased plasma osmotic pressure, increased blood pressure, lymphatic obstruction, or increased capillary permeability.

**Encephalitis.** Inflammation of the brain.

**Eosinophilic.** Having an affinity to acidic dyes. In hematoxylin and eosin-stained tissue sections eosinophilic material stains orange or red.

**Epizootic.** Denoting a disease attacking many animals in population simultaneously.

**Erythema.** Redness of the skin.

**Etiology.** Causation; the study of the cause of disease.

**Exophthalmus.** Protrusion of the eye; "pop-eye".

**Fibroplasia.** Abnormal, non-neoplastic increase in fibrous tissue.

**Friable.** Having a gritty texture. Falls apart when handled and is easily reduced to powder.

**Glomerulus.** A plexus of capillaries at the beginning of each uriniferous tubule in the kidney.

**Golgi body.** A complex of membranes in the cytoplasm of a cell, which is distributed in a parallel orientation adjacent to the nucleus. This organelle probably functions as a site of production and packaging of cellular secretions.

**Granuloma.** Focal accumulation of inflammatory cells comprised primarily of macrophages. Formation of granulomas is associated with chronic inflammation.

**Hemoblast.** Immature blood cell.

**Hemopericardium.** Blood accumulation around the heart.

**Hemopoiesis.** The process of development and formation of blood cells.

**Hemorrhage.** The escape of blood from the cardiovascular system.

**Hemosiderin.** A storage form of excess iron. Hemosiderin often accumulates in the liver, spleen, or kidney interstitium, and is associated with the release of iron from lysed red blood cells.

**Hematoma.** A localized mass of extravascular blood that is confined within an organ, tissue or space. The blood is usually clotted.

**Hepatic megalocytosis.** Megalocytic hepatitis. The formation of hypertrophied hepatocytes (liver cells) with greatly enlarged, often dark-staining, nuclei. This condition is apparently due to a failure of cell division in mitosis, resulting in polyploid cells. Hepatic megalocytosis is an indication of cellular toxicity, and can be induced by exposure to anthropogenic (man-made) contaminants or natural toxins.

**Hepatotoxicant.** A toxicant that effects the liver.

**Helminth.** Denoting a worm. Helminth parasites include digenetic trematodes, cestodes, monogeneans, nematodes, and acanthocephalans.

**Histozoic.** Living within tissues outside of the cell.

**Hydropic degeneration.** A degenerative process at the cellular level that results in the formation of many vacuoles of variable size in the cytoplasm. Commonly the vacuoles represent distended organelles, especially the endoplasmic reticulum.

**Hyperemic.** Showing increased quantity of blood.

**Hyperplasia.** An increase in the number of normal cells. Hyperplasia will not progress, and usually resolves itself, in the absence of the causative stimulus (this is an important distinction from neoplasia).

**Hypertrophy.** Enlargement of individual cells or an organ.

**Idiopathic.** Denoting a disease of unknown cause.

**Intermediate host.** Host in which a parasite develops to some extent but not to sexual maturity.

**Juxtannuclear hof.** A clear-staining area adjacent to the nucleus representing the Golgi body.

**Lamina propria.** The stratum of connective tissue and associated cells underlying the epithelium of various organs, including the gut.

**Leucopenia.** Any situation when the total number of circulating white blood cells are less than normal.

**Leukemia.** Progressive proliferation of abnormal blood cells found in the hemopoietic tissues, other organs, and usually resulting in increased numbers of these cells in the blood. Leukemias are considered to be neoplasms of the blood.

**Lumina.** Plural for lumen, the space in the interior of a tubular structure such as a kidney tubule or artery.

**Lunules.** Disc-like cups on the ventral surface of the anterior margin of the body in *Caligus* spp. (parasitic copepods).

**Lymphocyte.** A white blood cell important in the immune response of fish. B lymphocytes produce antibody, whereas T lymphocytes are important in the cellular arm of the immune response. Approximately 95% of salmonid fish white blood cells are lymphocytes. The cell contains a large nucleus and a narrow rim of basophilic cytoplasm.

**Lymphoblast.** Immature lymphocyte.

**Macrophage.** A large, mononuclear phagocytic white blood cell. Macrophages engulf foreign material, including pathogens, and are associated with chronic inflammation. Fixed macrophages (= reticuloendothelial system) are abundant in the kidney interstitium, atrium of the heart, and spleen.

**Macroscopic.** Visible with the naked eye.

**Meningitis.** Inflammation of the meninges (the covering of the brain).

**Melanomacrophage.** A macrophage containing melanin. As with normal macrophages, these cells are often associated with chronic inflammation.

**Melanin.** Black or brown pigment thought to play a role in the detoxification of free radicals and cations.

**Metacercaria.** Stage between the cercaria and adult in the life cycle of most digenetic trematodes. Usually encysted and quiescent. This stage is absent in blood flukes.

**Metacystode.** Juvenile developmental stage of a cestode. In fish, this stage is usually equivalent to the plerocercoid.

**Metaplasia.** Transformation from one cell type to another.

## Appendix I - Glossary

---

**Megalocytosis.** See hepatic megalocytosis.

**Merogony.** Developmental phase of certain protozoans (e.g., coccidians, microsporidians) involving asexual, vegetative proliferation.

**Miliary.** Denoting multiple white, cysts throughout the body or in an organ.

**Miracidium.** The first larval stage of digenean trematodes. Miracidia infect the first intermediate hosts of digenean trematodes, which are usually molluscs. Miracidia are small, ciliated and swim actively.

**Multinucleate giant cell.** A syncytia of macrophages. This cell is often found in granulomas of higher animals and occasionally in fish.

**Myocardium.** Heart muscle.

**Necrosis.** Cell death within a living organism.

**Neoplasia.** The pathologic process resulting in the growth of a neoplasm.

**Neoplasm.** An abnormal mass of tissue, the growth of which exceeds and is uncoordinated with that of normal tissues, and persists after the causative stimulus is removed.

**Nephritis.** Inflammation of the kidney.

**Neutrophil.** A white blood cell similar in morphology to neutrophils of higher animals. The cytoplasm is filled with fine granules and the nucleus is lobate and segmented. Although this cell is important in acute inflammation in mammals, the cell is relatively rare in fish and its function in fish is not entirely clear.

**Oncogenic.** Denoting an agent that causes neoplasia.

**Panophthalmitis.** Inflammation throughout the eyeball.

**Pathognomonic.** Characteristic or indicative of a disease.

**Petechiae.** Minute, focal hemorrhages up to 1 to 2 mm.

**Plasma cell.** Mature B lymphocyte that has a well organized rough endoplasmic reticulum and produces a relatively large amount of antibody.

**Plasmablast.** Immature plasma cell.

**Plerocercoid.** Cestode larva that develops from a proceroid. This stage is often found in the tissues of fishes.

**Proceroid.** Cestode larva that usually infects the first intermediate hosts. In aquatic cestodes, this host is usually a crustacean.

**Pyriform.** Pear-shaped.

**Retrobulbar.** Behind the eyeball.

**Septicemia.** Systemic infection of the cardiovascular system.

**Serosanguineous.** Denoting a discharge or exudate containing serum and blood.

**Sporogeny.** A developmental phase in certain protozoans (e.g., microsporidians) that results in the formation of spores.

**Stomatitis.** Inflammation of the mouth.

**Suppurative.** Refers to the formation of pus, which is large comprised of necrotic host cells and debris. Suppurative lesions are often caused by bacteria.

**Thrombi.** Plural for thrombus, a solid mass formed within a blood vessel.

**Vasculitis.** Inflammation of blood vessels.

**Vitreous chamber.** Posterior chamber of the eye, between the lens and retina.

**Xenoma.** A host cell packed with microsporidian parasites and that is greatly hypertrophied. The host cell nucleus is also greatly hypertrophied, which may be branched or fragmented.

**Zoonoses.** Diseases transmitted from animals to man.

---

## APPENDIX II - SCIENTIFIC NAMES OF FISHES

amago salmon - <i>Oncorhynchus rhodurus</i>	masou salmon - <i>Oncorhynchus masou</i>
American eel- <i>Anguilla rostrata</i>	mummichog - <i>Fundulus heteroclitus</i>
Arctic char - <i>Salvelinus alpinus</i>	North Sea whiting - <i>Merlangius merlangus</i>
Arctic grayling - <i>Thymallus arcticus</i>	Pacific cod - <i>Gadus macrocephalus</i>
Atlantic cod - <i>Gadus morhua</i>	Pacific herring - <i>Clupea harengus pallasii</i>
Atlantic halibut - <i>Hippoglossus hippoglossus</i>	Pacific hake - <i>Merluccius productus</i>
Atlantic herring - <i>Clupea harengus</i>	pink salmon - <i>Oncorhynchus gorbuscha</i>
Atlantic lumpfish - <i>Cyclopterus lumpus</i>	plaice - <i>Pleuronectes platessa</i>
Atlantic salmon - <i>Salmo salar</i>	rainbow trout - <i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i>
big skate - <i>Raja colliei</i>	sea trout - <i>Salmo trutta</i>
bluegill sunfish - <i>Lepomis macrochirus</i>	shiner perch- <i>Cymatogaster aggregata</i>
brook trout - <i>Salvelinus fontinalis</i>	Siamese fighting fish - <i>Betta splendens</i>
brown trout - <i>Salmo trutta</i>	silversides - <i>Menidia menidia</i>
chinook salmon- <i>Oncorhynchus tshawytscha</i>	snoek - <i>Thyrssites atun</i>
chum salmon - <i>Oncorhynchus keta</i>	sockeye salmon - <i>Oncorhynchus nerka</i>
coho salmon - <i>Oncorhynchus kisutch</i>	speckled sanddab - <i>Citharichthys stigmaeus</i>
copper rockfish - <i>Sebastes caurinus</i>	spiny dogfish - <i>Squalus acanthias</i>
cutthroat trout - <i>Oncorhynchus clarki</i>	spotted ratfish - <i>Hydrolagus colliei</i>
grayling - <i>Thymallus thymallus</i>	sprat - <i>Sprattus sprattus</i>
greenling - <i>Hexagrammos</i> sp.	steelhead trout - <i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i>
eulachon - <i>Thaleichthys pacificus</i>	tubesnout - <i>Aulorhynchus flavidus</i>
haddock - <i>Melanogrammus aeglefinus</i>	threespine stickleback - <i>Gasterosteus aculeatus</i>
Japanese flounder - <i>Paralichthys olivaceus</i>	walleye pollock - <i>Theragra chalcogramma</i>
Japanese yellowtail - <i>Seriola quinqueradiata</i>	yamame salmon - <i>Oncorhynchus masou</i>
kokanee salmon - <i>Oncorhynchus nerka</i>	
lumpfish - <i>Cyclopterus lumpus</i>	

---

## APPENDIX III - PRESERVATIVES AND CULTURE MEDIA

### Lugol's Preservative

Dissolve 100 g potassium iodide in 1 L distilled water. Then dissolve 50 g crystalline iodine into the solution. Finally, add 100 ml glacial acetic acid. Any precipitate is removed by filtration or decanting. Lugol's is added to the sample until the sample has a weak tea color (about 1 drop/ml).

### Davidson's solution

95% ethanol 300 ml  
formalin 200 ml  
glacial acetic acid 100 ml  
distilled water 300 ml

### Millonig's buffer for electron microscopy

Solution A 2.62 %  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$   
Solution B 2.52 % NaOH

#### Working solution:

Mix 83 ml Solution A with 17 ml Solution B.  
Adjust pH to 7.4 with 10 N NaOH or concentrated HCl.

For transmission electron microscopy of fish tissues, we generally prepare 4% glutaraldehyde in Millonig's buffer. Fix at small pieces of tissue at room temperature for 2 h, then hold overnight at 4 °C. Transfer to Millonig's buffer without glutaraldehyde.

### 50% Seawater-Cytophaga Medium

tryptone 0.5 g  
yeast extract 0.5 g  
sodium acetate 0.2 g  
beef extract 0.2 g  
agar 11.0 g

#### add above to:

filtered sea water 500 ml  
distilled water 500 ml

autoclave and pour into sterile petri dishes.

### LEISHMAN'S GIEMSA

This stain is useful for examining protozoa, bacteria and cell morphology in tissue imprints.

*Leishman's.* Add 1 g Leishman's stain to 500 ml absolute methanol and filter.

*Giemsa Stock Solution.* Add 1 g powder to 66 ml of glycerol and heat at 60 °C for one hour. Then add 66 ml of absolute methanol and filter. Store at 40 °C.

#### Phosphate Buffer Solutions.

Solution A - 31.20 g  $\text{NaH}_2\text{PO}_4$ , 2  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in 1 L distilled water  
Solution B - 53.65 g  $\text{Na}_2\text{HPO}_4$ , 7  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  in 1 L distilled water

#### Giemsa Working Solution.

To prepare phosphate buffer, mix 73.5 ml solution A with 26.5 ml solution B. Then add 100 ml distilled water.

Add 3.5 ml stock solution to 50 ml phosphate buffer (pH 6.4).  
Make fresh for each use.

#### Staining Procedure:

1. Prepare smear or imprint and allow to dry for about 1/2 hour.
2. Fix in methanol for 2-5 min.
3. Stain in Leishman's for 2-3 min.
4. Stain in Giemsa for 10-12 min.
5. Rinse in distilled water for about 1 min.
6. Air dry.

## REFERENCES

- Albright, L.J., S. Johnson, and A. Yousif. 1992. Temporal and spatial distribution of the harmful diatoms *Chaetoceros concavicornis* and *Chaetoceros convolutus* along the British Columbia coast. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 49: 1924-1931.
- Albright, L.J., C.Z. Yang, and S. Johnson. 1993. Sub-lethal concentrations of the harmful diatoms, *Chaetoceros concavicornis* and *C. convolutus*, increase mortality rates of penned Pacific salmon. *Aquaculture* 117: 215-225.
- Almendras, F.E. 1996. Transmission and pathogenesis of *Piscirickettsia salmonis* in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). M Sc Thesis. Atlantic Veterinary College, Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island, Canada.
- Almendras, F.E., and I.Carmen Fuentealba. 1997. Salmonid rickettsial septicemia caused by *Piscirickettsia salmonis*: a review. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 29: 137-144.
- Almendras, F.E., I.C. Fuentealba, S.R.M. Jones, F. Markham, and E. Spangler. 1997. Experimental infection and horizontal transmission of *Piscirickettsia salmonis* in freshwater-raised Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. *J. Fish Dis.* 20: 409-418.
- Amend, D.F., and V.C. Chambers. 1970a. Morphology of certain viruses of salmonid fishes. I. In vitro studies of some viruses causing hematopoietic necrosis. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 27: 1285-1293.
- Amend, D.F., and V.C. Chambers. 1970b. Morphology of certain viruses of salmonid fishes. II. In vivo studies of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 27: 1385-1388.
- Amend, D.F., W.T. Yasutake, and R.W. Mead. 1969. A hematopoietic virus disease of rainbow trout and sockeye salmon. *Trans Am. Fish. Soc.* 98: 796-804.
- Amin, A., and J. Trasti. 1988. Endomyocarditis in Atlantic salmon in Norwegian sea farms. A case report. *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Path.* 8(4): 70-71.
- Amos, K.H. 1985. Procedures for the detection and identification of certain fish pathogens. 3rd ed. Corvallis; Fish Health Section, American Fisheries Society, pp. 6-10.
- Amos, K.H., K.A. Hopper, and L. LeVander. 1989. Absence of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in adult sockeye salmon. *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 1: 281-282.
- Anacker, R.L., and E.J. Ordal. 1959. Studies on the myxobacterium *Chondrococcus columnaris* I. Serological typing. *J. Bacteriol.* 78: 25-32.
- Andersen, R.J., H.A. Luu, D.Z.X. Chen, C.F.B. Holmes, M.L. Kent, M. Le Blanc, F.J.R. Taylor, and D.E. Williams. 1993. Chemical and biological evidence links microcystin-LR to salmon 'netpen liver disease'. *Toxicol.* 31: 1315-1323.
- Anderson, E.D., Mourich, D.V., Fahrenkrug, S.E., S. E. LaPatra, S. Shepard, J.C. Leong. 1996. Genetic immunization of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) against hematopoietic necrosis virus. *Mol. Mar. Biol. Biotechnol.* 5: 114-122.
- Anderson, J.I.W., and D.A. Conroy. 1969. The pathogenic myxobacteria with special reference to fish diseases. *J. Appl. Bacteriol.* 32: 30-39.
- Anderson, J.W., and D.A. Conroy. 1970. Vibrio disease in fishes. pp. 266-272. In S.F. Snieszko [ed.] *Diseases of Fishes and Shellfishes*. Am. Fish. Soc. Spec. Publ. 5, Washington, D.C.
- Anonymous. 1984. Department of Fisheries and Oceans. (1984). Fish health protection regulations: manual of compliance. *Fish. Mar. Serv. Misc. Spec. Publ.* 31 (Revised) Ottawa, pp. 24-27.
- Anonymous. 1991. Scottish farmers take a long view on louse control. *Fish Farmers Intl.* 14 (6): 45.
- Anonymous. 1996. Proceedings of the Mouthrot Workshop. Campbell River, British Columbia 12 Oct. 1995. B.C. Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries, and Food, Commercial Fisheries Branch. Seafood Indust. Dev. Rep. 96-01. 26 pp.
- Appy, R.G., M.D.B. Burt, and T.J. Morris. 1976. Viral nature of piscine erythrocytic necrosis (PEN) in the blood of Atlantic cod (*Gadus morhua*). *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 33:1380-1385.
- Arakawa, C.K., R.E. Deering, K.H. Higman, K.H. Oshima, P.J. O'Hara, and J.R. Winton. 1990. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification of a nucleoprotein gene sequence of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 8: 165-170.
- Arkush, K. 1997. Zoosporulation of the rosette agent. *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter* 25(1): 8.
- Armstrong, R., J. Robinson, C. Rymes, and T. Needham. 1993. Infectious hematopoietic necrosis in Atlantic salmon in British Columbia. *Can. Vet. J.* 34: 312-313.
- Aulestad, D., and A. Kittelsen. 1971. Abnormal body curvature of rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) inbred fry. *J. Fish. Res. Bd. Can.* 28: 1918-1920.
- Aune, T., O.M. Skulberg, and B. Underdal. 1992. A toxic phytoflagellate bloom of *Chrysochromulina cf. leadbeateri* in coastal waters in the North of Norway, May-June 1991. *Ambio* 21: 471-474.
- Austin, B. 1985. Evaluation of antimicrobial compounds for the control of bacterial kidney disease in rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson. *J. Fish Dis.* 8: 209-220.
- Austin, B., and D.A. Austin. 1987. Bacterial fish pathogens: Disease in farmed and wild fish. John Wiley & Sons, Toronto. 364 p.
- Austin, B., and D.A. Austin. 1993. Bacterial fish pathogens: Disease in farmed and wild fish. Second edition. Ellis Horwood, Chichester.
- Austin, B., T.M. Embley, and M. Goodfellow. 1983. Selective isolation of *Renibacterium salmoninarum*. *FEMS Microbiol. Lett.* 17: 111-114.
- Awakura, T. 1980. On the parasites and parasitic disease of salmonid fish in Hokkaido. *Fish Pathol.* 14: 207-209. (In Japanese.)
- Awakura, T. 1983. Fish disease in Hokkaido - 23. Rociellosis of coho salmon. *Uo to Mizu* 21: 28-29. (In Japanese.)
- Ayres, P.A., D.D. Seaton, and P.B. Tett. 1982. Plankton blooms of economic importance to fisheries in U.K. waters 1968-1982. *Int. Council Expl. Sea, ICES CM 1982/L38*, 12 pp.
- Barja, J.L., and A.E. Toranzo. 1993. Myoliquefaction post-mortem caused by the myxosporean *Kudoa thyrssites* in reared Atlantic salmon in Spain. *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish. Pathol.* 13: (3): 86-88.
- Barlough JE, T.S. McDowell, A. Milani, L. Bigornia, S.B. Slemenda, N.J. Pieniazek, R.P. Hedrick. 1995. Nested polymerase chain reaction for detection of *Enterocytozoon salmonis* genomic DNA in chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *Dis Aquat Org* 23:17-23.
- Batts, W.N., M.L. Landolt, and J.R. Winton. 1991. Inactivation of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus by low levels of iodine. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 57: 1379-1385.
- Baudin Laurencin, F., and N. Bennisr. 1993. Post-mortem liquefaction of sea water farmed brown trout *Salmo trutta* resulting from *Kudoa* infections. In: *Diseases of Fish and Shellfish, Book of Abstracts*. p. 60. Sixth Intl. Conf. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. Brest, France 5-10 Sept. 1993.
- Baxa, D.V., K. Kawai, and R. Kusuda. 1987. Experimental infection of *Flexibacter maritimus* in black sea bream (*Acanthopagrus schlegeli*) fry. *Fish Pathol.* 22: 105-109
- Baxa, D.V., K. Kawai, and R. Kusuda. 1986. Characteristics of gliding bacteria isolated from diseased cultured flounder, *Paralichthys olivaceus*. *Fish Pathol.* 21: 251-258
- Baxa-Antonio, D., J.M. Groff, and R.P. Hedrick. 1992. Experimental horizontal transmission of *Enterocytozoon salmonis* to chinook salmon, *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *J. Protozool.* 39: 699-702.
- Becker, C.D. 1977. Flagellate parasites of fish. pp. 358-416. In J. P. Kreier [ed.]. *Parasitic Protozoa*. Vol. 1. Academic Press, New York.
- Bell, G.R. 1961. Penetration of spines from a marine diatom into the gill tissue of lingcod (*Ophiodon elongatus*). *Nature* 192: 279-280.
- Bell, G.R., and G.S. Traxler. 1985. First record of viral erythrocytic necrosis and *Ceratomyxa shasta* Noble, 1950 (Myxozoa; Myxosporidia) in feral pink salmon *Oncorhynchus gorbuscha* (Walbaum). *J. Wildl. Dis.* 21: 169-171.

## References

- Bell, G.R., W. Griffioen, and O. Kennedy. 1974. Mortalities of pen-reared salmon associated with blooms of marine algae. In: Proc. Northwest Fish Culture Conf., Seattle Wash., pp. 58-60.
- Bell, J.G., A.H. McVicar, and C.B. Cowey. 1987. Pyruvate kinase isozymes in farmed Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*): Pyruvate kinase and antioxidant parameters in pancreas disease. *Aquaculture* 66: 33-41.
- Berland, B. 1987. Helminth problems in sea-water aquaculture. pp. 56-62. In A. Stenmark and G. Malmberg [eds.]. *Parasites and Diseases in Natural Waters and Aquaculture in Nordic Countries*. Zoo-Tax, Naturhistoriska Riksmuseet, Stockholm, Sweden.
- Berland, B. 1989. Identification of larval nematodes from fish. In H. Moller [ed.]. *Nematode Problems in North Atlantic Fish*. Report from a Workshop in Kiel. 3-4 April 1989. *Int. Conc. Explor. Sea C.M./F:6*: 16-22.
- Berland, B. 1994. Current fish parasite problems - Scandinavia and adjacent area. 8th International Congress of Parasitology, 10-14 October 1994, Izmir, Turkey. Abstracts, Vol. 1: 52.
- Berland, B., and G.A. Bristow. 1994. The cestode *Eubothrium* sp. in farmed marine salmon. 8th International Congress of Parasitology, 10-14 October 1994, Izmir, Turkey. Abstracts, Vol. 1: 53.
- Berland, B., and E. Egidius. 1980. Rundmark I oppdrettsfisk -- storer problem enn antatt? Norsk Fiskeoppdrett. Medlemsblad for Norske Fiskeoppdretteres Forening 5(3 - Juni 1980): 16[in Norwegian].
- Bernardet, J.-F., P. Segers, M. Vancanneyt, F. Berthe, K. Kersters, and P. Vandamme. 1996. Cutting a Gordian knot: emended classification and description of the Genus *Flavobacterium*, emended description of the family *Flavobacteriaceae*, and proposal of *Flavobacterium hydatiis* nom. nov. (basonym, *Cytophaga aquatilis* Strohl and Tait 1978). *Intl. J. Syst. Bacteriol.* Jan. 1996, p. 128-148.
- Bernardet, J.F., A.C. Campbell, and J.A. Buswell. 1990. *Flexibacter maritimus* is the agent of 'black patch necrosis' in Dover sole in Scotland. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 8: 233-237.
- Bemth, E.-M., A. E. Ellis, P.J. Midtlyng, G. Olivier, and P. Smith. 1997. (eds.) *Furunculosis - Multidisciplinary Fish Disease Research*, Academic Press, San Diego, 529 p.
- Bier, J.W., T.L. Deardorff, G.J. Jackson, and R.B. Raybourne. 1987. Human anisakiasis. In: Z.S. Pawlowski (ed). *Bailliere's clinical tropical medicine and communicable diseases*. Vol. 2. *Intestinal helminth infections*. Bailliere Tindall Ltd. London. pp. 723-733.
- Bjordal, A. 1988. Cleaning symbiosis between wrasses (Labridae) and lice infested salmon (*Salmo salar*) in mariculture. *Intl. Coun. Expl. Sea, Maricult. Committ., C.M.* 1988/F:17. 8 pp.
- Bjordal, A. 1990. Sea lice infestation on farmed salmon: Possible use of cleaner-fish as an alternative method for de-lousing. In R. L. Saunders [ed.]. *Proceedings of Canada-Norway Finfish Aquaculture Workshop*, September 11-14, 1989. *Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 1761: 85-89.
- Black, E.A. 1991. Recent information on managing salmon farm risks associated with blooms of *Heterosigma akashiwo*. *ICES, CM1991/F24*, 24 pp.
- Black, E.A., J.N.C. Whyte, J.W. Bagshaw, and N.G. Ginther. 1991. The effects of *Heterosigma akashiwo* on juvenile *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* and its implications for fish culture. *J. Appl. Ichthyol.* 7: 168-175.
- Blazer, V.S. and R.E. Wolke. 1979. An *Exophiala*-like fungus as the cause of a systemic mycosis of marine fish. *J. Fish Dis.* 2: 145-152.
- Borg, A. 1960. Studies on myxobacteria associated with diseases in salmonid fishes. *Wildl. Dis. (microfiche)* 8: 1-85 (2 microcards).
- Bower, S.M. 1995. Differences in acquired and innate resistance among Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus* spp.) against the hemoflagellate *Cryptobia salmositica* and numbers delivered by the leech vector *Piscicola salmositica*. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 52 (Suppl. 1): 1-6.
- Bower, S.M., and L. Margolis. 1983a. Detection of infection and susceptibility of different Pacific salmon stocks (*Oncorhynchus* spp.) to the hemoflagellate *Cryptobia salmositica*. *J. Parasitol.* 70: 273-278.
- Bower, S.M., and L. Margolis. 1983b. Direct transmission of the hemoflagellate *Cryptobia salmositica* among Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus* spp.). *Can. J. Zool.* 61: 1242-1250.
- Bower, S.M., and L. Margolis. 1985. Effects of temperature and salinity on the course of infection with the hemoflagellate *Cryptobia salmositica* in juvenile Pacific salmon, *Oncorhynchus* spp. *J. Fish Dis.* 8:25-33.
- Bower, S.M., R.E. Withler, and B.E. Riddell. 1995. Genetic variation in resistance to the hemoflagellate *Cryptobia salmositica* in coho and sockeye salmon. *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 7: 185-194.
- Bowser, P.R., and J.W. Casey. 1993. Retroviruses of fish. *Ann. Rev. Fish Dis.* 2: 209-224.
- Boxaspen, K. and J.C. Holm. 1991a. New biocides used against sea lice compared to organo-phosphorous compounds. pp. 393-402. In N. De Pauw and J. Joyce [eds.]. *Aquaculture and the Environment*. European Aquaculture Society Special Publication No. 16, Belgium.
- Boxaspen, K., and J.C. Holm. 1991b. Blomsterekstrakt som avslusingsmiddel for laks [Extract from chrysanthemum flowers as a delousing agent against salmon lice]. *Fiskets Gang* 77: (7/8): 17-19.
- Boyce, N.P. 1979. Effects of *Eubothrium salvelini* (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) on the growth and vitality of sockeye salmon, *Oncorhynchus nerka*. *Can. J. Zool.* 57: 597- 602.
- Boyce, N.P., and B. Behrens-Yamada. 1977. Effects of a parasite, *Eubothrium salvelini* (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea), on the resistance of juvenile sockeye salmon, *Oncorhynchus nerka*, to zinc. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 34: 706 - 709.
- Boyce, N.P., and W.C. Clarke. 1983. *Eubothrium salvelini* (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) impairs seawater adaptation of migrant sockeye yearlings (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) from Babine Lake, British Columbia. *Can. J. Aquat. Sci.* 40: 821 - 824.
- Boyce, N.P., Z. Kabata, and L. Margolis. 1985. Investigations of the distribution, detection, and biology of *Henneguya salminicola* (Protozoa, Myxozoa), a parasite of the flesh of Pacific salmon. *Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 1405. 55 pp.
- Boyce, N.P.J. 1974. Biology of *Eubothrium salvelini* (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidae), a parasite of juvenile sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) of Babine Lake, British Columbia. *J. Fish Res. Board Can.* 31: 1735 - 1742.
- Brackett, J., G. Newbound, and D. Speare. 1991. A fall survey of saltwater morbidity and mortality of farmed salmon in British Columbia. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries, Victoria, B.C.
- Brackett, J., G. Newbound, M. Coombs, H. Ferguson, and D. Speare. 1990. A winter survey of saltwater morbidity and mortality in farmed salmon in British Columbia. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries, Victoria, B.C..
- Bradley, T.M., C.M. Newcomer and K.O. Maxwell. 1988. Epitheliocystis associated with massive mortalities of cultured lake trout *Salvelinus namaycush*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 4: 9-17.
- Brandal, P.O., and E. Egidius. 1977. Preliminary report on oral treatments against salmon lice *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*, with Neguvon. *Aquaculture* 18: 177-178.
- Brandal, P.O., and E. Egidius. 1979. Treatment of salmon lice (*Lepeophtheirus salmonis* Kroeyer, 1838) with Neguvon® - description of method and equipment. *Aquaculture* 18: 183-188.
- Brandal, P.O., E. Egidius, and I. Romslo. 1976. Host blood: a major food component for the parasitic copepod *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* Kroeyer, 1838 (Crustacea: Caligidae). *Nor. J. Biol.* 24: 341-343.
- Branson, E.J., and D. Nieto Diaz-Munoz. 1991. Description of a new disease condition occurring in farmed coho salmon, *Oncorhynchus kisutch* (Walbaum), in South America. *J. Fish Dis.* 14: 147-156.
- Bravo, S. 1994. First report of *Piscirickettsia salmonis* in freshwater. *Fish Health Section/American fisheries Society Newsletter* 22 (1): 6.
- Bravo, S. 1996. *Enterocytozoon salmonis* in Chile. *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter* 24(1): 12-13.
- Bryan, R.T., A. Cali, R.L. Owen, H.C. Spencer. 1990. Microsporidia: Opportunistic pathogens in patients with AIDS. In: T. Sun (ed.). *Progress in clinical parasitology* Vol 2. Field & Wood, Philadelphia. pp. 1-26.
- Brett, J.R., W. Griffioen, and A. Solmie. 1978. The 1977 crop of salmon reared on the Pacific Biological Station experimental fishfarm. *Fish. Mar. Ser. Tech. Rep.* 845. 17 pp.

- Bristow, G.A., and B. Berland. 1991b. The effect of long term, low level *Eubothrium* sp. (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea) infection on growth of farmed salmon (*Salmo salar* L.). *Aquaculture* 98: 325-330.
- Bristow, G.A., and B. Berland. 1991a. A report on some metazoan parasites of wild marine salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) from the west coast of Norway with comments on their interactions with farmed salmon. *Aquaculture* 98: 311-318.
- Brocklebank, J.R., D.J. Speare, and M.L. Kent. 1995. Microsporidian encephalitis of farmed Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) in British Columbia. *Can. Vet. J.* 36: 631-633.
- Brocklebank, J.R., D.J. Speare, R.D. Armstrong, and T.P.T. Evelyn. 1993. Rickettsial septicemia in farmed Atlantic and chinook salmon: Clinical presentation and experimental transmission. *Can. Vet. J.* 34: 745-748.
- Bron, J.E., C. Sommerville, M. Jones, and G.H. Rae. 1991. The settlement and attachment of early stages of the salmon louse, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae) on the salmon host *Salmo salar*. *J. Zool.* 224: 201-212.
- Bron, J.E., C. Sommerville, and G.H. Rae. 1993a. Aspects of the behaviour of copepodid larvae of the salmon louse *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Kroyer, 1837). pp. 125-142. In G.A. Boxshall, and D. DeFaye [eds.]. *Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice*. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Bron, J.E., C. Sommerville, and G.H. Rae. 1993b. The functional morphology of the alimentary canal of larval stages of the parasitic copepod *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*. *J. Zool. Lond.* 230: 207-220.
- Bron, J.E., C. Sommerville, R. Wootten, and G.H. Rae. 1993c. Fallowing of marine Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., farms as a method for the control of sea lice, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Kroyer, 1837). *J. Fish Dis.* 16: 487-493.
- Brown, L.L., L.J. Albright, and T.P.T. Evelyn. 1990. Control of vertical transmission of *Renibacterium salmoninarum* by injection of antibiotics into maturing female coho salmon *Oncorhynchus kisutch*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 9: 127-131.
- Brown, L.L., G.K. Iwama, T.P.T. Evelyn, W.S. Nelson, and R.P. Levine. 1994. Use of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) to detect DNA from *Renibacterium salmoninarum* within individual salmonid eggs. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 18: 165-171.
- Brown, L.L., T.P.T. Evelyn, G.K. Iwama, W.S. Nelson, and R.P. Levine. 1995. Bacterial species other than *Renibacterium salmoninarum* cross-react with antisera against *R. salmoninarum* but are negative for the p57 gene of *R. salmoninarum* as detected by the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 21: 227-231.
- Bruno, D., and T.T. Poppe. 1996. A colour atlas of salmonid diseases. Academic Press, London: 140-141.
- Bruno, D.W. 1986. Histopathology of bacterial kidney disease in laboratory infected rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson, and Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., with reference to naturally infected fish. *J. Fish Disease* 9: 523-537.
- Bruno, D.W. 1987. The risk to farmed Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., from marine mussels growing on net cages. *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish. Pathol.* 7: 121-123.
- Bruno, D.W. 1989. Freshwater and marine mussels and their effects upon farmed fish. *Aquacult. Info. Ser. 6 Dept. Agricult. Fish. Scot., Aberdeen.*
- Bruno, D.W. 1992. The use of hydrogen peroxide (H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub>) to remove sea lice from farmed Atlantic salmon. First European Conference on Crustacea, Paris, September, 1992. p. 19.
- Bruno, D.W., R.O. Collins, and C.M. Morrison. 1995. The occurrence of *Loma salmonae* (Protozoa: Microspora) in farmed rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* Walbaum, in Scotland. *Aquaculture* 133: 341-344.
- Bruno, D.W., G. Dear, and D.D. Seaton. 1989. Mortality associated with phytoplankton blooms among farmed Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., in Scotland. *Aquaculture* 78: 217-222.
- Bruno, D.W., T.S. Hastings, and A.E. Ellis. 1986. Histology, bacteriology, and experimental transmission of cold water vibriosis in Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 1: 163-168.
- Bruno, D.W., and R.S. Raynard. 1994. Studies on the use of hydrogen peroxide as a method for the control of sea lice on Atlantic salmon. *Aqua. Int.* 2: 10-18.
- Bruno, D.W., and J. Stone. 1990. The role of saithe, *Pollachius virens* L., as a host for the sea lice, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* [sic] Kroeyer and *Caligus elongatus* Nordmann. *Aquaculture* 89: 201-207.
- Bruslé, J. 1995. The impact of harmful algal blooms on finfish, mortality, pathology and toxicology. IFREMER Rep. Pres. Ocean. Jan No. 10, 75 pp.
- Buchmann, K., and A. Uldal. 1994. Effects of eyefluke infections on growth of rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) in a mariculture system. *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol.* 14: 104-107.
- Bullock, A.M., and D.A. Robertson. 1982. A note on the occurrence of *Ichthyobodo necator* (Henneguy, 1883) in a wild population of juvenile plaice, *Pleuronectes platessa* L. *J. Fish Dis.* 5: 531-533.
- Bullock, G.L., and H.M. Stuckey. 1975a. Fluorescent antibody identification and detection of the *Corynebacterium* causing kidney disease of salmonids. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 32: 2224-2227.
- Bullock, G.L., B.R. Griffin, and H.M. Stuckey. 1980. Detection of *Corynebacterium salmoninus* by direct antibody fluorescent antibody test. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 37: 719-721.
- Bullock, G.L., and H.M. Stuckey. 1975b. *Aeromonas salmonicida*: detection of asymptotically infected trout. *Prog. Fish-Cult.* 37: 237-239.
- Bullock, G.L., D.A. Conroy, and S.F. Snieszko. 1971. Bacterial diseases of fishes. In: *Diseases of fishes*, ed. S.F. Snieszko and H.R. Axelrod. TFH Publications, Neptune, N.J.
- Bullock, G.L., H.M. Stuckey, and D. Mulcahy. 1978. Corynebacterial kidney disease: egg transmission following iodophore disinfection. *Fish Health News* 7: 51-52.
- Bullock, G.L., R.R. Rucker, D. Amend, K. Wolf, and H.M. Stuckey. 1976. Infectious pancreatic necrosis: transmission with iodine-treated and non-treated eggs of brook trout (*Salvelinus fontinalis*) *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 33(6):1197-1198.
- Burkitt, D. 1969. Etiology of Burkitt's lymphoma - An alternative hypothesis to a vectored virus. *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 42: 19-28.
- Burridge, L.E., and K. Haya. 1993. The lethality of ivermectin, a potential agent for treatment of salmonids against sea lice, to the shrimp *Crangon septemspinosa*. *Aquaculture* 117: 9-14.
- Burt, M.D.B. 1994. The sealworm situation. pp. 347-362. In M.E. Scott and G. Smith [eds.]. *Parasitic and Infectious Diseases: Epidemiology and Ecology*. Academic Press Inc., San Diego, California.
- Bustos, P., P. Entrala, J. Montana, J. Calbuayahue. 1994. Septicemia rickettsial salmonídea (SRS): Estudio de transmisión vertical en salmón coho (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). Seminario Internacional "Patología y Nutrición en el desarrollo de la Acuicultura: Factores de éxito. Fundación Chile. 3-7 Oct. 1994. Puerto Montt, Chile.
- Bylund, G., E.T. Valtonen, and E. Niemelä. 1980. Observations on epidermal papillomata in wild and cultured Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* L. in Finland. *J. Fish Dis.* 3: 525-528.
- Byrne, P.J., D.D. MacPhee, V.E. Ostland, G. Johnson, and H.W. Ferguson. 1998. Hemorrhagic kidney syndrome of Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. *J. Fish Dis.* 21: 81-91.
- Cameron, D.E. 1993. Amoebic gill disease field research 1992/93. *Proceed. Saltas Res. Rev. Sem.* 29 April 1993, Hobart, Australia. pp. 89 - 102.
- Cameron, D.E. 1994. AGD Field Research 1993/94. III. Field testing of hydrogen peroxide with AGD-infected Atlantic salmon: - Efficacy and toxicity. *Rep. Saltas 1993/94 Research and Development Programme.* Hobart, Australia. pp. 119 - 102.
- Canning, E.U., and J. Lom. 1986. *The Microsporidia of Vertebrates*. Academic Press, New York. 289 pp.
- Carlisle, J.C. 1977. An epidermal papilloma of the Atlantic salmon II: ultrastructure and etiology. *J. Wildl. Dis.* 13: 235-239.
- Carlisle, J.C., and R.J. Roberts. 1977. An epidermal papilloma of the Atlantic salmon. I. epizootiology, pathology and immunology. *J. Wildl. Dis.* 13:230-243.
- Carvajal, J., Ruiz, and G., González, L. 1990a. Histologías branquiales presentes en salmónes coho (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) y Atlánticos (*Salmo salar*) en condiciones de cultivo en el sur de Chile. *Med. Amb.* 11: 53-58.

## References

- Carvajal, J., Ruiz, and G., González, L. 1990b. Presencia de *Hysterothylacium* sp. (Nematoda:Anisakidae) en salmón coho de Chiloé cultivado en jaulas. Rev. Chil. Histor. Nat. 63: 165-168.
- Caswell-Reno, P., V. Lipipun, P.W. Reno, and B.L. Nicolson. 1989. Use of group-reactive and other monoclonal antibodies in an enzyme immunodot assay for identification and presumptive serotyping of aquatic birnaviruses. J. Clin. Microbiol. 27: 1924-1929.
- Cavalier-Smith, T., and M.T.E. Paula Allsopp. 1996. *Corallochytrium*, an enigmatic non-flagellate protozoan related to choanoflagellates. Eurp. J. Protisol. 32: 306-310.
- Cawthorn, R.J., S. Backman, J.O'Halloran, D. Groman, and D. Speare. 1991. *Perkinsus* sp. (*Apicomplexa*) in farmed Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). Bull. Aquacult. Assoc. Can. 91: 61-63.
- Chang, F.H., C. Anderson, and N.C. Boustead. 1990. First record of *Heterosigma* (Raphidophyceae) bloom with associated mortality of cage reared salmon in Big Glory Bay, New Zealand. New Zealand J. Mar. and Freshwater Res. 24: 461-469.
- Chang, F.H., R. Pridmore, and N. Boustead. 1993. Occurrence and distribution of *Heterosigma* cd. *akashio* (Raphidophyceae) in a 1989 bloom in Big Glory Bay, New Zealand. In T.J. Smayda and Y. Shimizu [eds.]. Toxic Phytoplankton Blooms in the Sea, , pp. 675-680. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Chilmonczyk, S., W.T. Cox, and R.P. Hedrick. 1991. *Enterocytozoon salmonis* n. sp.: An intranuclear microsporidium from salmonid fish. J. Protozool. 38: 264-269.
- Christie, K.E. 1996. Immunization with viral and parasitic antigens: Infectious pancreatic necrosis. Book of abstracts, Intl. Symp. Fish Vaccinol. 5-7 June 1996.
- Cisar, J.O., and J.L. Fryer. 1969. An epizootic of vibriosis in chinook salmon. Bull. Wildl. Dis. Assoc. 5: 73-76.
- Clément, A. 1994. Harmful blooms of *Leptocylindrus minimus* in southern Chile. Harmful Algae News 8:1.
- Clément, A., and G. Lembeye. 1993. Phytoplankton monitoring program in the fish farming region of south Chile. pp. 223-228. In T.J. Smayda and Y. Shimizu [eds.]. Toxic Phytoplankton Blooms in the Sea. Elsevier Science Publ.
- Colwell, R.R., and D.J. Grimes. 1984. *Vibrio* diseases of marine fish populations. Helgol. Meeresunters. 37: 265-287.
- Cone, D.K., and M. Wiles. 1984. *Ichthyobodo necator* (Henneguy, 1883) from winter flounder, *Pseudopleuronectes americanus* (Walbaum), in the north-west Atlantic Ocean. J. Fish Dis. 7: 87-89.
- Cornick, J.W., C.M. Morrison, B. Zwicker, and G. Shum. 1984. Atypical *Aeromonas salmonicida* infection in Atlantic cod, *Gadus morhua* L. J. Fish. Dis. 7: 495-499.
- Costello, M.J. 1993. Review of methods to control sea lice (Caligidae: Crustacea) infestations of salmon (*Salmo salar*) farms. pp. 219-252. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye, D. [eds.]. Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Costello, M., J. Costelloe, and N. Roche. 1996. Planktonic dispersion of larval salmon-lice *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*, associated with cultured salmon, *Salmo salar*, in western Ireland. J. Mar. Biol. Ass. U.K. 76: 141-149.
- Cressey, R. 1978. Marine flora and fauna of the Northeastern United States. Crustacea: Branchiura. NOAA Tech. Rep. NMFS Circ. 413: 1-9.
- Cusack, R., and G. Johnson. 1990. A study of dichlorvos (Nuven, 2,2-dichloroethyldimethyl phosphate) a therapeutic agent for the treatment of salmonid infected with sea lice (*Lepeophtheirus salmonis*). Aquaculture 90: 101-112.
- Cvitanich, J.D. 1994. Improvements in the direct fluorescent antibody technique for the detection, identification, and quantification of *Renibacterium salmoninarum* in salmonid kidney smears. J. Aquat. Animal Health 6: 1-12.
- Cvitanich, J.D., N.O. Gárate, P.C. Silva, V.M. Andrade, P.C. Figueroa, C.E. Smith. 1995. Isolation of a new rickettsia-like organism from Atlantic salmon in Chile. Am. Fish. Soc./Fish Health Newslett. 23:1-3.
- Cvitanich, J.D., O. Garate, and C.E. Smith. 1991. The isolation of a rickettsia-like organism causing disease and mortality in Chilean salmonids and its confirmation by Koch's postulate. J. Fish Dis. 14: 121-145.
- Dahl, E., and K. Tangen. 1993. Twenty five years experience with *Gyrodinium aureolum* in Norwegian waters. pp. 15-21. In T. J. Smayda and Y. Shimizu [eds.]. Toxic Phytoplankton Blooms in the Sea. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Dahl, E., T.S. Danielssen, and B. Sohle. 1982. Mass occurrence of *Gyrodinium aureolum* and fish mortality along the Southern coast of Norway in September-October 1981. Int. Council Expl. Sea, CM 1982/L 56: 1-14.
- Daly, J.G., and R.M.W. Stevenson. 1985. Charcoal agar, a new growth medium for the fish disease bacterium *Renibacterium salmoninarum*. Appl. Environ. Microbiol. 50: 868-871.
- Dannevig B.H., K. Falk, and E. Namork. 1995. Isolation of the causal virus of infectious salmon anaemia (ISA) in a long-term cell line from Atlantic salmon head kidney. J. Gen. Virol. 76: 1353-1359.
- Davie, P.S., and H. Thorarensen. 1996. Coronary arteriosclerosis in rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum), is related to heart size rather than sex or reproductive status. J. Fish Dis. 19: 283-288.
- Davis, H.S. 1961. Culture and diseases of game fishes. University of California Press, Berkeley, CA. 332 p.
- Deardorff, T.L., and M.L. Kent. 1989. Prevalence of larval *Anisakis simplex* in pen-reared and wild-caught salmon (Salmonidae) from Puget Sound, Washington. J. Wildl. Dis. 25: 416-419.
- Deardorff, T.L., and R. Throm. 1988. Commercial blast-freezing of third-stage *Anisakis simplex* larvae encapsulated in salmon and rockfish. J. Parasitol. 74: 600-603.
- Deardorff, T.L., and R.M. Overstreet. 1990. Fish Zoonoses: The fishes, the dishes, and the worms. pp. 211-265. In D. Ward and C. Hackey [eds.]. Microbiology of Marine Food Products. Van Nostrand Reinhold, New York.
- Desportes, I., Y. Le Charpentier, A. Galian, F. Bernard, B. Cochand-Priollet, A. Lavergne, P. Ravisse, and R. Modigliani. 1985. Occurrence of a new microsporidian: *Enterocytozoon bienewisi* n. g., n. sp., in the enterocytes of a human patient with AIDS. J. Protozool. 32: 250-254.
- Diamant, A. 1987. Ultrastructure and pathogenesis of *Ichthyobodo* sp. from wild common dab, *Limanda limanda* L., in the North Sea. J. Fish Dis. 10: 241-247.
- Dixon, P.F. 1987. Inhibition of infectious pancreatic necrosis virus infectivity by extracts of rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson, tissue. J. Fish. Dis. 10: 371-378.
- Dobson, D.P., and T.J. Tack. 1991. Evaluation of the dispersal of treatment solutions of dichlorvos from marine salmon pens. Aquaculture 95: 15-32.
- Docker, M.F., R.H. Devlin, J. Richard, M.L. Kent. 1997a. Sensitive and specific polymerase chain reaction assay for detection of *Loma salmonae* (Microsporea). Dis. Aquat. Org. 29: 13-20.
- Docker, M.F., M.L. Kent, D.M.L. Hervio, L. Weiss, A. Cali, and R.H. Devlin. 1997b. Ribosomal DNA sequence of *Nucleospora salmonis* Hedrick, Groff, and Baxa, 1991 (Microsporea: Enterocytozooidae): implications for phylogeny and nomenclature. J. Eurk. Microbiol. 44:55-60.
- Drinan, E.M., and H.D. Rodger. 1990. An occurrence of *Gnathia* sp., ectoparasitic isopods, on caged Atlantic salmon. Bull. Eur. Assoc. Fish. Pathol. 10: 141-142.
- Duncan, I.B. 1978. Evidence for an oncovirus in swimbladder fibrosarcoma of Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* L. J. Fish Dis. 1: 127-131.
- Eaton, W.D., and M.L. Kent. 1992. A retrovirus in chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) with plasmacytoid leukemia and evidence for the etiology of the disease. Cancer Res. 52: 6496-6500.
- Edvardsen, B., F. Moy, and E. Paasche. 1990. Hemolytic activity in extracts of *Chrysochromulina polylepis* grown at different levels of selenite and phosphate. pp. 284-289. In E. Graneli, B. Sundstroem, L. Edler, and D.M. Anderson [eds.]. Toxic Marine Phytoplankton. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Egan, B. 1989. Bloom slams Agamemnon Channel. Fish Farm News 2(10): 1, 6, 7, 9.
- Egan, B. 1989. Bloom strikes Washington. Fish Farm News 2(11): 1, 6.
- Egan, B.D. 1990. All dredged up and no place to go (disposal of farmed salmon killed by algal blooms, West Coast of Canada). Bull. Aquacult. Assoc. Can. 90: 7-15.
- Egidius, D., K. Andersen, E. Clausen, and J. Raa. 1981. Cold-water vibriosis or 'Hitra disease' in Norwegian salmonid farming. J. Fish. Dis. 4: 353-354.

- Egidius, E. 1987. Vibriosis: pathogenicity and pathology. A review. *Aquaculture* 67: 15-28.
- Egidius, E., and B. Moster. 1987. Effect of Neguvon® and Nuvan® on crabs (*Cancer pagurus*), lobster (*Homarus americanus*) and blue mussel (*Mytilus edulis*). *Aquaculture* 60: 165-168.
- Egidius, E., R. Wiik, K. Andersen, K.A. Hoff, and B. Hjeltmes. 1986. *Vibrio salmonicida* sp. nov., a new fish pathogen. *Int. J. Syst. Bacteriol.* 36: 518-520.
- El-Matbouli, M., and R.W. Hoffmann. 1991. Prevention of experimentally induced whirling disease in rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* by Fumagillin. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 10: 109-113.
- El-Matbouli, M., and R.W. Hoffmann. 1990. Experimental transmission of two *Myxobolus* spp. developing bisporogeny via tubificid worms. *Parasitol. Res.* 75: 461-464.
- Elliott, D.G., and T.Y. Barila. 1987. Membrane filtration-fluorescent antibody staining procedure for detecting and quantifying *Renibacterium salmoninarum* in coelomic fluid of chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). *Can. J. Fish. Aquatic. Sci.* 44: 206-210.
- Elliott, D.G., R.J. Pascho, and G.L. Bullock. 1989. Developments in the control of bacterial kidney disease of salmonid fishes. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 6: 201-215.
- Ellis, A.E., and R. Wootten. 1978. Costiasis of Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. smolts in seawater. *J. Fish Dis.* 1: 389-393.
- Elston, R., L. Harrell, and M. Wilkinson. 1986. Isolation and in vitro characteristics of chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) rosette agent. *Aquaculture* 56: 1-21.
- Elston, R.A., M.L. Kent, and L.H. Harrell. 1987. An intranuclear microsporidium associated with acute anemia in chinook salmon, *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *J. Protozool.* 34: 274-277.
- Enger, R., B. Husevlg, and J. Goksryr. 1989. Presence of *Vibrio salmonicida* in fish farm sediments. *Appl. Envir. Microb.* 55: 2815-2818.
- Enríquez, R. Avances en el control de leucemia linfoblástica en Chile. In: Seminario Internacional "Manejo de salud en la acuicultura: clave de éxito". Fundación Chile. 21-24 Oct. 1997. Puerto Montt, Chile.
- Erard-Le-Denn, E., and M. Ryckaert. 1989. Trout mortality associated to *Distephanus speculum*. pp. 137-143. In E. Graneli, B. Sundstroem, L. Edler, and D.M. Anderson [eds.]. *Toxic Marine Phytoplankton*. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Erdal, J.I., and L.J. Reitan. 1992. Immune response and protective immunity after vaccination of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) against furunculosis. *Fish Shellfish Immun.* 2: 99-108.
- Evelyn, T.P.T. 1971. First records of vibriosis in Pacific salmon cultured in Canada, and taxonomic status of the responsible bacterium, *Vibrio anguillarum*. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 28: 517-525.
- Evelyn, T.P.T. 1977. An improved growth medium for the Kidney Disease bacterium and some notes on using the medium. *Bull. Off. Int. Epizoot.* 87(5-6): 511-513.
- Evelyn, T.P.T. 1984. Immunization against pathogenic vibrios. pp. 121-150. In P. de Kinkelin and C. Michel [eds.]. *Symposium on Fish Vaccination*. O.I.E. Fish Diseases Commission, Paris.
- Evelyn, T.P.T. 1988a. Bacterial kidney disease in British Columbia, Canada: comments on its epizootiology and on methods for its control on fish farms. p. 51-57. In: AQUA NOR 87 Trondheim Internat. Conf., Norske Fiskeoppdretteres Forening-Fiskeoppdretteres Salgslag A/L, Trondheim, Norway.
- Evelyn, T.P.T. 1988b. *Vibrio* vaccines for salmonids. pp. 459-469. In *Congress Proceedings, Aquaculture International Congress and Exposition, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, September 6-9, 1988*.
- Evelyn, T.P.T. 1993. Bacterial kidney disease -- BKD. 1993. p. 177-195. In V. Inglis, R.J. Roberts, and N.R. Bromage (eds.) *Bacterial Diseases of Fish*. Blackwell Scientific Publications, Oxford.
- Evelyn, T.P.T., and G.S. Traxler. 1978. Viral erythrocytic necrosis: natural occurrence in Pacific salmon and experimental transmission. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 35: 903-907.
- Evelyn, T.P.T., G.E. Hoskins, and G.R. Bell. 1973. First record of bacterial kidney disease in an apparently wild salmonid in British Columbia. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 30:1578-80.
- Evelyn, T.P.T., G.R. Bell, L. Proserpi-Porta, and J.E. Ketcheson. 1989. A simple technique for accelerating the growth of the kidney disease bacterium *Renibacterium salmoninarum* on a commonly used culture medium. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 7: 231-234.
- Evelyn, T.P.T., J.E. Ketcheson, and L. Proserpi-Porta. 1986a. Use of erythromycin as a means of preventing vertical transmission of *Renibacterium salmoninarum*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 2: 7-11.
- Evelyn, T.P.T., L. Proserpi-Porta, and J.E. Ketcheson. 1986b. Experimental intra-ovum infection of salmonid eggs with *Renibacterium salmoninarum* and vertical transmission of the pathogen with such eggs despite treatment with erythromycin. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 1: 197-202.
- Evelyn, T.P.T., L. Proserpi-Porta, and J. E. Ketcheson. 1990. Two new techniques for obtaining consistent results when growing *Renibacterium salmoninarum* on KDM2 culture medium. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 9: 209-212.
- Evensen, R., K.E. Thorud, and Y.A. Olsen. 1991a. A morphological study of the gross and light microscopic lesions of infectious salmon anaemia in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). *Res. Vet. Sci.* 51: 215-222.
- Evensen, R., S. Espelid, and T. Håstein. 1991b. Immunohistochemical identification of *Vibrio salmonicida* in stored tissues of Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar*, from the first known outbreak of coldwater vibriosis ("Hitra disease"). *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 10: 185-189.
- Ewing, W.H., A.J. Ross, D.J. Brenner, and G.R. Fanning. 1978. *Yersinia ruckeri* sp. nov., the redmouth (RM) bacterium. *Int. J. Syst. Bacteriol.* 28: 37-44.
- Fagerholm, H.-P. 1978. New implications of the nematode infection of Baltic cod liver. Fourth International Congress of Parasitology, 19-26 August 1978, Warszawa, Poland, Short Communications, Section C, p. 192.
- Fagerholm, H.-P. 1988. Incubation in rats of a nematodal larva from cod to establish its specific identity: *Contracaecum osculatum* (Rudolphi). *Parasitol. Res.* 75: 57-63.
- Falk, K., and B. Dannevig. 1995. Demonstration of infectious salmon anaemia (ISA) viral antigens in cell cultures and tissue sections. *Vet. Res.* 26: 499-504.
- Farrell, A.P., and D.R. Jones. 1992. The Heart. In W.S. Hoar, D.J. Randall and A.P. Farrell [eds.]. *Fish Physiology*, Vol. XII, Part A; *The Cardiovascular System*. San Diego: Academic Press.
- Farrell, A.P., R.L. Saunders, H.C. Freeman, and T.P. Mommsen. 1986. Arteriosclerosis in Atlantic salmon. Effects of dietary cholesterol and maturation. *Arteriosclerosis* 6: 453-461.
- Farrington, C.W. 1988. Mortality and pathology of juvenile chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) and chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*) exposed to cultures of the marine diatom *Chaetoceros convolutus*. Master's Thesis, University of Alaska. 80 p.
- Ferguson, H.W. 1989. Systemic pathology of fish. A text and atlas of comparative tissue responses in diseases of teleosts. Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa. 263 pp.
- Ferguson, H.W., and R.D. Moccia. 1980. Disseminated hexamitiasis in siamese fighting fish. *J. Am. Vet. Med. Assoc.* 177: 854-857.
- Ferguson, H.W., R.J. Roberts, R.H. Richards, R.O. Collins, and D.A. Rice. 1986. Severe degenerative cardiomyopathy associated with pancreas disease in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. *J. Fish Dis.* 20: 95-98.
- Ferguson, H.W., T. Poppe and D. Speare. 1990. Cardiomyopathy in farmed Norwegian salmon. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 8: 225-231.
- Fijan, N.N., and G. Giorgetti. 1978. Infectious pancreatic necrosis: isolation of virus from eyed eggs of rainbow trout *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson. *J. Fish. Dis.* 1: 269-270.
- Fjølstad, M., and A.L. Heyeraas. 1985. Muscular and myocardial degeneration in cultured Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., suffering from "Hitra Disease". *J. Fish Dis.* 8: 367-372.
- Flesjaa, K. 1992. Blue mussel lesions in farmed salmon. *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish. Pathol.* 12: 32-33.
- Follett, J.E., J.B. Thomas, and A.K. Hauck. 1987. Infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in moribund and dead juvenile chum, *Oncorhynchus keta* (Walbaum), and chinook, *O. tshawytscha* (Walbaum), salmon and spawning adult chum salmon at an Alaskan hatchery. *Fish. Dis.* 10:309-313.

## References

- Forward, R.B., Jr. 1988. Diel vertical migration: zooplankton photobiology and behavior. *Oceanogr. Mar. Biol. Annu. Rev.* 26: 361-393.
- Frasca, S. S.L. Poynton, A.B. West, H.J. Van Kruiningen. 1998. Epizootiology, pathology, and ultrastructure of the myxosporean associated with parasitic encephalitis of farmed Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* in Ireland. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 32: 211-225.
- Frélier, P., R.A. Elston, J.K. Loy, and C. Mincher. 1994. Macroscopic and microscopic features of ulcerative stomatitis in farmed Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 18: 227-231
- Frerichs, G.N., and R.J. Roberts. 1989. The bacteriology of teleosts, pp. 289-319. *In*: R. J. Roberts [ed.]. *Fish Pathology*. Bailliere Tindall, London.
- Fryer, J.L., C.N. Lannan, S.J. Giovannoni, and N.D. Wood. 1992. *Piscirickettsia salmonis* gen. nov., sp. nov., the causative agent of epizootic disease in salmonid fishes. *Intl. J. Syst. Bacteriol.* 42: 120-126
- From, J., V. Hørlyck and N.J. Jensen. 1985. Electro-induced scoliosis or fracture of the vertebral column in rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson, 1836. *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol.* 5: 1-2.
- Fryer, J.L., and C.N. Lannan. 1996. Rickettsial infections of fish. *Ann. Rev. Fish. Dis.* 3-13.
- Fryer, J.L., C.N. Lannan, L.H. Garcés, J.J. Larenas, and P.A. Smith. 1990. Isolation of a rickettsiales-like organism from diseased coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) in Chile. *Fish Pathol.* 25: 107-114.
- Fryer, J.L., C.N. Lannan, S.J. Giovannoni, and N.D. Wood. 1992. *Piscirickettsia salmonis* gen. nov., sp. nov., the causative agent of an epizootic disease in salmonid fishes. *Intl. J. Syst. Bacteriol.* (in press).
- Gaggero, A., H. Castro, and A.M. Sandino. 1995. First isolation of *Piscirickettsia salmonis* from coho salmon, *Oncorhynchus kisutch* (Walbaum), and rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum), during the freshwater phase of their cycle. *J. Fish Dis.* 18: 277-279.
- Gaines, G., and F.J.R. Taylor. 1986. A mariculturist's guide to potentially harmful marine phytoplankton of the Pacific coast of North America. Information Bulletin 10. Province of British Columbia. Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources Section: Fisheries Branch, Victoria, B.C.
- Garcés, L.H., J.J. Larenas, P.A. Smith, S. Sandino, C.N. Lannan, and J.L. Fryer. 1991. Infectivity of a rickettsia isolated from coho salmon *Oncorhynchus kisutch*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 11: 93-97.
- Garcés, L.H., P. Correal, J. Larenas, J. Contreras, S. Oyanadel, J.L. Fryer, P.A. Smith-Shuster. 1984. Finding of *Piscirickettsia salmonis* on *Ceratohoa gaudichaudii*. *Abs. Intl. Sym. Aquat. Anim. Health*, Seattle, Washington 4-8 Sept. 1994. p. P-109.
- Gibson, D.I. 1996. Trematoda. *In* L. Margolis and Z. Kabata [eds.]. *Guide to the parasites of fishes of Canada. Part IV. Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 124. 373 pp.
- González, L., and J. Carvajal. 1998. New host records of larval *Hysterothylacium aduncum* (Nematoda: Anisakidae) in fauna associated with salmonid sea farms in Chile. *Res. Rev. Parasitol.* (In Press).
- González, L., and G.J. Carvajal. 1994. Parásitos en los cultivos marinos de salmónidos en el sur de Chile. *Invest. Pesq. (Chile)* 38: 87-96.
- Gosting, L.H., and R.W. Gould. 1981. Thermal inactivation of infectious hematopoietic necrosis and infectious pancreatic necrosis viruses. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 41: 1081-1082.
- Gowen, R.J., J. Lewis, and A.M. Bullock. 1982. A flagellate bloom and associated mortalities of farmed trout and salmon in Upper Loch Fyne. *Scottish Mar. Biol. Ass. Internal Rep. No. 71*, 15 pp.
- Graneli, E., E. Paasche, and S.Y. Maestrini. 1993. Three years after the *Chrysochromulina polylepis* bloom in Scandinavian waters in 1988: some conclusions of recent research and monitoring. pp. 23-32. *In* T.J. Smayda and Y. Shimizu [eds.]. *Toxic Phytoplankton Blooms in the Sea*. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Grant, A.N., and J.W. Treasurer. 1993. The effects of fallowing on caligid infestations on farmed Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) in Scotland. pp. 255-260. *In* G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye, D. [eds.]. *Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice*. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Grave, K., M. Engelstad, and N.E. Sólí. 1991a. Utilization of dichlorvos and trichlorfon in salmonid farming in Norway during 1981-1988. *Acta. Vet. Scand.* 32: 1-7.
- Grave, K., M. Engelstad, N.E. Sólí, and E.-L. Toverud. 1991b. Clinical use of dichlorvos (Nuvan®) and trichlorfon (Neguvon®) in the treatment of salmon louse, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*: compliance with the recommended treatment procedures. *Acta. Vet. Scand.* 32: 9-14.
- Grayson, T.H., P.G. Jenkins, A.B. Wrathmell, and J.E. Harris. 1991. Serum responses to the salmon louse, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Kryer, 1838), in naturally infected salmonids and immunised rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum), and rabbits. *Fish Shellfish Immunol.* 1: 141-155.
- Grayson, T.H., R.J. John, S. Wadsworth, K. Greaves, D. Cox, J. Roper, A.B. Wrathmell, M.L. Gilpin, and J.E. Harris. 1995. Immunization of Atlantic salmon against the salmon louse: identification of antigens and effects on louse fecundity. *J. Fish Biol.* 47 (Supplement A): 85-94.
- Grimnes, A., and P.J. Jakobsen. 1996. The physiological effects of salmon lice infection on post-smolt of Atlantic salmon. *J. Fish Biol.* 48: 1179-1194.
- Grisev, L., R. Ceusters, and F. Ollevier. 1991. The use of API 20E for the identification of *Vibrio anguillarum* and *V. ordalii*. *J. Fish Dis.* 14: 351-365.
- Groff, J.M., S.E. LaPatra, R.J. Munn, M.L. Anderson, and B.I. Osburn. 1996. Epitheliocystis infection in cultured white sturgeon (*Acipenser transmontanus*): antigenic and ultrastructural similarities of the causative agent to the chlamydiae. *J. Vet. Diagn. Invest.* 8:172-180.
- Groman, D., D. Tweedie, D. Shaw, 1992. Experiences with atypical furunculosis in Newfoundland: an overview. *Bull. Aquacul. Assoc. Canada*, 92-1, 36-39.
- Groman, D.B., and G.W. Klontz. 1983. Chemotherapy and prophylaxis of bacterial kidney disease with erythromycin. *J. World Maricul. Soc.* 14: 226-235.
- Gross, L. 1983. *Oncogenic Viruses*, 3rd Ed. Pergamon Press, Elmsford, New York. 1203 pp.
- Grotmol, S., G.K. Totland, and H. Kryvi. 1997. Detection of a nodavirus-like agent in heart tissue from reared Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* suffering from cardiac myopathy syndrome (CMS). *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 29: 79-84.
- Gudding, R., A. Lillehaug, P.J. Midtlyng, and F. Brown (eds.). 1997. *Fish Vaccinology*. Dev. Biol. Stand. Basel, Karger Vol 90.
- Hallegraef, G.M., 1993. A review of harmful algal blooms and their apparent global increase. *Phycol.* 32: 79-99.
- Halver, J.E. 1976. Aflatoxicosis and adventitious toxins in fish. *Fish Pathol.* 10: 199-129.
- Handler, J. M. Soltani, and S. Percival. 1997. The pathology of *Flexibacter maritimus* in aquaculture. *J. Fish Dis.* 20: 159-168.
- Hancock, D.D., and S.E. Wilke. 1988. Investigation planning and data gathering. *In* P.R. Lessard and B.D. Perry [eds.]. *The Veterinary Clinic of North America Food Animal Practice: Investigation of Disease Outbreaks and Impaired Productivity*. Vol. 4(1). W.B. Saunders Toronto.
- Harbell, S.C., H.O. Hodgins, and M.H. Schiewe. 1979. Studies on the pathogenesis of vibriosis in coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) (Walbaum). *J. Fish. Dis.* 2: 391-404.
- Hargis, W.J. 1991. Disorders of the eye in finfish. *Ann. Rev. Fish Dis.* 1: 95-117.
- Harrell, L.W., A.J. Novotny, M.H. Schiewe, and H.O. Hodgins. 1976. Isolation and description of two vibrios pathogenic to Pacific salmon in Puget Sound, Washington. *Fish. Bull. (U.S.)* 74: 447-449.
- Harrell, L.W., and T.M. Scott. 1985. *Kudoa thyrsitis* (Gilchrist) (Myxosporea: Multivalvulida) in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. *J. Fish Dis.* 8: 329-332.
- Harrell, L.W., R.A. Elston, T.M. Scott, and M.T. Wilkinson. 1986. A significant new systemic disease of net-pen reared chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) brood stock. *Aquaculture* 55: 249-262.
- Harrison, P.J., J.D. Fulton, F.J.R. Taylor, and T.R. Parson. 1983. Review of the biological oceanography of the Strait of Georgia: pelagic environment. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 40: 1064-1094.
- Harshbarger, J.C. 1984. Pseudoneoplasms in ectothermic animals. *Nat. Cancer Inst. Monogr.* 65: 251-273.
- Harshbarger, J.C., P.M. Spero, and N.M. Wolcott. Neoplasms in wild fish from marine ecosystem emphasizing environmental interactions. pp. 157-176. *In* J.A. Couch and J.W. Fournie [eds.]. *Pathobiology of Marine and Estuarine Organisms*. CRC Press, Boca Raton, Florida.

- Håstein, T., and T. Lindstad. 1991. Diseases in wild and cultured salmon: possible interaction. *Aquaculture* 98: 277-288.
- Hastings, T.S. 1988. Furunculosis vaccines. pp. 93-111. In A. E. Ellis [ed.]. *Fish vaccination*. Academic Press, New York.
- Hastings, T.S., and A. McKay. 1987. Resistance of *Aeromonas salmonicida* to oxolinic acid. *Aquaculture* 61: 165-171.
- Hauck, A.K. 1984. A mortality and associated tissue reactions of chinook salmon, *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* (Walbaum), caused by the microsporidan *Loma* sp. *J. Fish Dis.*, 7: 217-229.
- Heckman, R. 1984. The efficacy of praziquantel and other pharmaceuticals against the eye fluke of fish, *Diplostomum spathaceum*. *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter* 12(4): 7
- Hedrick, R.P., A. Wishkovsky, J.M. Groff, and T. McDowell. 1989. Transmission trials with three myxosporeans of salmonid fish, p. 39. In: Abstracts - European Association of Fish Pathologists IV International Conference, Santiago de Compostela, Spain. 24-28 September.
- Hedrick, R.P., J.M. Groff, and D.V. Baxa. 1991a. Experimental infections with *Enterocytozoon salmonis* Chilmonczyk, Cox, Hedrick (Microsporea): an intranuclear microsporidium from chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 10: 103-108.
- Hedrick, R.P., J.M. Groff, and D.V. Baxa. 1991b. Experimental infections with *Nucleospora salmonis* n.g. n.sp.: An intranuclear microsporidium from chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter* 19: 5.
- Hedrick, R.P., J.M. Groff, P. Foley, and T. McDowell. 1988. Oral administration of Fumagillin DCH protects chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* from experimentally-induced proliferative kidney disease. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 4: 165-168.
- Hedrick, R.P., J.M. Groff, T.S. McDowell, M. Willis, and W.T. Cox. 1990. Hematopoietic intranuclear microsporidian infections with features of leukemia in chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 8: 189-197.
- Heidal, K., and A. Mohus. 1995. The toxic *Chrysochromulina* - salmon disaster of 1991 in Northern Norway with some follow-up monitoring records of 1992 and 1993. pp. 163-168. In P. Lassus, G. Arzul, E. Erard, P. Gentien, and C. Marcaillou [eds.]. *Harmful Algal Blooms*. Lavoisier Pub., Paris.
- Hendricks, J.D., T.R. Meyers, D.W. Shelton. 1984. Histological progression of hepatic neoplasms in rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*). *Natl. Can. Inst. Monogr.* 65: 321-336.
- Hershberger, P.K., J.E. Rensel, A.L. Matter, and F.B. Taub. 1997. Vertical distribution of the chloromonad flagellate *Heterosigma carterae* in columns: implications for bloom development. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 54: 2228-2234.
- Hervio, D.M.L., M.L. Kent., J. Khattra, J. Sakanari, H. Yokoyama, R.H. Devlin. 1997. Taxonomy of *Kudoa* species (Myxosporea: Multivalvulida) usings small subunit ribosomal DNA sequence. *Can. J. Zool.* 75: 2112-2119.
- Heuch, P.A. 1995. Experimental evidence for aggregation of salmon louse copepodids (*Lepeophtheirus salmonis*) in step salinity gradients. *J. Mar. Biol. Ass. U.K.* 75: 927-939.
- Heuch, P.A., A. Parsons, and K. Boxaspen. 1995. Diel vertical migration: A possible host-finding mechanism in salmon louse (*Lepeophtheirus salmonis*) copepodids?. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 52: 681-689.
- Hicks, B. 1989. *British Columbia Salmonid Disease Handbook*. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries. 40 pp.
- Higgins, M., S.C. Dawe, and M.L. Kent. 1998. The efficacy of TNP-470, a fumagillin analog, for treating *Loma salmonae* and *Nucleospora salmonis* infections. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* (in press).
- Higgins, M.J., and M.L. Kent. 1996. Field trials with fumagillin for the control of proliferative kidney disease in coho salmon. *Prog. Fish Cult.* 58: 268-272
- Hikida, M., H. Wakabayashi, S. Egusa, and K. Masumura. 1979. *Flexibacter* sp., a gliding bacterium pathogenic to some marine fishes in Japan. *Bull. Jap. Soc. Sci. Fish.* 45: 421-428.
- Hilger, I., S. Ulrich, and K. Anders. 1991. A new ulcerative flexibacteriosis-like disease ('yellow pest') affecting young Atlantic cod *Gadus morhua* from the German Wadden Sea. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 11: 19-29.
- Hill, B.J., and K. Way. 1995. Serological classification of infectious pancreatic necrosis (IPN) virus and other aquatic birnaviruses. *Ann. Rev. Fish Dis.* 5: 55-77.
- Hiney, M.P., J.J. Kilmartin, and P.R. Smith. 1994. Detection of *Aeromonas salmonicida* in Atlantic salmon with asymptomatic furunculosis infections. *Dis. Aquat. Dis.* 19: 161-167.
- Hodneland, K., A. Nylund, F. Nilsen, and B. Midttun. 1993. The effect of nuvan, azamethiphos and hydrogen peroxide on salmon lice (*Lepeophtheirus salmonis*). *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol.* 13: 203-206.
- Hoffman, G. L. 1984. Two fish pathogens, *Parvicapsula* sp. and *Mitraspora cyprini* (Myxosporea) new to North America. *Symp. Biolog. Hung.* 23: 127-135.
- Hoffman, G.L., and F.P. Meyer. 1974. *Parasites of freshwater fish*. T.F.H. Publ., Neptune City, New Jersey. 224 p.
- Hoffman, G.L., C.E. Dunbar, K. Wolf and L.O. Zwillenberg. 1969. Epitheliocystis, a new infectious disease of the bluegill (*Lepomis macrochirus*). *Antonie van Leeuwenhoek* 35: 146-158.
- Hogans, W.E. 1995. Infection dynamics of sea lice, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae) parasitic on Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) cultured in marine waters of the Lower Bay of Fundy. *Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 2067: 10 pp.
- Hogans, W.E., and D.J. Trudeau. 1989a. Preliminary studies on the biology of sea lice, *Caligus elongatus*, *Caligus curtus* and *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligoida) parasitic on cage-cultured salmonids in the Lower Bay of Fundy. *Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 1715: 14 pp.
- Hogans, W.E., and D.J. Trudeau. 1989b. *Caligus elongatus* (Copepoda: Caligoida) from Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) cultured in marine waters of the Lower Bay of Fundy. *Can. J. Zool.* 67: 1080-1082.
- Hoie, S., H. Heum, and O.F. Thoresen. 1997. Evaluation of a polymerase chain reaction-based assay for the detection of *Aeromonas salmonicida* ss *salmonicida* in Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 30: 27-35.
- Holm, K.O., E. Stroem, K. Stensvag, J. Raa and T. Jørgensen. 1985. Characteristics of a *Vibrio* sp. associated with the "Hitra Disease" of Atlantic salmon in Norwegian fish farms. *Fish Pathol.* 20: 125-129
- Holmes, C.F.B. 1997. Evidence for a covalently bound form of microcystin-LR in salmon liver and Dungeness crab larvae. *Chem. Res. Toxicol.* (in press).
- Honjo, T., 1994. The biology and prediction of representative red tides associated with fish kills in Japan. *Rev. Fish. Sci.* 2: 225-253.
- Horner, R.A., J.R. Postel, and J.E. Rensel 1990. Noxious phytoplankton blooms in western Washington waters. A review. pp. 171-176. In E. Graneli, B. Sundstroem, L. Edler, and D.M. Anderson [eds.]. *Toxic Marine Phytoplankton*. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Houghton, G. 1994. Acquired protection in Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* parr and post-smolts against pancreas disease. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 18: 109-118.
- House, E.W., R.J. Dornauer and B.J. van Lenten. 1979. Production of coronary arteriosclerosis with sex hormones and human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG) in juvenile steelhead and rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri*. *Atherosclerosis* 34: 197-206.
- House, M.L., J.L. Bartholomew, J.R. Winton, and J.L. Fryer. 1998. Relative virulence of three isolates of *Piscirickettsia salmonis* for coho salmon, *Oncorhynchus kisutch*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* (in press).
- Howard, T., and J. Carson. 1993a. Verification that *Paramoeba* species are consistently associated with gill damage in fish affected with amoebic gill disease. *Proceed. Saltas Res. Rev. Sem.* 29 April 1993, Hobart, Australia. pp. 69-80
- Howard, T., and J. Carson. 1993b. Are there alternatives to freshwater treatment of AGD. *Proceed. Saltas Res. Rev. Sem.* 29 April 1993, Hobart, Australia. pp. 81 - 87.
- Huse, I., and J.C. Holm. 1993. Vertical distribution of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) as a function of illumination. *J. Fish. Biol.* 43: 147-156.
- Inglis, V. and R.H. Richards. 1992. Difficulties encountered in chemotherapy of furunculosis in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.). p. 201-208. In: T. Kimura (ed.) *Salmonid Diseases*. Proceedings of the OII International Symposium on Salmonid Diseases, Sapporo, Japan, October 22-25, 1991, Hokkaido University Press.

## References

- Inostroza, R., G. Sievers, J. Roa, and R. Aguirrebena. 1993. Prevalencia e intensidad de infección estacional por *Ceratomyxa gaudichaudii* en salmones (*Salmo salar*) cutlavados en agua de mar en el sur de Chile. Arch. Med. Vet. 25: 173-179.
- Jaronski, S.T. (1972). Cytochemical evidence for RNA synthesis inhibition by fumagillin. J. Antibiot. 6:327-331.
- Jarp, J., A.G. Gjevre, A.B. Olsen, and T. Bruheim. 1995. Risk factors associated with furunculosis, infectious pancreatic necrosis and mortality in post-smolt of Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. J. Fish Dis. 18: 67-78.
- Jarp, J., T. Taksdal, and B. Tørud. 1996. Infectious pancreatic necrosis in Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* in relation to specific antibodies, smoltification, and infection with erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome (EIBS). Dis. Aquat. Org. 27: 81-88.
- Johannessen, A. 1978. Early stages of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda, Caligidae). Sarsia 63 169-176.
- Johannessen, T., J.A. Knutsen, and O. Paulsen. 1991. Effects of *Chrysochromulina leadbeateri* on reared salmon and natural fauna. The *Chrysochromulina leadbeateri* bloom in Vestfjorden, North Norway, May-June 1991. pp. 103-119. In F. Rey [ed.]. Proceedings from a Scientific Working Meeting. No. 3.
- Johnsen, B.O., and A.J. Jensen. 1991. The *Gyrodactylus* story. Aquaculture 98: 289 - 302.
- Johnsen, T.M., and T.E. Lein. 1989. *Prymnesium parvum* Carter (Prymnesiophyceae) in association with macroalgae in Ryfylke, Southwestern Norway. Sarsia 74: 277-281.
- Johnson, A. 1988. Fish kills in Scotland due to plankton blooms. Red tide Newsletter 1: p.6.
- Johnson, S.C. 1991. The biology of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*. Doctoral Dissertation, Simon Fraser University. Burnaby, British Columbia, Canada. 213 pp.
- Johnson, S.C. 1993. A comparison of the development and growth rates of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae) on Atlantic (*Salmo salar*) and chinook (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) salmon. pp. 68-80. In G.A. Boxshall, and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of wild and farmed fish: Sea lice.
- Johnson, S.C. and L.J. Albright. 1991b. The developmental stages of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Kroeyer, 1837) (Copepoda: Caligidae). Can. J. Zool. 69: 929-950.
- Johnson, S.C. and L.J. Albright. 1991c. Development, growth, and survival of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae) under laboratory conditions. J. Mar. Biol. Ass. U.K. 71: 425-436.
- Johnson, S.C. and L.J. Albright. 1992b. The effects of cortisol implants on the susceptibility and histopathology of the responses of naive coho salmon *Oncorhynchus kisutch* to experimental infection with *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae). Dis. Aquat. Org. 14: 195-205.
- Johnson, S.C., and L. Margolis. 1993. The efficacy of Ivermectin for the control of sea lice on sea-farmed Atlantic salmon. Dis. Aquat. Org. 17: 107-112.
- Johnson, S.C., and L. Margolis. 1994. Sea Lice. In J.C. Thoesen [ed.]. Suggested Procedures for the Detection and Identification of Certain Finfish and Shellfish Pathogens. 4th ed. Fish Health Section, American Fisheries Society. 10 p.
- Johnson, S.C., and L.J. Albright. 1991a. *Lepeophtheirus cuneifer* Kabata, 1974 (Copepoda: Caligidae) from seawater-reared rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss*, and Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar*, in the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia, Canada. Can. J. Zool. 69: 1414-1416.
- Johnson, S.C., and L.J. Albright. 1992a. Comparative susceptibility and histopathology of the host response of naive Atlantic, chinook, and coho salmon to experimental infection with *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae). Dis. Aquat. Org. 14: 179-193.
- Johnson, S.C., J.M. Constible and J. Richard. 1993. Laboratory investigations of the toxicological and histopathological effects of hydrogen peroxide to salmon and its efficacy against the salmon louse *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*. Dis. Aquat. Org. 17: 197-204.
- Johnson, S.C., R.B. Blaylock, J. Elphick, and K. Hyatt. 1996. Disease caused by the salmon louse *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae) in wild sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) stocks of Alberni Inlet, British Columbia. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 53: 2888-2897.
- Johnstone, A. 1984. Pathogenesis and life cycle of the myxozoan *Parvicapsula* sp. infecting marine cultured coho salmon. Doctoral Dissertation, University of Washington, Seattle, Washington. 70 pp.
- Jones, K.J., P. Ayres, A.M. Bullock, R.J. Roberts, and P. Tett. 1982. A red tide of *Gyrodinium aureolum* in sea lochs of the Firth of Clyde and associated mortality of pond-reared salmon. J. Mar. Biol. Assoc. U.K. 62: 771-782.
- Jones, M.W., C. Sommerville, and J. Bron. 1990. The histopathology associated with the juvenile stages of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* on the Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. J. Fish Dis. 13: 303-310.
- Jones, M.W., C. Sommerville, and R. Wootten. 1992. Reduced sensitivity of the salmon louse, *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*, to the organophosphate dichlorvos. J. Fish Dis. 15: 197-202.
- Jones, S.R.M., R.J.F. Markham, D.B. Groman, and R.R. Cusak. 1998. Virulence and antigenic characteristics of a cultured Rickettsiales-like organism isolated from farmed Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* in eastern Canada. Dis. Aquat. Org. 33: 25-31.
- Jónsdóttir, H., J.E. Bron, R. Wootten, and J.F. Turnbull. 1992. The histopathology associated with the pre-adult and adult stages of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* on the Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. J. Fish Dis. 15: 521-527.
- Jørgensen, T., K. Midling, S. Espelid, R. Nilsen and K. Stensvlg. 1989. *Vibrio salmonicida*, previously registered as a pathogen in salmonids, does also cause mortality in netpen captured cod (*Gadus morhua*). Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 9: 42-43.
- Kabata, Z. 1973. The species of *Lepeophtheirus* (Copepoda: Caligidae) from fishes of British Columbia. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 30: 729-759.
- Kabata, Z. 1974a. Mouth and mode of feeding of Caligidae (Copepoda), parasites of fishes, as determined by light and scanning electron microscopy. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 31: 1583-1588.
- Kabata, Z. 1985. Parasites and diseases of fish cultured in the tropics. Taylor and Francis, London and Philadelphia. 318 pp.
- Kabata, Z. 1970. Crustacea as enemies of fishes. In S.F. Snieszko and H. R. Axelrod [eds.]. Diseases of Fish. TFH Publications, Jersey City, NJ, USA. 171 pp.
- Kabata, Z. 1972. Developmental stages of *Caligus clemensi* (Copepoda: Caligidae). J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 29: 1571-1593.
- Kabata, Z. 1974b. *Lepeophtheirus cuneifer* sp. nov. (Copepoda: Caligidae), a parasite of fishes from the Pacific coast of North America. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 31: 43-47.
- Kabata, Z. 1979. Parasitic Copepoda of British Fishes. The Ray Society, London. 468 pp.
- Kabata, Z. 1988. Copepoda and Branchiura. In L. Margolis and Z. Kabata [eds.]. Guide to the Parasites of Fishes of Canada. Part II-Crustacea. Can. Spec. Pub. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 101: 3-127.
- Kabata, Z., and D.J. Whitaker. 1981. Two species of *Kudoa* (Myxosporaea: Multivalvulida) parasitic in the flesh of *Merluccius productus* (Ayres, 1855) (Pisces: Teleostei) in the Canadian Pacific. Can. J. Zool. 59: 2085-2091.
- Kabata, Z., and D.J. Whitaker. 1989. *Kudoa thyrstites* (Gilchrist, 1924) (Myxozoa) in the cardiac muscle of Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus* spp.) and steelhead trout (*Salmo gairdneri*). Can. J. Zool. 67: 341-342.
- Kano, T., and H. Fukui. 1982. Studies on *Pleistophora* infection in eel, *Anguilla japonica* - I. Experimental induction of microsporidiosis and fumagillin efficacy. Fish Pathol. 16(4): 193-200.
- Karaseva, T.A., and A.M. Beskrovny. 1991. On prophylaxis and treatment of the Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) papillomatosis. Intl. Con. Explor. Sea C.M. 1991/F:5: 1-10.
- Kennedy, C.R. 1978. The biology, specificity and habitat of the species of *Eubothrium* (Cestoda: Pseudophyllidea), with reference to their use as biological tags: a review. J. Fish. Biol. 12: 393-410.
- Kennedy, W.A., C.T. Shoop, W. Griffioen, and A. Solmie. 1976. The 1974 crop of salmon reared on the Pacific Biological Station Experimental Fishfarm. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 612. 19 pp.
- Kent, M.L. 1982. Characteristics and identification of *Pasteurella* and *Vibrio* species pathogenic to fishes using API-20E (Analytab Products) Multitube Test Strips. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 1725-1729.

- Kent, M.L. 1990. Netpen liver disease (NLD) of salmonid fishes reared in sea water: species susceptibility, recovery, and probable cause. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 8: 21-28.
- Kent, M.L., J.W. Bagshaw, G.C. Newbound, G.S. Traxler, S.C. Dawe, J.R. Roome, W.E. Eaton, J.M. Groff, and D. Speare. 1991a. Plasmacytoid leukemia (marine anemia): viral or microsporidian etiology? *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter* 19(2) 1-2.
- Kent, M.L., and S.C. Dawe. 1990. Transmission of a plasmacytoid leukemia of chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *Cancer Res. (suppl)* 50: 5679s-5681s.
- Kent, M.L., and S.C. Dawe. 1993. Further evidence for a viral etiology in plasmacytoid leukemia of chinook salmon. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 15: 115-121.
- Kent, M.L., and S.C. Dawe. 1994. Efficacy of Fumagillin DCH against experimentally-induced *Loma salmonae* (Microsporea) infections in chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 20: 231-233.
- Kent, M.L., S.C. Dawe, and D.J. Speare. 1995a. Transmission of *Loma salmonae* (Microsporea) to chinook salmon in sea water. *Can. Vet. J.* 36: 98-102.
- Kent, M.L., S.C. Dawe, S. St-Hilaire, and R.J. Andersen. 1996. Effect of feeding rate, time of entry to sea water, and exposure to natural biota on the occurrence and severity of netpen liver disease, a toxicopathic liver disease of pen-reared Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*. *Prog. Fish-Cult.* 58: 43-46.
- Kent, M.L., C.F. Dungan, R.A. Elston, and R.A. Holt. 1988a. *Cytophaga* sp. (Cytophagales) infection in seawater pen-reared Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 4: 173-179.
- Kent, M.L., D.G. Elliott, J.M. Groff, and R.P. Hedrick. 1989. *Loma salmonae* (Protozoa: Microsporea) infections in seawater reared coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). *Aquaculture* 80: 211-222.
- Kent, M.L., J. Ellis, J.W. Fournie, S.C. Dawe, J.W. Bagshaw, and D. Whitaker. 1992. Systemic hexamitid infection in seawater pen-reared chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 14: 81-89.
- Kent, M.L., and R.A. Elston. 1987. Diseases of seawater reared salmon in Washington state. *Proceedings of the Fourth Alaska Aquaculture Conference, Alaska Sea Grant Report No. 88 4*: 161-163.
- Kent, M.L., J.M. Groff, G.S. Traxler, J.G. Zinkl, and J.W. Bagshaw. 1990a. Plasmacytoid leukemia in seawater reared chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 8: 199-209.
- Kent, M.L., L. Margolis, and J.O. Corliss. 1994a. The demise of a class of protists: taxonomic and nomenclatural revisions proposed for the protist phylum Myxozoa Grassé, 1970. *Can. J. Zool.* 72: 932-937.
- Kent, M.L., L. Margolis, and J.W. Fournie. 1991b. A new eye disease in pen-reared chinook caused by metacestodes of *Gilquinia squali* (Trypanorhyncha). *J. Aquat. Animal Health* 3: 134-140.
- Kent, M.L., L. Margolis, D.J. Whitaker, G.E. Hoskins, and T.E. McDonald. 1994b. Review of Myxosporea of importance to salmonid fisheries and aquaculture in British Columbia. *Folia Parasitol.* 41: 27-37.
- Kent, M.L., M.S. Myers, D.E. Hinton, W.D. Eaton, R.A. Elston. 1988b. Suspected toxicopathic hepatic necrosis and megalocytosis in pen reared Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 4: 91-100.
- Kent, M.L., G.C. Newbound, S.C. Dawe, C. Stephen, W.D. Eaton, G.S. Traxler, D. Kieser, and R.F. Markham. 1993. Observations on the transmission and range of plasmacytoid leukemia of chinook salmon. *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter* 21 (2): 1-3.
- Kent, M.L., T.K. Sawyer, and R.P. Hedrick. 1988c. *Paramoeba pemaquidensis* (Sarcostigophora: Paramoebidae) infestation of the gills of coho salmon *Oncorhynchus kisutch* reared in seawater. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 5: 163-169.
- Kent, M.L., V. Rantis, J.W. Bagshaw, and S.C. Dawe. 1995c. Enhanced detection of *Enterocytozoon salmonis* (Microsporea), an intranuclear microsporean of salmonid fishes, with the Warthin-Starry stain combined with hematoxylin and eosin. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 23: 235-237.
- Kent, M.L., G.S. Traxler, D. Kieser, J. Richard, S.C. Dawe, R.W. Shaw, G. Prospero-Porta, J. Ketchenson, and T.P.T. Evelyn. 1998. Survey of salmonid pathogens in ocean-caught fishes in British Columbia, Canada. *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 211-219.
- Kent, M.L., D.J. Whitaker, and S.C. Dawe. 1997a. *Parvicapsula minibicornis* n. sp. (Myxozoa, Myxosporea) from the kidney of sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) from British Columbia. *J. Parasitol.* 83: 1153-1156.
- Kent, M.L., D.J. Whitaker, and L. Margolis. 1993. Transmission of *Myxobolus arcticus* (Pugachev and Khokhlov, 1979), a myxosporean of Pacific salmon, via a triactinomyxon from the aquatic oligochaete *Stylodrilus heringianus* (Lumbriculidae). *Can. J. Zool.* 71: 1207-1211.
- Kent, M.L., Whitaker, D.J., Moran, J., Kabata, Z. 1997b. *Hemobaphes disphaerocephalus* (Pennellidae: Copepoda), an accidental parasite of seawater pen-reared Atlantic salmon. *Can. Vet. J.* 38: 110-111.
- Kent, M.L., J.N.C. Whyte, and C. LaTrace. 1995b. Gill lesions and mortality in seawater pen-reared Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) associated with a dense bloom of *Skeletonema costatum* and *Thalassiosira* species. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 22: 77-81.
- Kerk, D., A. Gee, M. Standish, P.O. Wainright, A.S. Drum, R.A. Elston, and M.L. Sogin. 1995. The rosette agent of chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) is closely related to choanoflagellates, as determined by the phylogenetic analysis of its small ribosomal subunit RNA. *Mar. Biol.* 122: 187-192.
- Khalil, L.F., A. Jones, and R.A. Bray (eds.). 1994. Keys to the cestode parasites of vertebrates. CAB International, Wallingford, Oxon, U.K. 751 pp.
- Kieser, D., G.S. Traxler, G. Hoskins, and T.P.T. Evelyn. 1989. A fish virus new to British Columbia. *Aquacult. Update* 39. Department of Fisheries and Oceans. Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo, B.C.
- Kimura, T., and M. Yoshimizu. 1991. Viral diseases of fish in Japan. *Ann. Rev. Fish Dis.* 1: 67-82.
- Kimura, T., M. Yoshimizu, and M. Tanaka. 1981a. Studies on a new virus (OMV) from *Oncorhynchus masou*-II. Oncogenic nature. *Fish Pathol.* 15: 149-153.
- Kimura, T., M. Yoshimizu, M. Tanaka, and H. Sannohe. 1981b. Studies on a new virus (OMV) from *Oncorhynchus masou*-I. Characteristics and pathogenicity. *Fish Pathol.* 15: 149-153.
- Kimura, T., S. Suzuki, and M. Yoshimizu. 1983. *In vitro* antiviral effect of 9-(2-hydroxyethoxymethyl) guanine on the fish herpes virus (OMV). *Antiviral Res.* 3: 103-108.
- Kinne, O. [ed.]. 1984. Diseases of marine animals. Vol. IV. Part. 1. Biologische Anstalt Helgoland, Hamburg. 541 pp.
- Kitao, I., I. Aoki, and K. Muroga. 1984. Three new O-serotypes of *Vibrio anguillarum*. *Bull. Jpn. Soc. Sci. Fish.* 50: 1955.
- Krogsrud, J., T. Håstein and K. Ronningen. 1989. Infectious pancreatic necrosis virus in Norwegian fish farms. p. 284-291. In: W. Ahne, and E. Kurstak [ed.]. Viruses of lower vertebrates. Springer-Verlag, Berlin.
- Kuitunen-Ekbaum, E. 1933. *Citharichthys stigmatæus* as a possible intermediate host for *Gilquinia squali* (Fabricius). *Contrib. Can. Biol. Fish. New Ser.* 8: 99-101.
- Kumagai, A., K. Takahashi, and H. Fukuda. 1994. Epizootics caused by salmonid herpesvirus type 2 infection in maricultured coho salmon. *Fish Pathol.* 29: 127-134.
- Kumagai, A., Takahashi, and K., Fukuda, H. 1997. Infection source of herpesvirus disease in coho salmon culture and its control. *Fish Pathol.* 32: 103-108
- Kurath, G., K.H. Higma, and K.H. Björklund. 1995. The NV genes of fish rhabdoviruses: development of RNase protection assays for rapid assessment of genetic variation. *Vet. Res.* 26: 477-485.
- Kvenseth, P.G. 1993. Use of wrasse to control sea lice. In: Reinersten, H., Dahle, L. A. Jorgensen, L., and Tvinnereim, K. [eds.] *Fish Farming Technology*. Balkema, Rotterdam, pp. 227-232.
- Lannan, C.N., S.A. Ewing, and J.L. Fryer. 1991. A fluorescent antibody test for detection of the rickettsia causing disease in Chilean salmonids. *J. Aquat. Animal Health* 3: 229-234.
- Lannan, C.N., and J.L. Fryer. 1991. Recommended methods for inspection of fish for the salmonid rickettsia. *Bull. Eur. Assoc. Fish Pathol.* 11: 135-136.
- Lannan, C.N., and J.L. Fryer. 1994. Extracellular survival of *Piscirickettsia salmonis*. *J. Fish Dis.* 17: 545-548.
- LaPatra, S. 1990. Infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus (IHNV) transmission studies in Oregon. *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter* 19(1): 4-5.
- LaPatra, S.E. 1996. The use of serology in virus surveillance and certification of fin fish. *Ann. Rev. of Fish Dis.* 6: 15-28.

## References

- LaPatra, S.E., and K. Fliazar. 1990. Examination of mucus and coelomic fluid throughout the spawning of adult chinook salmon for infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus. *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newslett.* 18(4): 2-3.
- LaPatra, S.E., J.L. Fryer, W.H. Wingfield, and R.P. Hedrick. 1989a. Infectious hematopoietic necrosis (IHN) in coho salmon. *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 1: 227-280.
- LaPatra, S.E., J.S. Rohovec, and J.L. Fryer. 1989b. Detection of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in fish mucus. *Fish Pathol.* 24: 197-202.
- Larenas, J.J., C. Astroga, J. Contreras, P. Smith. 1996. Detección de *Piscirickettsia salmonis* en ovas fertilizadas provenientes de trucha arco iris (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) experimentalmente infectadas. *Arch. Med. Vet* 28: Comunicaciones No. 2.
- Laurén, D.J., A. Wishkovsky, J.M. Groff, R.P. Hedrick, and D.E. Hinton. 1989. Toxicity and pharmacokinetics of the antibiotic Fumagillin in yearling rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*). *Toxicol. Appl. Pharmacol.* 98: 444-453.
- Lee, E.G.-H., and T.P.T. Evelyn. 1994. Prevention of vertical transmission of the bacterial kidney disease agent *Renibacterium salmoninarum* by broodstock injection with erythromycin. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 18: 1-4.
- Leek, S.L. 1987. Viral erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome (EIBS) occurring in juvenile spring chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) reared in fresh water. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 44: 685-688.
- Lembeye, G., and I. Campodonica. 1984. First recorded bloom of the dinoflagellate *Prorocentrum micans* Ehr. in South-Central Chile. *Bot. Mar.* 27: 491-493.
- Lemly, A.D., and G.W. Esch. 1984. Effects of the trematode *Uvulifer ambloplitis* on juvenile bluegill sunfish, *Lepomis macrochirus*: Ecological implications. *J. Parasitol.* 70: 475-492.
- Leong, J.C., E. Anderson, L.M. Bootland, P.-W. Chiou, M. Johnson, C. Kim, D. Mourich, G. Trobridge. 1997. Fish vaccine antigens produced or delivered by recombinant DNA technologies. In: R. Gudding, A. Lillehaug, P.J. Midtlyng, F. Brown (eds.). *Fish Vaccinology*. Dev. Biol. Stand. Basel, Karger Vol 90: 267-277.
- Leong, J.C., Y.L. Hsu, H.M. Engelking, and D. Mulcahy. 1981. Strains of infectious hematopoietic necrosis (IHN) virus may be identified by structural protein differences. *Dev. Biol. Stand.* 49:43-55.
- Li, S., and P.T.K. Woo. 1995. Efficacy of a live *Cryptobia salmositica* vaccine, and the mechanism of protection in vaccinated *Oncorhynchus mykiss* against cryptobiosis. *Vet. Immunol. Immunopathol.* 48: 343-353.
- Li, S., and P.T.K. Woo. 1997. Vaccination of rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum), against cryptobiosis: efficacy of the vaccine in fresh and sea water. *J. Fish. Dis.* 20: 369-374.
- Lillehaug, A., T. Lunder and T.T. Poppe. 1992. Field testing of adjuvanted furunculosis vaccines in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. *J. Fish Dis.* 15: 485-496.
- Lindahl, O., and E. Dahl. 1990. On the development of the *Chrysochromulina polylepis* bloom in the Skagerrak in May-June 1988. pp. 189-194. In E. Graneli, B. Sundstroem, L. Edler, and D.M. Anderson [eds.]. *Toxic Marine Phytoplankton*. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Lom, J. 1984. Diseases caused by protists. In: O. Kinne [ed.]. *Diseases of Marine Animals*. Vol. IV. Part. 1, pp. 114-168. Biologische Anstalt Helgoland, Hamburg.
- Lom, J. 1987. Myxosporea: a new look at long-known parasites of fish. *Parasitol. Today* 3: 327-332.
- Lom, J. 1989. Phylum Myxozoa. In: Margulis, L. Corliss, J.O., Melkonian, M., and Chapman, D.,J.(eds.) *Handbook of Protozoists*. Jones and Bartlett Publ. pp. 36-52.
- Lom, J., and E.R. Noble. 1984. Revised classification of the class Myxosporea Bütschli, 1881. *Fol. Parasitol.(Praha)* 31: 193-205.
- Lunder, T. 1992. "Winter ulcer" in Atlantic salmon. A study of pathological changes, transmissibility, and bacterial isolates. Thesis for the degree of Doctor Scientiarum. The Norwegian College of Veterinary Medicine, Oslo, Norway.
- Lunder, T., K. Thorud, T.T. Poppe, R.A. Holt, and J.S. Rohovec. 1990. Particles similar to the virus of erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome, EIBS, detected in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) in Norway. *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol.* 10: 21-23.
- MacConnell, E., T. Shaw, and C.E. Smith. 1991. Naturally-occurring infection with intranuclear microsporidium *Enterocytozoon salmonis*, in steelhead trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss*, pp 11. In: Abstracts of the 14th Ann. AFS/Fish Health Sec. meeting, 31 July - 3 August 1991, Newport, OR, USA.
- MacKenzie, K. 1965. The plerocercoid of *Gilquinia squali* Fabricius, 1794. *Parasitology* 55: 607-615.
- MacKenzie, K. 1975. Some aspects of the biology of the plerocercoid of *Gilquinia squali* Fabricius 1794 (Cestoda: *Trypanorhyncha*). *J. Fish Biol.* 7: 321-327.
- MacKenzie, L. 1991. Toxic and noxious phytoplankton in Big Glory Bay, Stewart Island, New Zealand. *J. Appl. Phycol.* 3: 19-34.
- MacKinnon, B.M. 1991. Sea lice and Atlantic salmon: absence of immunoprotection in *Salmo salar* to *Caligus elongatus*. *Bull. Aquacult. Assoc. Canada* 91: 58-60.
- MacKinnon, B.M. 1993. Host response of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) to infection by sea lice (*Caligus elongatus*). *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 50: 789-792.
- MacMillan, J.R., and D. Mulcahy. 1979. Artificial transmission to and susceptibility of Puget Sound fish to viral erythrocytic necrosis (VEN). *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 36: 1097-1101.
- MacMillan, J.R., D. Mulcahy, and M.L. Landolt. 1989. Cytopathology and coagulopathy associated with viral erythrocytic necrosis in chum salmon. *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 1: 255-362.
- MacMillan, J.R., D. Mulcahy, and M.L. Landolt. 1980. Viral erythrocytic necrosis: some physiological consequences of infection in chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*). *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 37: 799-804.
- Maestroni, G., 1984. Evaluation of potentiated sulfonamide Romet in the control of furunculosis in salmonids. *Salmonid*, Vol. 8, No. 3,4, 24-27.
- Magor, B.G., 1987. First report of *Loma* sp. (Microsporidia) in juvenile coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) from Vancouver Island, British Columbia. *Can. J. Zool.* 65: 751-752.
- Margolis, L. 1977. Public health aspects of "codworm" infection: a review. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 34: 887-898.
- Margolis, L. 1982. Parasitology of Pacific salmon - an overview. p. 135 - 226. In: E. Meerovitch [ed]. *Aspects of Parasitology*. McGill University, Montreal.
- Margolis, L., Z. Kabata, and R.R. Parker. 1975. Catalogue and synopsis of *Caligus*, a genus of Copepoda (Crustacea) parasitic on fishes. *Bull. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 192: 117 pp.
- Markey, P.T., V.S. Blazer, M.S. Ewing, and K.M. Kocan. 1994. *Loma* sp. in salmonids from eastern United States: associated lesions in rainbow trout. *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 6: 318-328.
- Marsh, M. 1988. Plankton bloom occurrences in British Columbia (1987 - 1988). *Red Tide Newsletter* 1(2): 4-5.
- Martin, R.M., W.R. Heard, and A.C. Wertheimer. 1981. Short-term rearing of pink salmon (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) fry: effect on survival and biomass of returning adults. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 38: 554-558.
- Martin, S.W., A.H. Meek, and P. Willeberg. 1987. *Veterinary Epidemiology: Principles and Methods*. Iowa State University Press. Ames. pp.74-75.
- Martin, S.W., M. Shoukri, and M.A. Thorburn. 1992. Evaluating the health status of herds based on tests applied to individuals. *Prev. Vet. Med.* 14: 33-43.
- Masumura, K., and H. Wakabayashi. 1977. An outbreak of gliding bacterial disease in hatchery-born red seabream (*Pagrus major*) and gilthead (*Acanthopagrus schlegelii*) fry in Hiroshima. *Fish Pathol.* 12: 171-177.
- Mattis, T.E. 1986. Development of two tetrahyndeian cestodes from the northern Gulf of Mexico. Doctoral Dissertation. University of Southern Mississippi, Mississippi, 172 p.
- Mauel, M.J., S.J., Giovannoni, and J.L. Fryer. 1996. Development of polymerase chain reaction assays for detection, identification, and differentiation of *Piscirickettsia salmonis*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 26: 189-195.
- McAllister, P.E. 1983. Infectious pancreatic necrosis (IPN) of salmonid fishes. *Fish Disease Leaflet* 65 U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, U.S. Dept. of the Interior, Washington D.C.

- McArdle, J.F. 1984. Trichodina as a cause of mortalities in cage reared rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri*) and Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 4(1): 3-6.
- McArdle, J.F., C. Dooley-Martyn, and F. McKiernan. 1986. Histological examination of the gills as a method for detecting asymptomatic carriers of *A. salmonicida* in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 6(3): 80-84.
- McCarthy, D.H., and R.J. Roberts. 1980. Furunculosis in fish - the present state of our knowledge. pp. 293-341. In: M. A. Droop, and H. W. Jannasch [eds.] Advances in aquatic microbiology. Academic Press, London.
- McCoy, M.A., M.F. McLoughlin, D.A. Rice, and G. Kennedy. 1994. Pancreas disease in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) and vitamin E supplementation. Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 109A: 905-912.
- McDaniel, T.R., K.M. Pratt, T.R. Meyers, T.D. Ellison., J.E. Follett, and J.A. Burke. 1994. Alaska sockeye salmon culture manual. Spec. Fish. Publ. No. 6. Alaska Dept. Fish and Game. Juneau, Alaska.
- McElwain, I. B., and G. Post. 1968. Efficacy of cyzine for trout hexamitiasis. Prog. Fish-Cult. 30(2): 84-91.
- McGladdery, S.E., L. Murphy, B.D. Hicks, and S.K. Wagner. 1990. The effects of *Stephanostomum tenue* (Digenea: Acanthocolpidae) on marine aquaculture of rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri*. In: Perkins, F. O., and T. C. Cheng (eds.). Pathology in Marine Science. Academic Press, Inc., San Diego, California. pp. 305-315.
- McKnight, I.J. 1978. Sarcoma of the swim bladder of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.). Aquaculture 13: 55-60.
- McLoughlin M.F., R.T. Nelson, H.M. Rowley, D.I. Cox, and A.N. Grant. 1996. Experimental pancreas disease in Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* post-smolts induced by salmon pancreas disease virus (SPDV). Dis. Aquat. Org. 26: 117-124.
- McLoughlin, M.F., R.T. Nelson, J.I. McCormick, and H. Rowley. 1995. Pathology of experimental pancreas disease in freshwater Atlantic salmon. J. Aquat. Anim. Health 7: 104-110.
- McLoughlin, M.F., H.M. Rowley, and C.E. Doherty. 1998. A serological survey of salmon pancreas disease virus (SPDV) antibodies in farmed Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* L. J. Fish Dis. 21: 305-307.
- McVicar, A.H. 1982. *Ichthyophonus* infections in fish, p. 243-269. In: R. J. Roberts [ed.]. Microbial Diseases of Fish. Academic Press, New York.
- McVicar, A.H. 1987. Pancreas disease of farmed Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar*, in Scotland: Epidemiology and early pathology. Aquaculture 67: 71-78.
- McVicar, A.H. 1990. Infection as a primary cause of pancreas disease in farmed Atlantic salmon. Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 10: 84-87.
- McVicar, A.H., and A.L.S. Munro. 1987. Pancreas disease in farmed Atlantic salmon: evidence for an infectious aetiology. Int. Counc. Explor. Sea - CM 1987/F:6 Mariculture Committee.
- Melby, H.P., J. Krogsrud, T. Håstein, and H. Stenwig. 1991. All commercial Atlantic salmon seawater farms in Norway harbour carriers of Infectious pancreatic necrosis virus (IPNV). In: Fryer, J.L. (ed) Proceedings 2nd international symposium on viruses of lower vertebrates. Oregon State University, Corvallis OR, USA, 211-217.
- Melby, P.H., and J. Krogsrud. 1991. A retrospective study of records from 1986-90 indicates that infectious pancreatic necrosis virus (IPNV) is present in carrier fish in all commercial Atlantic salmon seawater farms in Norway, p. 25. In: Abstracts - Second International Symposium on Viruses of Lower Vertebrates. July 29-31. Corvallis, Oregon.
- Menzies, F.D., S.B. Wheatley, E.A. Goodall, and M.F. McLoughlin. 1996. Development of a computerised information retrieval system for Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) Aquacult. Res. 27: 183-190.
- Meyers, T.R. 1998. Healthy juvenile sockeye salmon reared in virus-free hatchery water return as adults infected with infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus (IHNV): A case report and review of the controversial issues in the epizootiology of IHNV. J. Aquat. Anim. Health 10: 172-181.
- Meyers, T.R., A.K. Hauck, W.D. Blankenbecker, and T. Minicucci. 1986. First report of viral erythrocytic necrosis in Alaska, USA, associated with epizootic mortality in Pacific herring, *Clupea harengus pallasii* (Valenciennes). J. Fish Dis. 9: 479-491.
- Meyers, T.R., J.B. Thomas, J.E. Follett, and R.R. Saft. 1990. Infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus: Trends in prevalence and the risk management approach in Alaskan sockeye salmon culture. J. Aquat. Anim. Health 2: 85-98.
- Midtlyng P.J., L.J. Reitan, and L. Speilberg. 1996. Experimental studies on the efficacy and side-effects of intraperitoneal vaccination of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) against furunculosis. Fish Shellfish Immun. 6: 335-350.
- Midtlyng, P.J. 1996. A field study on intraperitoneal vaccination of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) against furunculosis. Fish Shellfish Immun. 6: 553-565.
- Mitchell, C.G. 1993. *Eubothrium*. Aquacult. Info. Ser. 14. Dept. Agriculture and Fisheries for Scotland, Aberdeen.
- Mitchell, H. 1992. Furunculosis treatment, control and chemotherapeutic approaches to salmon aquaculture in the United States. Bull. Aquacul. Ass., Canada, 92-1, 36-39
- Mitchell, L.G. 1977. Myxosporidia. pp. 115-154. In J. P. Kreier [ed.]. Parasitic Protozoa IV. Academic Press, New York.
- Miyata, M., V. Inglis, and T. Aoki. 1996. Rapid identification of *Aeromonas* subspecies *salmonicida* by the polymerase chain reaction. Aquacult. 141: 13-64.
- Miyazaki, T., and S.S. Kubota. 1977. Studies on *Ichthyophonus* disease - III. Life cycle of *Ichthyophonus* affected rainbow trout. Bull. Fac. Fish. Mie. Univ. 4: 67-80.
- Mjaaland, S. E. Rimstad, K. Falk, B.H. Dannevig. 1997. Genomic characterization of the virus causing infectious salmon anaemia in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.): an orthomyxo-like virus in a teleost. J. Virol. 71: 7681-7686.
- Mo, T.A., and K.A. MacKenzie. 1991. Occurrence of *Gyrodactyloides bychowskii* Albova, 1948 on the gills of sea-caged Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.). Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 11: 156-158.
- Mo, T.A., T.T. Poppe, and L. Iversen. 1990. Systemic hexamitosis in salt-water reared Atlantic salmon. Bull. Eur. Assoc. Fish Pathol. 10: 69 - 70.
- Mo, T.A., T.T. Poppe, G. Vik, and M. Valheim. 1992. Occurrence of *Myxobolus aeglefini* in salt-water reared Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 12: 104-106.
- Möller, H., and K. Anders. 1986. Diseases and Parasites of Marine Fishes. Kiel, Germany: Verlag Möller 365 pp.
- Molnár, K., F. Baska, and C. Szekeley. 1987. Fumagillin, an efficacious drug against renal sphaerosporosis of the common carp *Cyprinus carpio*. Dis. Aquat. Org. 2: 187-190.
- Moran, J.D.W., and M.L. Kent. 1998a. *Kudoa thyrssites* (Myxozoa: Myxosporidia) infections in pen-reared Atlantic salmon in the eastern north Pacific Ocean, with a survey of potential nonsalmonid reservoir hosts. J. Aquat. Anim. Health. (submitted).
- Moran, J.D.W., D.J. Whitaker, and M.L. Kent. 1998b. Natural and laboratory transmission of the marine myxosporidian parasite *Kudoa thyrssites* (Gilchrist, 1924) to Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). J. Aquat. Anim. Health. (submitted).
- Morrison, C.M., and D.K. Cone. 1986. A possible marine form of *Ichthyobodo* sp. on haddock, *Melanogrammus aeglefinus* (L.), in the north-west Atlantic Ocean. J. Fish Dis. 9: 141-142.
- Morrison, C.M., and V. Sprague. 1981. Microsporidian parasites in the gills of salmonid fishes. J. Fish Dis. 4: 371-386.
- Morrison, C.M., and V. Sprague. 1983. *Loma salmonae* (Putz, Hoffman and Dunbar 1965) in the rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson, and *L. fontinalis* sp. nov. (Microsporidia) in the brook trout, *Salvelinus fontinalis* (Mitchell). J. Fish Dis. 6: 345-353.
- Morrison, J.K., E. MacConnell, P.F. Chapman, and R.L. Westgard. 1990. A microsporidium-induced lymphoblastosis in chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. Dis. Aquat. Org. 8: 99-104.
- Mortensen, A.M. 1984. Massive fish mortalities in the Faeroe Islands caused by a *Gonyaulax excavata* red tide. pp. 165-70. In D. M. Anderson, A. W. White, and D. G. Baden [eds.]. Toxic Dinoflagellates. Elsevier, New York.
- Mortensen, A.M. 1985. Massive fish mortalities in the Faeroe Islands caused by *Gonyaulax excavatum* red tide. pp. 165-170. In D.M. Anderson, A.W.White, and D.G. Baden [eds.]. Toxic Dinoflagellates. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.

## References

- Moser, M., and M.L. Kent. 1994. Myxosporea. pp. 265-318. In J.P. Kreier [ed.]. Parasitic Protozoa. Vol. 8. New York: Academic Press, New York.
- Mugridge, R.E.R., and H.G. Stallybrass. 1983. A mortality of eels, *Anguilla anguilla* L. attributed to Gnathiidae. J. Fish. Dis. 6: 81-82.
- Mulcahy, D., and R.J. Pascho. 1984. Adsorption to fish sperm of vertically transmitted fish viruses. Science 225: 333-335.
- Mulcahy, D., and R.J. Pascho. 1985. Vertical transmission of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in sockeye salmon, *Oncorhynchus nerka* (Walbaum): isolation of virus from dead eggs and fry. J. Fish Dis. 8: 393-396.
- Mulcahy, D., J. Burke, R. Pascho, and C. K. Jenes. 1982. Pathogenesis of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in adult sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*). Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 39: 1144-1149.
- Mullins, J.E., D. Groman, and D. Waldowska. 1998. Infectious salmon anaemia in salt water Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) in New Brunswick, Canada. Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 18: 110-114.
- Mullins, J.E., M. Powell, D.J. Speare, and R. Cawthorn. 1994. An intranuclear microsporidian in lumpfish *Cyclopterus lumpus*. Dis. Aquat. Org. 20: 7-13.
- Munday, B.L., C.K. Foster, F.R. Roubal, and R.G.J. Lester. 1990. Paramoebic gill infection and associated pathology of Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar*, and rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri*, in Tasmania. In F.O. Perkins, T.C. Cheng (eds.) Pathology in marine science. Academic Press. pp. 215-222.
- Munday, B.L., K. Lange, C. Foster, R.J.G. Lester, and J. Handlinger. 1993. Amoebic gill disease of sea-caged salmonids in Tasmanian waters. Tas. Fish. Res. 28: 14-19.
- Mundry, D.R., and M.D. Dailey. 1971. Postembryonic development of certain tetraphyllidean and trypanorhynch cestodes with a possible alternative life cycle for the order Trypanorhyncha. Can. J. Zool. 49: 1249-1253.
- Munro, A.L.S., W. Turrell, and A.S. Rose. 1990. Modelling study of the fate and dispersal of *Aeromonas salmonicida* released from Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) sea cages. J. Aquat. Anim. Health (in press).
- Munro, A.L.S., A.E. Ellis, A.H. McVicar, H. Anne McLay, and E.A. Needham. 1984. An exocrine pancreas disease of farmed Atlantic salmon in Scotland. Helgol. Meeresunters. 37: 571-586.
- Muroga, K., Y. Jo, and K. Masumura. 1986. *Vibrio ordalii* isolated from diseased ayu (*Plecoglossus altivelis*) and rockfish (*Sebastes schlegelii*). Fish Pathol. 21: 239-243.
- Murray, C.B., T.P.T. Evelyn, T.D. Beacham, L. Barner, J.E. Ketcheson, and L. Proserpi-Porta. 1992. Experimental induction of bacterial kidney disease in chinook salmon by immersion and cohabitation challenges. Dis. Aquat. Org. 12: 91-96.
- Mustafa, A., and B.M. Mackinnon. 1993. Sea lice and salmonids: Preliminary observations on modulation of the effects of host stress using iodine. Bull. Aquacul. Assoc. Can. 93(4): 99-101.
- Nagasawa, K. 1990. The life cycle of *Anisakis simplex*: a review. pp. 31-40. In H. Ishikura and K. Kikuchi [eds.]. Intestinal anisakiasis in Japan. Springer-Verlag, New York.
- Nagasawa, K., and S. Sakamoto. 1993. Infection of the salmon louse *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae) on seawater-farmed salmonids in Northern Honshu, Japan. Grob. Kenk. 28: 143-144.
- Nielsen, T.G., T. Kirøboe, and P.K. Bjørnsen. 1990. Effects of a *Chrysochromulina polylepis* subsurface bloom on the planktonic community. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 62: 21-35.
- Nelson, R.T., M.F. McLouglin, H.M. Rowley, M.A. Platten, and J.I. McCormick. 1995. Isolation of a toga-like virus from farmed Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* with pancreas disease. Dis. Aquat. Org. 22: 25-32.
- Nese, L. and R. Enger. 1993. Isolation of *Aeromonas salmonicida* from salmon lice *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* and marine plankton. Dis. Aquat. Org. 16: 79-81.
- Newbound, G.C., and M.L. Kent. 1991a. Experimental interspecies transmission of plasmacytoid leukemia in salmonid fishes. Dis. Aquat. Org. 10: 159-166.
- Newbound, G.C., and M.L. Kent. 1991b. Prevalence of plasmacytoid leukemia in British Columbia. Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter 19(1): 1-2.
- Nilsen, F., A. Ness, and A. Nylund. 1995. Observations on an intranuclear microsporidian in lymphoblasts from farmed Atlantic halibut larvae (*Hippoglossus hippoglossus* L.). J. Eukary. Microbiol. 42: 131-135.
- Noga, E. J. 1996. Fish diseases; Diagnosis and treatment. Mosby, St. Louis. 367 pp.
- Nordmo, R., K.J. Varma, I.H. Sutherland and E.S. Brokken, 1994. Florfenicol in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L.: field evaluation of efficacy against furunculosis in Norway. J. Fish Dis. 17: 239-244.
- Novotny, A.J. 1978. Vibriosis and furunculosis in marine cultured salmon in Puget Sound, Washington. Mar. Fish Rev. 40(3): 52-55.
- Novotny, A.J., and C.V.W. Mahnken. 1971. Predation on juvenile Pacific salmon by a marine isopod *Rocinela belliceps pugettensis* (Crustacea, Isopoda). U.S. National Marine Fisheries Service Fishery Bulletin 69: 699-701.
- Nylund, A., and P. Jakobsen. 1995. Sea trout as a carrier of infectious salmon anaemia virus. J. Fish Biol. 47: 174-176.
- Nylund, A., B. Bjoerknes, and C. Wallace. 1991. *Lepeophtheirus salmonis*: a possible vector in the spread of diseases on salmonids. Bull. Eur. Assoc. fish. Pathol. 11: 213-216.
- Nylund, A., C. Wallace, and T. Hovland. 1993. The possible role of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Kroeyer) in the transmission of infectious salmon anaemia. pp. 367-373. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Nylund, A., T. Hovland, K. Hodneland, F. Nilsen, and P. Lervik. 1994. Mechanisms for transmission of infectious salmon anaemia (ISA). Dis. Aquat. Org. 19: 95-100.
- O'Halloran, J. and R. Henry. 1993. *Vibrio salmonicida* (Hitra disease) in New Brunswick. Bull. Aquacult. Assoc. Can. 93-4: 96-98
- O'Halloran, J., J. Carpenter, D. Ogden, W.E. Hogans, and M. Jansen. 1992. *Ergasilus labracis* on Atlantic salmon. Can. Vet. J. 33: 75.
- Okaichi, T. 1983. Red tides and fisheries damages. Eisei Kagaku 29: 1-4.
- Olsen, A.B., H.P. Melby, L. Speilberg, R. Eversen, and T. Håstein. 1997. *Piscirickettsia salmonis* infection in Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* in Norway - epidemiological, pathological and microbiological findings. Dis. Aquat. Org. 31: 35-48.
- Olson, A.C., M.D. Lewis, and M.L. Hauser. 1983. Proper identification of anisakine worms. Am. J. Med. Technol. 49: 111-114.
- Overstreet, R.M. 1978. Marine maladies? worms, germs and other symbionts from the northern Gulf of Mexico. Blossman Printing, Inc., Ocean Springs, Mississippi. 140 pp.
- Pacha, R.E., and E.J. Ordal. 1970. Myxobacterial diseases of salmonids. pp. 243-247. In S.F. Snieszko [ed.]. A Symposium on Diseases of Fishes and Shellfishes. Special Publ. No.5., Am. Fish. Soc., Washington, D.C.
- Palmer, R. 1994. Kudoa - the Irish Experience. In D.C. Conley [ed.]. Kudoa workshop proceedings, 17 and 18 February 1994, Nanaimo, B.C. Aquaculture Industry Develop. Rep. 94-01: 18-21. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food, Victoria, B.C., Canada.
- Palmer, R., H. Rodger, E. Drinan, C. Dwyer, and P.R. Smith. 1987. Preliminary trials on the efficacy of Ivermectin against parasitic copepods of Atlantic salmon. Bull. Eur. Assoc. Fish Pathol. 7: 47-54.
- Papas, T.S., J.E. Dahlberg, and R.A. Sonstegard. 1976. Type C virus in lymphosarcoma in northern pike (*Esox lucius*). Nature 261: 506-508.
- Paperna, I. 1975. Parasites and diseases of the grey mullet (*Mugilidae*) with special reference to the seas of the near east. Aquaculture 5: 65-80.
- Parker, M., T. Dunne, and J. McArdle. 1982. Exceptional marine blooms in Irish coastal waters. Int. Council Expl. Sea, ICES CM 1982/L 44: 1-10.
- Parker, R.R., and L. Margolis. 1964. A new species of parasitic copepod, *Caligus clemensi* sp. nov. (Caligoida: Caligidae), from pelagic fishes in the coastal waters of British Columbia. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 21: 873-889.
- Parker, R.R., Z. Kabata, L. Margolis, and M.D. Dean 1968. A review and description of *Caligus curtus* Müller, 1785 (Caligidae: Copepoda), type species of its genus. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 25: 1923-1969.

- Pascho, R.J., D. Chase, C. L. McKibben. 1998. Comparisons of the membrane-filtration fluorescent antibody test, the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay, and the polymerase chain reaction to detect *Renibacterium salmoninarum* in salmonid ovarian fluid. J. Vet. Diag. Invest. (in press).
- Pascho, R.J., D.G. Elliott, and J.M. Streufert. 1991. Brood stock segregation of spring chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* by use of the enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) and the fluorescent antibody technique (FAT) affects the prevalence and levels of *Renibacterium salmoninarum* infection in progeny. Dis. Aquat. Org. 12: 25-40.
- Pascho, R.J., T.D. Goodrich, and C.L. McKibben. 1997. Evaluation by enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) of *Renibacterium salmoninarum* bacterins affected by persistence of bacterial antigens. Journal of Aquatic Animal Health 9:99-107.
- Pascho, R.J., and D. Mulcahy. 1987. Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for a soluble antigen of *Renibacterium salmoninarum*, the causative agent of salmonid bacterial kidney disease. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 44: 183-191.
- Patashnik, M., H.S. Groninger, H. Barnett, G. Kudo, and B. Koury. 1982. Pacific whiting, *Merluccius productus*: I. abnormal muscle texture caused by myxosporidian-induced proteolysis. Mar. Fish. Rev. 44(5): 1-12.
- Paterson, W.D. 1982. Furunculosis and other associated diseases caused by *Aeromonas salmonicida*. pp. 119-138. In D. P. Anderson, M. Dorson, and Ph. Dubourget [eds.]. Les antigènes des micro-organismes pathogènes des poissons. Collection Fondation Marcel, Merieux, France.
- Pedersen, O., and F. Langvad. 1988. *Exophiala psychrophila* sp. nov., a pathogenic species of the black yeasts isolated from farmed Atlantic salmon. Mycol. Res. 92: 153-156.
- Piacentini, S.C., J.S. Rohovec, and J.L. Fryer. 1989. Epizootiology of erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome. J. Aquat. Anim. Health 1: 173-179.
- Piasecki, W. 1996. The developmental stages of *Caligus elongatus* von Nordmann, 1832 (Copepoda: Caligidae). Can. J. Zool. 74: 1459-1478.
- Piasecki, W., and B.M. MacKinnon. 1995. Life cycle of a sea louse, *Caligus elongatus* von Nordmann, 1832 (Copepoda, Siphonostomatoida, Caligidae). Can. J. Zool. 73: 74-82.
- Pietsch, J.P., D.F. Amend, and C.M. Miller. 1977. Survival of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus held under various environmental conditions. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 34: 1360-1364.
- Pike, A.W. 1989. Sea lice - major pathogens of farmed Atlantic salmon. Parasitol. Today 5: 291-297.
- Pike, A.W., A.J. Mordue (Luntz), and G. Ritchie. 1993. The development of *Caligus elongatus* Nordmann from hatching to copepodid in relation to temperature. pp. 51-60. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Pilcher, K.S., and J.L. Fryer. 1980. The virus diseases of fish: a review through 1978. Part 1: Diseases of proven viral etiology. CRC Crit. Rev. Microbiol. 7: 287-363.
- Plehn, M. 1920. Neue parasiten in haut und kiemen von fischen. Ichthyocytrium und Mucophilus. Zentr. Bakteriell. Parasitenk. Infektionskr. Hyg. Abt. I Orig. 85: 275-281.
- Poppe, T.T., and O. Breck. 1997. Pathology of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) intraperitoneally immunized with oil-adjuvanted vaccine. A case report. Dis. Aquat. Org. 29: 219-226.
- Poppe, T.T., and T.A. Mo. 1993. Systemic, granulomatous hexamitosis of farmed Atlantic salmon: Interaction with wild fish. Fish. Res. 17: 147-152.
- Poppe, T.T., T.A. Mo, and L. Iversen. 1992. Disseminated hexamitosis in sea-caged Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*. Dis. Aquat. Org. 14: 91-97.
- Post, G.W. 1987. Textbook of Fish Health. T.F.H. Publ., Neptune City, New Jersey. 288 pp.
- Poynton, S.L. 1986. Distribution of the flagellate *Hexamita salmonis* Moore, 1922 and the microsporidian *Loma salmonae* Putz, Hoffman and Dunbar, 1965 in brown trout, *Salmo trutta* L., and rainbow trout, *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson, in the River Itchen (U.K.) and three of its fish farms. J. Fish Biol. 29: 417-429.
- Poynton, S.L. 1987. Vertebral column abnormalities in brown trout, *Salmo trutta* L. J. Fish Dis. 10: 53-57.
- Poynton, S.L., and C.M. Morrison. 1990. Morphology of diplomonad flagellates: *Spironucleus torosa* n. sp. from Atlantic cod *Gadus morhua* L., and haddock *Melanogrammus aeglefinus* (L.) and *Hexamita salmonis* Moore from brook trout *Salvelinus fontinalis* (Mitchill). J. Protozool. 37: 369-383.
- Pringle, G.M., D.F. Houlihan, K.R. Callanan, A.I. Mitchell, R.S. Raynard, and G.H. Houghton. 1992. Digestive enzyme levels and histopathology of pancreas disease in farmed Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). Comp. Biochem. Physiol. 102A: 759-768.
- Putz, R.E., and J.J.A. McLaughlin. 1970. The biology of Nosematidae (Microsporidia) from freshwater and euryhaline fishes. pp. 124-132. In S.F. Snieszko [ed.]. A Symposium on Diseases of Fishes and Shellfishes. Special Publ. No. 5, Am. Fish Soc., Washington, D.C.
- Putz, R.E., G.L. Hoffman, and C.E. Dunbar. 1965. Two new species of *Plistophora* (Microsporidea) from North American fish with a synopsis of Microsporidea of freshwater and euryhaline fishes. J. Protozool. 12: 228-236.
- Ragan, M.A., C.L. Goggins, R.J. Cawthorn, L. Cerenius, A.V.C. Jamieson, S.M. Plourdes, T.G. Rand, K. S' derhall, and R.R. Gutell. 1996. A novel clade of protistan parasites near the animal-fungal divergence. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. 93: 11907-11912.
- Rand, T.G. 1985. Papillomatous lesions in wild juvenile Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* L., in New Brunswick, Canada. J. Wildl. Dis. 21: 324-326.
- Rasmussen, H.B., K. Larsen, B. Hald, B. Moller, and F. Elling. 1986. Outbreak of liver-cell carcinoma among saltwater-reared rainbow trout *Salmo gairdneri* in Denmark. Dis. Aquat. Org. 1: 191-196.
- Raynard, R.S., and G. Houghton. 1993. Development towards an experimental protocol for the transmission of pancreas disease of Atlantic salmon. Dis. Aquat. Org. 15: 123-128.
- Reichenbach, H. 1988. Order Cytophagales. pp. 2011-2066. In J.G. Holt, J.T. Staley, M.P. Bryant, and N. Pfennig [eds.]. Bergey's Manual of Systematic Bacteriology, Vol. 3. Williams & Wilkins, Baltimore, Maryland.
- Rensel, J. 1990. *Heterosigma* blooms in Washington, U.S.A. Red Tide Newsletter 3(3): 4.
- Rensel, J.E. 1992. Harmful effects of the marine diatom (*Chaetoceros concavicornis*) on net-pen and other fish in Puget Sound. Northwest Sci. 66: 141.
- Rensel, J.E. 1993. Severe blood hypoxia of Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) exposed to the marine diatom *Chaetoceros concavicornis*. pp. 625-630. In T.J. Smayda and Y. Shimizu [eds.]. Toxic Phytoplankton Blooms in the Sea. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Rensel, J.E., R.A. Horner, and J.R. Postel. 1989. Effects of phytoplankton blooms on salmon aquaculture in Puget Sound, Washington: Initial research. Northwest Environmental J. 5: 53-69.
- Reyes, X., and S. Bravo. 1983a. Salmon coho *Oncorhynchus kisutch*, cultivado en Puerto Montt, Chile, nuevo huésped para el copepodo *Caligus teres* (Caligidae). Invest. Mar. Valparaíso 11: 51-54.
- Reyes, X., and S. Bravo. 1983b. Nota sobre una copepodosis en salmones de cultivo. Invest. Mar. Valparaíso 11: 55-57.
- Richards, R.H., A. Holliman, and S. Helgason. 1978. *Exophiala salmonis* infection in Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* L. J. Fish Dis. 1: 357-368.
- Ristow, S.S., and J.M. Arzen. 1989. Development of monoclonal antibodies that recognize a type-2 specific and a common epitope on the nucleoprotein of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus. J. Aquat. Anim. Health 1: 119-125.
- Ritchie, G. 1997. The host transfer ability of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Copepoda: Caligidae) from farmed Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*. J. Fish Dis. 20: 153-157.
- Ritchie, G., A.J. Mordue, A.W. Pike, and G.H. Rae. 1993. The reproductive output of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* adult females in relation to seasonal variability of temperature and photoperiod. pp. 153-165. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Roald, S.O., and T. Håstein. 1979. Lymphosarcoma in an Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* L. J. Fish Dis. 2: 249-251.
- Roberts, R.J. 1989. Fish Pathology. Bailliere Tindall, London. 467 pp.
- Roberts, R.J., and A.M. Bullock. 1979. Papillomatosis in marine cultured rainbow trout *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson. J. Fish Dis. 2: 75-77.

## References

- Roberts, R.J., Bullock, A.M., Turner, M., Jones, K. and Tett, P., 1983. Mortalities of *Salmo gairdneri* exposed to cultures of *Gyrodinium aureolum*. J. Mar. Biol. Ass. U.K., 63: 741-743.
- Rodgers, C.J. 1992. Development of a selective-differential medium for the isolation of *Yersinia ruckeri* and its application in epidemiological studies. J. Fish Dis. 15: 243-254.
- Rodger, H.D. and E.M. Drinan. 1993. Observations on a rickettsia-like organism in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., in Ireland. J. Fish Dis. 16: 361-369.
- Rodger, H.D., E.M. Drinan, T.M. Murphy, and T. Lunder. 1991. Observations on erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome in Ireland. Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol 11: 108-111.
- Rodger, H.D., and J.F. McArdle. 1996. An outbreak of amoebic gill disease in Ireland. Vet. Rec. 139: 348-349.
- Rodger, H.D., and R.H. Richards. 1998. Observational study of erythrocytic inclusion bodies in farmed Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., in the British Isles. J. Fish Dis. 21: 101-111.
- Rodger, H.D., T. Turnbull, F. Muir, S. Millar, and R.H. Richards. 1998. Infectious salmon anaemia (ISA) in the United Kingdom. Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 18: 115-116
- Rodger, H.D. T. Turnbull, F.T. Scullion, D. Sparrow, and R.H. Richards. 1995. Nervous mortality syndrome in farmed Atlantic salmon. Vet. Rec. 137: 616-617.
- Rohovec, J.S., and A. Amandi. 1981. Incidence of viral erythrocytic necrosis among hatchery reared salmonids of Oregon. Fish Pathol. 15(3/4): 135-141.
- Rose, A.S., A.E. Ellis, and A.L.S. Munro. 1989. The infectivity by different routes of exposure and shedding rates of *Aeromonas salmonicida* subsp. *salmonicida* in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., held in sea water. J. Fish. Dis. 12: 573-578.
- Rose, A.S., A.E. Ellis, and A.L.S. Munro. 1990. The survival of *Aeromonas salmonicida* subsp. *salmonicida* in sea water. J. Fish Dis. 13: 205-214.
- Ross, A. 1989. Nuvan use in salmon farming: the antithesis of the precautionary principle. Mar. Poll. Bull. 20: 372-374.
- Roth, M., R.H. Richards, D.P. Dobson, and G.H. Rae. 1996. Field trials on the efficacy of the organophosphorous compound azamethiphos for the control of sea lice (Copepoda: Caligidae) infestations of farmed Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). Aquaculture 140: 197-217.
- Roth, M., R.H. Richards, and C. Sommerville. 1993a. Current practices in the chemotherapeutic control of sea lice infestations in aquaculture: a review. J. Fish Dis. 16: 1-21.
- Roth, M., R.H. Richards, and C. Sommerville. 1993b. Preliminary studies on the efficacy of two pyrethroid compounds, resmethrin and lambda-cyhalothrin, for the treatment of sea lice (*Lepeophtheirus salmonis*) infestations of farmed Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). pp. 275-289. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Roubal, F.R., A.M. Bullock, D.A. Roberston, and R.J. Roberts. 1987. Ultrastructural aspects of infestation by *Ichthyobodo necator* (Henneguy, 1883) on the skin and gills of the salmonids *Salmo salar* L. and *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson. J. Fish Dis. 10: 181-192.
- Roubal, F.R., R.J.G. Lester, and C.K. Foster. 1989. Studies on cultured and gill-attached *Paramoeba* sp. (Gymnamoebae: Paramoebidae) and the cytopathology of paramoebic gill disease in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., from Tasmania. J. Fish Dis. 12: 481-492.
- Rourke, A.W, R.W. Davis, and T.M. Bradley. 1984. A light and electron microscope study of epitheliocystis in juvenile steelhead trout, *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson. J. Fish Dis. 7: 301-309.
- Rucker, R.R. 1963. Status of fish diseases and relation to production, pp. 98-101. Rep. 2nd Governor's Conf. on Pacific Salmon, Seattle, Jan. 1963.
- Ruidisch, S., M. El-Matbouli, and R.W. Hoffmann. 1991. The role of tubificid worms as an intermediate host in the life cycle of *Myxobolus pavlovskii* (Akhmerov, 1954). Parasitol. Res. 77: 663-667.
- Sakanari, J.A., and M. Moser. 1989. Complete life cycle of the elasmobranch cestode, *Lacistorhynchus dollfusi* Beveridge and Sakanari, 1987 (*Trypanorhyncha*). J. Parasitol. 75: 806-808.
- Salte, R., K.-A. Roerivik, E. Reed, and K. Norberg. 1994. Winter ulcers of the skin in Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L: pathogenesis and possible aetiology. J. Fish Dis. 17: 661-665.
- Sande, R.D., and T.T. Poppe. 1995. Diagnostic ultrasound examination and echocardiography in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). Vet. Radiol. Ultras. 36 (6): 551-558.
- Sano, T. 1970. Etiology and histopathology of hexamitiasis and an IPN-like disease of rainbow trout. J. Tokyo Univ. Fish. 56: 23-30.
- Sano, T., H. Fukuda, N. Okamoto, and F. Kaneko. 1983. Yamame tumor virus: lethality and oncogenicity. Bull. Jap. Soc. Sci. Fish. 49: 1159-1163.
- Sano, T., T. Nishimura, N. Okamoto, T. Yamazaki, and H. Hanada. 1977. Studies on viral diseases of Japanese fishes. VI. Infectious hematopoietic necrosis (IHN) of salmonids in the mainland of Japan. Journal of the Tokyo University of Fisheries. 63: 81-85.
- Saunders, R.L. 1988. Algal catastrophe in Norway. World Aquacult. 10(2): 11-12.
- Saunders, R.L., A.P. Farrell, and D.E. Knox. 1992. Progression of coronary arterial lesions in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) as a function of growth rate. Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 49: 878-884.
- Sawyer, E.S. 1976. An outbreak of myxobacterial disease in coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) reared in a Maine estuary. J. Wildl. Dis. 12: 575-578.
- Scalati, F., and R. Kusuda. 1986. Chemical composition of the lipopolysaccharides from *Vibrio anguillarum* and *Vibrio ordalii*. Fish Pathol. 21: 193-199.
- Schiewe, M.H., T.J. Trust, and J.H. Crosa. 1981. *Vibrio ordalii* sp. nov.: A causative agent of vibriosis in fish. Curr. Microbiol. 6: 343-348.
- Schmahl, G. 1991. The chemotherapy of monogeneans which parasitize fish: a review. Folia Parasitol. 38: 97-106.
- Schmahl, G. 1993. Up to date chemotherapy against Monogenea: a review. Bull. Fran. Peche Piscicult. 328(1): 74-81.
- Schmahl, G., H. Taraschewski, and H. Mehlhorn. 1989. Chemotherapy of fish parasites. Parasitol. Res. 75: 503-511.
- Schmidt, G.D. 1986. Handbook of tapeworm identification. CRC Press, Inc., Boca Raton, Florida. 675 pp.
- Schmidt, S.P., and E.W. House. 1979. Time study of coronary myointimal hyperplasia in precocious male steelhead trout, *Salmo gairdneri*. Atherosclerosis 34: 375-381.
- Schram, T.A. 1993. Supplementary descriptions of the developmental stages of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Kroeyer, 1837) (Copepoda: Caligidae). pp. 30-47. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of wild and farmed fish: Sea lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Schreck, J.A., and C.M. Moffitt. 1987. Palatability of feed containing different concentrations of erythromycin thiocyanate to chinook salmon. Prog. Fish-Cult. 49: 241-247.
- Scullion, F.T., M.G. Scullion, D. Sparrow, H.D. Rodger, and B.J. Sheahan. 1996. Encephalitis and mass mortality of farmed salmon smolts in an isolated sea bay in Ireland. Vet. Rec. 138: 161-162.
- Seymour, T.A., M.T. Morrissey, M.Y. Peters, and H. An. 1994. Purification and characterization of Pacific whiting proteases. J. Agr. Food. Chem. 42: 2421-2427.
- Shariff, M., R.H. Richards, and C. Sommerville. 1980. The histopathology of acute and chronic infections of rainbow trout *Salmo gairdneri* Richardson with eye flukes, *Diplostomum* sp. J. Fish Dis. 3: 455-465.
- Shaw, R.W., M.L. Kent, and M.L. Adamson. 1998. Modes of transmission of *Loma salmonae* (Microsporea). Dis. Aquat. Org. Dis. Aquat. Org. (in press).
- Shaw, R.W., M.L. Kent, M.F. Docker, R.H. Devlin, A. Brown, and M.L. Adamson. 1997. A new *Loma* species (Microsporea) in shiner perch (*Cymatogaster aggregata*). J. Parasitol. 83: 296-301.
- Shaw, R., and M. Opitz. 1993. Preliminary results on sea lice in the Maine aquaculture industry. Bull. Aquacult. Assoc. Can. 93/94: 102-104.
- Shchelkunov, I.S., T.A. Karaseva, and Y.U.P. Kadoshnikov. 1992. Atlantic salmon papillomatosis: Visualization of herpesvirus-like particles in skin growths of affected fish. Bull. Eurp. Asso. Fish Pathol. 12: 28-31.
- Sheppard, M.E., M.J. Beattie and C.K. Johnson. 1994. Efficacy of Aquafloremix against furunculosis in Atlantic salmon smolts in British Columbia. Bull. Aquacul. Assoc. Canada, 94-2, 51-53.

- Siddall, M.E., D.S. Martin, D. Bridge, D., S.S. Desser, and D.K. Cone. 1995. The demise of a phylum of protists: phylogeny of the Myxozoa and other parasitic cnidaria. *Journal of Parasitology* 81: 961-967.
- Sievers, G., P. Palacios, R. Inostroza, and H. D'Íz. 1995. Evaluation of the toxicity of 8 insecticides in *Salmo salar* and the *in vitro* effects against the isopod parasite, *Ceratothoa gaudichaudii*. *Aquaculture* 143:9-16.
- Simonsen, S., Moller, B.L. Larsen J. and Ravn, H., 1995. Hemolytic activity of *Alexandrium tamarense* cells. pp. 513-517. In P. Lassus, G. Arzul, E. Erard, P. Gentien, and C. Marcaillou [eds.]. Harmful Algal Blooms. Lavoisier Pub., Paris..
- Sinderman, C.J. 1990. Principle Diseases of Marine Fish and Shellfish. Vol. 1. Academic Press, New York. 521 pp.
- Sitjà-Bobadilla, A., and P. Alvarez-Pellitero. 1992. Effect of Fumagillin treatment on sea bass *Dicentrarchus labrax* parasitized by *Sphaerospora testicularis* (Myxosporaea: Bivalvulida). *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 14: 171-178.
- Smail, D.A. 1989. Skin warts of Atlantic salmon. *Aquacult. Info. Ser. No. 8*. Dept. Agricult. Fish. Scotland.
- Smail, D.A., D.W. Bruno, G. Dear, L. McFarlane, and K. Ross. 1992. Infectious pancreatic necrosis (IPN) virus Sp serotype in farmed Atlantic salmon post-smolts associated with mortality and clinical disease. *J. Fish Dis.* 15: 77-83.
- Smail, D.A., L. McFarlane, D.W. Bruno, and A.H. McVicar. 1995. The pathology of an IPN-sp sub-type in farmed Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L., post-smolts in the Shetland Isles, Scotland. *J. Fish. Dis.* 15: 77-83.
- Smith, P., M.P. Hiney and O.B. Samuelsen, 1994. Bacterial resistance to antimicrobial agents used in fish farming: a critical evaluation of method and meaning. *Ann. Rev. Fish Dis.* 4: 273-313.
- Smith, P.R., G.M. Brazil, E.M. Drinan, J. O'Kelly, R. Palmer, and A. Scallan. 1982. Lateral transmission of furunculosis in sea water. *Bull. Eur. Assoc. Fish Pathol.* 3: 41-42.
- Smith, P.R., C.N. Lannan, L.H. Garcés, M. Jarpa, J. Larenas, P. Caswell-Reno, M. Whipple, and J.L. Fryer. 1995. Piscirickettsiosis: a bacterin field trial in coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*). *Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol.* 15: 137-141.
- Smith, P.R., M. Moloney, A. McElligott, S. Clarke, R. Palmer, J. O'Kelly, and J. O'Brien. 1993. The efficacy of oral ivermectin in the control of sea lice infections of farmed Atlantic salmon. pp. 296-307. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Smothers, J.F., C.D. von Dohlen, L.H. Smith, Jr., and R.D. Spall. 1994. Molecular evidence that the myxozoan protists are metazoans. *Science* 265: 1719-1721
- Snieszko, S.F., and G.L. Bullock. 1976. Columnaris disease of fishes. *Fish Disease Leaflet* 45. U.S. Department of Interior, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, D.C.
- Sorensen, U.B.S., and J.L. Larsen. 1986. Serotyping of *Vibrio anguillarum*. *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 51: 593-597.
- Speare, D.J. 1997. Differences in patterns of meningoencephalitis due to bacterial kidney disease in farmed Atlantic and chinook salmon. *Res. Vet. Sci.* 62:79-80.
- Speare, D.J., G.J. Arsenault, and M.A. Buote. 1998a. Evaluation of rainbow trout as a model for the use in studies on pathogenesis of the branchial microsporidian *Loma salmonae*. *Compt. Top. Lab. Anim. Sci.* 37: 55-58.
- Speare, D.J., H.J. Beaman, S.R.M. Jones, R.J.F. Markham, and G.J. Arsenault. 1998b. Induced resistance in rainbow trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss* (Walbaum), to gill disease associated with the microsporidian gill parasite *Loma salmonae*. *J. Fish Dis.* 21: 93-100
- Speare, D.J., J. Brackett, and H.W. Ferguson. 1989. Sequential pathology of the gills of coho salmon with a combined diatom and microsporidian gill infection. *Can. Vet. J.* 30: 571-575.
- Speare, D.J., V.E. Ostland, and H.W. Ferguson. 1993. Pathology associated with meningoencephalitis during bacterial kidney disease of salmonids. *Res. Vet. Sci.* 54: 25-31.
- Specker, J.L., and C.B. Schreck. 1980. Stress responses to transportation and fitness for marine survival in coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) smolts. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 37: 765-769.
- St-Hilaire, S., C. Ribble, and M.L. Kent. 1998. Prevalence of *Kudoa thyrsites* in sexually mature and immature pen-reared Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) in British Columbia, Canada. *Aquaculture* 69-77.
- St-Hilaire, M. Hill, C.S. Ribble, D.J. Whitaker, and M.L. Kent. 1997a. A comparative study of muscle texture and intensity of *Kudoa thyrsites* in pen-reared Atlantic salmon. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 31: 221-225.
- St-Hilaire, S., C.S. Ribble, D.J. Whitaker, and M.L. Kent. 1997b. Evaluation of a nondestructive diagnostic test for *Kudoa thyrsites* in farmed Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). *Aquaculture* 156: 139-144.
- Staurnes, M., G. Andorsdottir, and A. Sundby. 1990. Distended, water-filled stomach in sea-farmed rainbow trout. *Aquaculture* 90: 333-343.
- Stephen, C., M.L. Kent, and S.C. Dawe. 1993. Hepatic megalocytosis in wild and farmed chinook salmon *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* in British Columbia. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 16: 35-39.
- Stephen, C., and C.S. Ribble. 1995a. An evaluation of surface moribund salmon as indicators of seapen disease status. *Aquaculture* 133: 1-8.
- Stephen, C., and C.S. Ribble. 1995b. The effects of changing demographics on the distribution of marine anemia in farmed salmon in British Columbia. *Can. Vet. J.* 36: 557-562.
- Stephen, C., and C.S. Ribble. 1996. Marine anemia in farmed chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*): Development of a working case definition. *Prev. Vet. Med.* 25: 259-269.
- Stephen, C., and C.S. Ribble. 1997. Mortality surveys as a tool for studying marine anemia in seapen reared salmon. *Aquacult. Res* 28: 265-269.
- Stephen, C., C.S. Ribble, and M.L. Kent. 1996. Descriptive epidemiology of marine anemia in seapen-reared salmon in southern British Columbia. *Can. Vet. J.* 37: 420-425.
- Stockner, E. 1989. Phytoplankton blooms in British Columbia, August to September 1989. *Red Tide Newsletter* 2(4): 4-6.
- Stoskopf, M.K. 1993. *Fish Medicine*. W.B. Saunders Co., Philadelphia. 882 pp.
- Streud, E., T.A. Mo, and T.T. Poppe. 1997a. Ultrastructure of *Spiroucleus barkhanus* n.sp. (Diplomodadida: Hexamitidae) from grayling *Thymallus thymallus* (L.) (Salmonidae) and Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* L. (Salmonidae). *J. Eurl. Microbiol.* 44: 399-407.
- Streud, E., T.A. Mo, and T.T. Poppe. 1997b. Systemic spiroucleosis in sea-farmed Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar*, caused by *Spiroucleus barkhanus* transmitted from feral Arctic char *Salvelinus alpinus*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 33: 63-66.
- Stuart, R. 1990. Sea Lice, A marine perspective. *Bull. Aquacult. Assoc. Can.* 90 (1) 18-24.
- Summerfelt, R.C., and M.C. Warner. (1970) Incidence and intensity of infection of *Plistophora ovariae*, a microsporidian parasite of golden shiner, *Notemigonus crysoleucas*. In: Snieszko SF (ed) A symposium on diseases of fishes and shellfishes, Spec Publ No 5. American Fisheries Society, Washington, p 142-160.
- Svendsen, Y.S. 1990. Hosts of third stage larvae of *Hysterothylacium* sp. (Nematoda: Anisakidae) in zooplankton from outer Oslofjord, Norway. *Sarsia* 75: 161-167.
- Tajima, K., Y. Ezura, and T. Kimura. 1985. Studies on the taxonomy and serology of causative organisms of fish vibriosis. *Fish Pathol.* 20: 131-142.
- Takahashi, K, N. Okamoto, A. Kumagai, M. Maita, Y. Ikeda, and J.S. Rohovec. 1992. Epizootics of erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome in coho salmon cultured in seawater in Japan. *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 4: 174-181.
- Tanaka, K., Muto, Y. and Shimada, M., 1994. Generation of superoxide radicals by the marine phytoplankton organism, *Chattonella antiqua*. *J. Plankton Res.* 16: 161-169.
- Tanaka, K., Yoshimatsu, S., and Shimada, M., 1992. Generation of superoxide anions by *Chattonella antiqua*: Possible causes for fish death caused by "Red Tide." *Experientia* 48: 888-890.
- Tangen, K. 1977. Blooms of *Gyrodinium aureolum* (Dinophyceae) in north European waters, accompanied by mortality in marine organism. *Sarsia* 63: 123-33.
- Tangen, K. 1979. Dinoflagellate blooms in Norwegian waters. pp. 179-182. In D.L. Taylor and H.H. Seliger [eds.]. Toxic Dinoflagellate Blooms. Elsevier, N.Y.

## References

- Tangen, K. 1983. Blooms of the dinoflagellate *Gyrodinium aureolum*. Fiskets Gang 68: 399-403 (1982), Can. Transl. Fish. Aquat. Sci. No. 4954, 15 pp.
- Taylor, F.J., N.J. Taylor, and J.R. Walsby. 1985. A bloom of planktonic diatom, *Cerataulina pelagica*, off the coast of Northeastern New Zealand in 1983, and its contribution to an associated mortality of fish and benthic fauna. Int. Revue ges. Hydrobiol. 70: 773-795.
- Taylor, F.J.R. 1993. Current problems with harmful phytoplankton blooms in British Columbia waters. pp. 699-703. In T.J. Smayda and Y. Shimizu [eds.]. Toxic Phytoplankton Blooms in the Sea. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Taylor, F.J.R., and R. Haigh. 1993. The ecology of fish-killing blooms of the chloromonad flagellate *Heterosigma* in the Strait of Georgia and adjacent waters. pp. 705-710. In T.J. Smayda and Y. Shimizu [eds.]. Toxic Phytoplankton Blooms in the Sea. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Taylor, F.J.R., and R.A. Horner. 1994. Red tides and other problems with harmful algal blooms in Pacific Northwest coastal waters. In R.C.H. Wilson, R.J. Beamish, F. Aitkens, and J. Bell [eds.]. Review of the Marine Environment and Biota of Strait of Georgia, Puget Sound and Juan de Fuca Strait: Proceedings of the B.C. Washington Symposium of the Marine Environment. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1948: 175-186.
- Taylor, F.J.R., R. Haigh, and T.F. Sutherland. 1994. Phytoplankton ecology of Sechart Inlet, a fjord system on the British Columbia coast. 2. Potentially harmful species. Mar. Ecol. Prog. Ser. 103: 151-164.
- Thomassen, J.M. 1993a. Hydrogen peroxide as a delousing agent for Atlantic salmon. pp. 290-295. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of wild and farmed fish: Sea lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Thomassen, J.M. 1993b. A new method for the control of salmon lice. pp. 233-236. In H. Reinersten, L.A. Dahle, L. Jorgensen, and K. Tvinnerheim [eds.]. Fish Farming Technology. Balkema, Rotterdam.
- Thorud, K., and H.O. Djupvik. 1988. Infectious anaemia in Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.). Bull. Eur. Ass. Fish Pathol. 8: 109-111.
- Tojo, J.L., and M.T. Santamarina. 1998. Oral pharmacological treatments for parasitic diseases of rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss*. I: *Hexamita salmonis*. Dis. Aquat. Org. 33: 51-56.
- Toranzo, A.E., and F.M. Hetrick. 1982. Comparative stability of two salmonid viruses and poliovirus in fresh, estuarine and marine waters. J. Fish. Dis. 5: 223-231.
- Totland, G.K., B.K. Hjeltnes, and P.R. Flood. 1996. Transmission of infectious salmon anaemia (ISA) through natural secretions and excretions from infected smolts of Atlantic salmon *Salmo salar* during their presymptomatic phase. Dis. Aquat. Org. 26: 25-31.
- Traxler, G.S. 1986. An epizootic of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in 2-yr-old kokanee, (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) (Walbaum) at Lake Cowichan, British Columbia. J. Fish. Dis. 9: 545-549.
- Traxler, G.S. 1988. IHN mortality of kokanee in Cameron Lake, British Columbia. Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter 16(1): 4.
- Traxler, G.S. 1998. Infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus: Life history and occurrences in British Columbia. Proceedings of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus workshop, Campbell River, British Columbia. Aquaculture Industry Development Report 94-01. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food, Victoria, B.C. pp. 1-9.
- Traxler, G.S., and T.P.T. Evelyn. 1991. Lack of pathogenicity of a birnavirus isolated from Atlantic salmon in British Columbia. Aquaculture Update 54. Dept. Fish. Oceans. Pacific Biological Station. Nanaimo, B.C.
- Traxler, G.S., and J. Richard. 1996. First detection of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in marine fishes. Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter 24(3): 7.
- Traxler, G.S., and J.B. Rankin. 1989. An infectious hematopoietic necrosis epizootic in sockeye salmon *Oncorhynchus nerka* in Weaver Creek spawning channel, Fraser River system, B.C., Canada. Dis. Aquat. Org. 6: 221-226.
- Traxler, G.S., and J.R. Roome. 1993. Isolation of IHN from adult sockeye *Oncorhynchus nerka* in sea water. Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter. 21(2): 3.
- Traxler, G.S., J. R. Roome and M.L. Kent. 1991b. Transmission of IHN virus to sockeye (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) and Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*) in sea water. Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter 19(2): 1-2.
- Traxler, G.S., J.R. Roome, and M.L. Kent. 1993. Transmission of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in sea water. Dis. Aquat. Org. 16: 111-114.
- Traxler, G.S., J.R. Roome, and T.P.T. Evelyn. 1991a. Susceptibility of Atlantic salmon to erythrocytic necrosis virus (ENV). Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter 19(1): 2.
- Traxler, G.S., J.R. Roome, K.A. Lauda, and S. LaPatra. 1996. The appearance of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus (IHN) and neutralizing antibodies in sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) during their migration and maturation period. Dis. Aquat. Org. 28: 31-38.
- Treasurer, J.W. 1993. Management of sea lice (Caligidae) with wrasse (Labridae) on Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar* L.) farms. pp. 335-345. In G.A. Boxshall and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of wild and farmed fish: Sea lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Tsuyuki, H., S.N. Willisroft, Z. Kabata, and D.J. Whitaker. 1982. The relationship between acid and neutral protease activities and the incidence of soft cooked texture in the muscle tissue of Pacific hake *Merluccius productus* infected with *Kudoa paniformis* and/or *K. thyrstites*, and held for varying times under different pre-freeze chilled storage conditions. Can. Tech. Rep. Fish. Aquat. Sci. 1130. 39 p.
- Tully, O. 1989. The succession of generations and growth of the caligid copepods *Caligus elongatus* and *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* parasitizing farmed Atlantic salmon smolts (*Salmo salar* L.). J. Mar. Biol. Ass. U.K. 69: 279-287.
- Tully, O., and K.F. Whelan. 1993. Production of nauplii of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Krryer) (Copepoda: Caligidae) from farmed and wild salmon and its relation to the infestation of wild sea trout (*Salmo trutta* L.) off the west coast of Ireland in 1991. Fis. Res. 17: 187-200.
- Tully, O., P. Daly, S. Lysaght, S. Deady, and S.J.A. Varian. 1996. Use of cleaner-wrasse (*Ctenolabrus exoletus* (L.) and *Ctenolabrus rupestris* (L.)) to control infestation of *Caligus elongatus* Nordmann on farmed Atlantic salmon. Aquaculture 142: 11-24.
- Tully, O., W.R. Poole, K.F. Whelan, and S. Merigoux. 1993. Parameters and possible causes of epizootics of *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* (Krryer) infesting sea trout (*Salmo trutta* L.) off the west coast of Ireland. pp. 202-213. In G.A. Boxshall, and D. DeFaye [eds.]. Pathogens of Wild and Farmed Fish: Sea Lice. Ellis Horwood, Chichester, England.
- Turnbull, J.F., R.H. Richards, and M.F. Tatner. 1989. Evidence that superficial branchial colonies on the gills of *Salmo salar* L. are not *Aeromonas salmonicida*. J. Fish Dis. 12: 449-458.
- Underdal, B., O.M. Skulberg, E. Dahl, and T. Aune. 1989. Disastrous bloom of *Chrysochromulina polylepis* (Prymnesiophyceae) in Norwegian coastal waters 1988 - mortality in marine biota. Ambio 18:265-270.
- Urawa, S., and M. Kusakari. 1990. The survivability of the ectoparasitic flagellate *Ichthyobodo necator* on chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*) in sea water and comparison to *Ichthyobodo* sp. on Japanese flounder (*Paralichthys olivaceus*). J. Parasitol. 76: 33-40.
- Urawa, S., and T. Kato. 1991. Heavy infections of *Caligus orientalis* (Copepoda: Caligidae) on caged rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss* in brackish water. Gyobyo Kenkyu 26: 161-162.
- Van Dujin, C. 1956. Diseases of fishes. Illife Books, London. 371 p.
- Vaney C, Conte A (1901) Sur une nouvelle microsporidie, *Pleistophora mirandellae*, parasite de l'ovaire d'*Alburnus mirandella* Blanch. CR Acad Sci 133:644-646
- Vismanis, K.O., A.V. Lullu, V.A. Iygis, A.M. Turovskii, and A.I. Yun. 1984. Diseases of Salmonidae in the marine fish farms on the Baltic coast and their prevention. pp. 56-63. [In Russian.]. In O.N. Bauer, V.A. Musselius, and E.S. Skryabina [eds.]. Biologicheskoe osnovy rybovodstva: parazitizy i boleznny ryb. "Nauka", Moscow, Russia.
- Wakabayashi, H., M. Hikida, and K. Masumura. 1984. *Flexibacter* infection in cultured marine fish in Japan. Helgol. Meeresunters. 38: 1-8.
- Wakabayashi, H., M. Hikida, and K. Masumura. 1986. *Flexibacter maritimus* sp. nov., a pathogen of marine fishes. Int. J. Sys. Bacteriol. 36: 396-398.
- Wales, J.H. 1967. Degeneration and regeneration of liver parenchyma accompanying hepatomagenesis. pp. 56-59. In J.E. Halver and I.A. Mitchell, I.A. [eds.]. Trout hepatoma research conference papers. Research report 70. Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife, Washington, D.C.
- Wales, J.H., and H. Wolf. 1955. Three protozoan diseases of trout in California. Calif. Fish Game 41: 183-187.
- Walker, R., and S.W. Sherburne. 1977. Piscine erythrocytic necrosis virus in Atlantic cod *Gadus morhua* and other fish: ultrastructure and distribution. J. Fish. Res. Board Can. 34: 1188-1195.

- Waltman, W.D., and E.B. Shotts. 1984. A medium for the isolation and differentiation of *Yersinia ruckeri*. *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 41: 804-806.
- Wards, B.J., H.H. Patel, C.D. Anderson, and G.W. de Lisle. 1991. Characterisation by restriction endonuclease analysis and plasmid profiling of *Vibrio ordalii* strains from salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* and *Oncorhynchus nerka* with vibriosis in New Zealand.
- Wedderburn, N. 1970. Effect of concurrent malarial infection on development of virus-induced lymphoma in BALB/C mice. *Lancet* 2: 114-116.
- Wedemeyer, G.A., N.C. Nelson, and C.A. Smith. 1978. Survival of the salmonid viruses infectious hematopoietic necrosis (IHN) and infectious pancreatic necrosis (IPNV) in ozonated, chlorinated, and untreated waters. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 35: 875-879.
- Wheatley, S.B. 1994. Epidemiological investigations of Atlantic salmon production using a computerised database system. PhD Thesis. Queens University, Belfast, Northern Ireland.
- Whitaker, D.J., and M.L. Kent. 1991. *Kudoa thyrssites* (Myxosporea); a cause of soft flesh in farm-reared Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*). *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 3: 291-294.
- Whitaker, D.J., and M.L. Kent. 1992. *Kudoa thyrssites* (Myxosporea) and soft flesh in pen-reared coho salmon. *Fish Health Section/Am. Fish. Soc. Newsletter* 20(1): 4-5.
- Whitaker, D.J., M.L. Kent, L. Margolis. 1994. Myxosporean parasites and their potential impact on the aquaculture industry, with emphasis on *Kudoa* species. In: Conley, D.C. (ed.) *Kudoa* workshop proceedings. 17 and 18 February 1994, Nanaimo, B.C. Aquaculture Industry Development Report 94-01. Province of British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture, Fisheries and Food, Victoria, B.C. pp. 2-7.
- White, A.W. 1988. Blooms of toxic algae worldwide: their effects on fish farming and shellfish resources, p. 9-14. In: AQUA NOR 87 Trondheim Internat. Conf., Norske Fiskeoppdretternes Forening-Fiskeoppdretternes Salgslag A/L, Trondheim, Norway.
- Wilcock, B.P., and T.W. Dukes. 1987. The eye. In Ferguson, H.W. (ed.). *Systemic pathology of fish*. Iowa State University Press, Ames, Iowa. p. 168-194.
- Williams, D.E., S.C. Dawe, M.L. Kent, R.J. Andersen, M. Craig, and C.F.B. Holmes. 1998. Evidence for a covalently bound form of microcystin-LR in salmon liver and Dungeness crab larvae. *Chem. Res. Toxicol.* (in press).
- Williams, H., and A. Jones. 1994. *Parasitic worms of fish*. Taylor and Francis Ltd., London, U.K. 593 pp.
- Williams, I.V., and D.F. Amend. 1976. A natural epizootic of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in fry of sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) at Chilko Lake, British Columbia. *J. Fish. Res. Board Can.* 33: 1564-1567.
- Wilson, C.B. 1905. North American parasitic copepods belonging to the family Caligidae. *Proc. U.S. Nat. Mus.* 28: 479-672.
- Winton, J.R. 1991. Recent advances in detection and control of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in aquaculture. *Ann. Rev. Fish Dis.* 1: 83-93.
- Winton, J.R. 1997. Immunization with viral antigens: Infectious hematopoietic necrosis. In: Gudding, R., Lillehaug, A., Midtlyng, P.J., Brown, F. (eds.). *Fish Vaccinology*. *Devl. Biol. Stand.* Vol 90. Basel, Karger: 211-220.
- Winton, J.R., C.K. Arakawa, C.N. Lannan, and J.L. Fryer. 1988. Neutralizing monoclonal antibodies recognize antigenic variants among isolates of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 4: 199-204.
- Wishkovsky, A., J.M. Groff, D.J. Lauren, R.J. Toth, and R.P. Hedrick. 1990. Efficacy of fumagillin against proliferative kidney disease and its toxic side effects in rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) fingerlings. *Fish Pathol.* 25: 141-147.
- Wolf, K. 1988a. *Fish viruses and fish viral diseases*. Cornell University Press Ithaca, New York. 476 pp.
- Wolf, K. 1988b. Infectious hematopoietic necrosis. In: *Fish viruses and fish viral diseases*. Cornell University Press, Ithaca, pp. 83-114.
- Wolf, K., and C.E. Dunbar. 1959. Test of 34 therapeutic agents for the control of kidney disease in trout. *Trans. Am. Fish. Soc.* 88: 117-134.
- Wolf, K., M.C. Quimby, and A.D. Bradford. 1963. Egg-associated transmission of IPN virus of trouts. *Virology* 21: 317-321.
- Wolf, K., M.E. Markiw, and J.K. Hiltunen. 1986. Salmonid whirling disease: *Tubifex tubifex* (Muller) identified as the essential oligochaete in the protozoan life cycle. *J. Fish Dis.* 9: 83-85.
- Wolke, R.E. 1975. Pathology of bacterial and fungal diseases affecting fish. pp. 33-116. In R.E. Ribelin and G. Migaki [eds.]. *Pathology of Fishes*. The University of Wisconsin Press, Madison, WS.
- Wongtavatchai, J., P.A. Conrad, and R.P. Hedrick. 1995a. In vitro characteristics of the microsporidian: *Enterocytozoon salmonis*. *J. Euk. Microbiol.* 42: 401-405.
- Wongtavatchai, J., P.A. Conrad, and R.P. Hedrick. 1995b. Effect of the microsporidian *Enterocytozoon salmonis* on the immune response of chinook salmon. *Vet. Immunol. Immunopathol.* 48: 367-374.
- Woo, P.T.K. 1969. The hematocrit centrifuge for the detection of trypanosomes in blood. *Can. J. Zool.* 47: 921-923.
- Woo, P.T.K., and S.L. Poynton. 1995. Diplomonadida, Kinetoplastida and Amoebozoa (phylum Sarcostomastigophora). pp. 27-96. In P.T.K. Woo [ed.]. *Fish Diseases and Disorders Vol. 1: Protozoan and Metazoan Infections*. CAB Intl. Wallingford, England.
- Wood, J. 1974. *Diseases of Pacific salmon; their prevention and treatment*. Washington State Dept. Fish, Olympia, Washington. 82 pp.
- Wooten, R., J.W. Smith, and E.A. Needham. 1982. Aspects of the biology of the parasitic copepods *Lepeophtheirus salmonis* and *Caligus elongatus* on farmed salmonids, and their treatment. *Proc. Royal Soc. Edinburgh, Section B (Biol.)* 81: 185-197.
- Yamamoto, T., W.N. Batts, C.K. Arakawa, and J.R. Winton. 1990. Multiplication of infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus in rainbow trout following immersion infection: whole-body assay and immunohistochemistry. *J. Aquat. Anim. Health* 2: 271-280.
- Yang, C.Z., and L.J. Albright. 1992. Effects of the harmful diatom *Chaetoceros concavicornis* on respiration of rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 14: 105-114.
- Yang, C.Z., and L.J. Albright. 1994a. Anti-phytoplankton therapy of finfish: The mucolytic agent L-cysteine ethyl ester protects coho salmon *Oncorhynchus kisutch* against the harmful phytoplankton *Chaetoceros concavicornis*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 20: 197-202.
- Yang, C.Z., and L.J. Albright. 1994b. The harmful phytoplankton *Chaetoceros concavicornis* causes high mortalities and leucopenia in chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) and coho salmon (*O. kisutch*). *Can. J. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 51: 2493-2500.
- Yang, C.Z., L.J. Albright, and A.N. Yousif. 1995. Oxygen-radical-mediated effects of the toxic phytoplankton *Heterosigma carterae* on juvenile rainbow trout *Oncorhynchus mykiss*. *Dis. Aquat. Org.* 23: 101-108.
- Yasumoto, T., B. Underdal, T. Aune, V. Hormazabal, O.M. Skulberg, and Y. Oshima. 1989. Screening for hemolytic and ichthyotoxic components of *Chrysochromulina polylepis* and *Gyrodinium aureolum* from Norwegian coastal waters. pp. 436-440. In E. Graneli, B. Sundstroem, L. Edler, and D.M. Anderson [eds.]. *Toxic Marine Phytoplankton*. Elsevier Sci. Pub., N.Y.
- Yasutake, W.T. 1970. Comparative histopathology of epizootic salmonid virus diseases. pp. 341-350. In S.F. Snieszko [ed.]. *A Symposium on Diseases of Fishes and Shellfishes*. Am. Fish. Soc. Spec. Publ. No. 5., Washington, D.C.
- Yasutake, W.T. 1978. Histopathology of yearling sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) infected with infectious hematopoietic necrosis (IHN). *Fish. Pathol.* 14: 59-64.
- Yasutake, W.T. 1987. Standardization of stain used for diagnosing erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome (EIBS). *Am. Fish. Soc./ Fish Health Newsletter*. 15(2): 7.
- Yasutake, W.T., D.R. Buhler, and W.E. Shanks. 1961. Chemotherapy of hexamitiasis in Fish. *J. Parasitol.* 47: 81-86.
- Yokoyama, H., K. Ogawa, and H. Wakabayashi. 1990. Chemotherapy with fumagillin and toltrazuril against kidney enlargement disease of goldfish caused by the myxosporean *Hoferellus carassii*. *Fish Pathol.* 25: 157-164.
- Yokoyama, H., K. Ogawa, and H. Wakabayashi. 1991. A new collection method of actionosporeans - a probable infective stage of myxosporeans to fishes - from tubificids and experimental infection of goldfish with the actinosporean, *Raabeia* sp. *Gyobyo Kenkyu [Fish Pathol.]* 26: 133-138.
- Yoshimizu, M., H. Fukuda, T. Sano, and T. Kimura. 1995. Salmonid herpesvirus 2. Epizootiology and serological relationship. *Vet. Res.* 26: 486-492.
- Yoshimizu, M., S. Direkbusarakom, Y. Ezura, and T. Kimura. 1993. Monoclonal antibodies against *Aeromonas salmonicida* for serological diagnosis of furunculosis. *Jap. Soc. Fish.* 59: 333-338.

# INDEX OF DISEASES AND PATHOGENS

## A

Acanthocephala 79  
*Aeromonas salmonicida* 14, 17, 27, 28, 34, 83  
*Alexandrium* 91  
    *A. tamarense* 93, 97  
amoebae 52  
*Amphidinium* 91  
*Amphora* 91  
*Anabaena* 91  
Anisakidae 76  
*Anisakis* sp. 76  
Aphanizomenon 91  
*Argulus* 90  
    *A. pugettensis* 90  
    *Argulus* sp. 90

## B

bacterial kidney disease 1, 7, 14, 15, 17, 23  
BKD 17, 22, 23, 27, 32, 34, 42, 104, 106, 110  
black grub 73, 74  
bloat 105  
Branchiura 90

## C

Caligidae 80  
*Caligus* 14, 32, 84, 86  
    *C. clemensi* 85  
    *C. elongatus* 85  
    *C. clemensi* 80  
    *C. curtus* 80  
    *C. elongatus* 80  
    *C. orientalis* 80  
    *Caligus* sp. 80  
    *C. teres* 80  
*Ceratomyxa shasta* 22, 56  
*Ceratomyxa gaudichaudii* 32, 88  
cestodes 68, 70, 76  
*Chaetoceros* 91, 95, 96  
    *C. concavicornis* 93, 95  
    *C. convolutus* 93  
    *C. wighamii* 93  
*Chattonella* 91, 93  
    *C. antiqua* 93  
chloromonads 91  
*Chloromyxum truttae* 49, 56, 61  
Choanozoa 46, 93, 102  
*Chrysochromulina* 91, 93, 96  
    *C. leadbeateri* 93, 96  
    *C. polylepis* 96  
cold-water vibriosis 17, 23, 26  
*Contraecum* 77  
    *C. osculatum* 77

copepod 2, 46, 47, 48, 68, 69, 77, 80, 82, 83, 84, 87, 88  
*Corethron* spp. 93, 95  
*Costia* see *Ichthyobodo*  
*Cryptobia* 49, 55  
Cryptobiosis 55  
*Cryptocotyle lingua* 72  
cyanobacteria 91  
*Cytophaga* 7, 17, 29, 30  
    *C. psychrophila* 29

## D

*Dermocystidium salmonis* 46  
diatoms 91, 93, 95, 96, 97  
*Dictyocha* 91, 93, 97  
Didymozoidae 72  
Digenetic trematodes 72, 75, 76  
dinoflagellates 91  
*Diphyllobothrium* spp. 104  
diplomonad flagellate 52  
Diplostomatidae 73  
diplostomosis 75  
*Diplostomum* 72 - 75  
    *Diplostomum* spp. 72, 74  
    *D. spathaceum* 75  
*Distephanus speculum* 93

## E

*Echinorhynchus gadi* 79  
EIBS 36, 44  
Enterocytozooidae 106  
*Enterocytozoon bienersi* 106  
epidermal papillomas 113  
epitheliocystis 34  
Ergasilidae 80, 87  
*Ergasilus labracis* 87  
erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome 36, 44  
*Eubothrium* 69  
    *E. crassum* 69  
    *E. salvelini* 69  
*Exophiala* 46, 48  
    *E. pisciphila* 48  
    *E. psychrophila* 48  
    *E. salmonis* 48

## F

*Fibrocapsa* 91  
Flabellifera 89  
flagellate X 93  
*Flavobacterium* 29, 101  
    *F. columnare* 29  
    *F. psychrophilum* 101

*Flexibacter* 7, 17, 29, 30  
flukes 72  
furunculosis 1, 14, 15, 17, 25-28, 34, 83, 84, 86, 102

## G

*Gambierdiscus* 91  
*Gilquinia squali* 1, 68-70  
glochidia 79  
*Gnathia* sp. 88  
gnathiform 89  
Gnathiformes 88  
*Gonyaulax* 93  
    *G. tamarensis* 93  
    *G. excavatum* 93  
*Gymnodinium* 91  
    *G. mikimotoi* 93  
*Gyrodactyloides bychowskii* 76  
*Gyrodinium* 91, 93, 97  
    *G. aureolum* 93

## H

*Haemobaphes disphaerocephalus* 2, 88  
hemorrhagic kidney disease 42  
*Henneguya* 59  
hepatocellular carcinoma 112  
*Heterosigma* 91, 93, 94  
    *H. carterae* 93  
*Hexamita salmonis* 49, 52  
Hexamitidae 52  
hitra disease 17, 23, 25  
HKD 42  
hypoplastic septum transversum 100  
*Hysterothylacium aduncum* 76

## I

*Ichthyobodo* 49, 53, 54, 55  
    *I. necator* 53  
*Ichthyophonus* 22, 46  
infectious hematopoietic necrosis 2, 15, 36-40  
infectious pancreatic necrosis 15, 36, 38  
infectious salmon anemia 36, 40-42, 83

## K

*Kudoa thyrsites* 49, 56, 59

**L**

*Loma* 2, 49, 63, 64, 67, 81, 85  
*L. embiotocia* 63  
*L. salmonae* 2, 49, 63, 64, 67,  
*Laminiscus strelkowi* 75  
 leech 55  
 leiomyosarcomas 112  
*Lepeophtheirus* 14, 80, 84  
*L. cuneifer* 80  
*L. salmonis* 80, 81, 85  
*Leptocylindrus* 91, 96  
*L. minimus* 96  
 lordosis 100  
 lymphoma 110  
 lymphosarcoma 110

**M**

marine anemia 36, 106  
 metacercariae 73, 74  
*Microcystis* 91  
*Microsporidium cerebralis* 49, 63, 67  
 monogenean flatworms 75  
 mouthrot 15  
 mystery disease 42  
*Mytilus edulis* 79  
*Myxidium* 59  
 myxobacteria 30, 31  
 myxobacteriosis 17, 29  
*Myxobolus* 49, 56, 60, 101  
*M. aeglefini* 49, 56, 60  
*M. cerebralis* 56, 60, 101

**N**

neascus 72, 73, 74  
 netpen liver disease 104  
*Nitzschia* 91  
 NLD 104  
*Nosema apis* 57  
*Nucleospora salmonis* 2, 32, 49, 65, 67, 106

**O**

orthomyxovirus 41

**P**

*Paramoeba pemaquidensis* 49, 51  
 paramoebiasis 52  
*Parvicapsula* 49, 56, 58  
*P. minibicornis* 58  
 Pennellidae 80, 88  
 peritonitis, post-vaccination 102

*Pfiesteria* 91

*Philonema agubernaculum* 76  
*Piscicola salmositica* 55  
*Piscirickettsia salmonis* 17, 31, 32  
 piscirickettsiosis 17, 31, 32  
 PKX myxosporean 56  
 plasmacytoid leukemia 36, 65, 106, 110  
*Pleistophora anguillarum* 57  
*Pomphorhynchus laevis* 79  
 praniza 88, 89  
*Procentrum micans* 97  
*Protogonyaulax tamarensis* 93  
 prymnesiomonads 91  
*Prymnesium* 93, 97  
*P. calathiferum* 93  
*P. parvum* 93, 97  
*Pyrodinium* 91

**R**

*Renibacterium salmoninarum* 2, 14, 17, 23,  
 32, 106  
 retrovirus 106, 111  
*Rocinela*  
*R. belliceps pugettensis* 88  
*R. maculata* 88  
 rosette agent 2, 46

**S**

salmon pancreas disease 36, 39, 40  
 salmonid herpesvirus 2 36, 45  
 salmonid rickettsial septicemia 17, 31, 34  
 Sanguinicolidae 72  
 scoliosis 100  
 sea lice 14, 80, 82, 83, 84, 85, 86, 87, 88  
 silicoflagellates 91  
 situs inversus 100  
*Skeletonema* 91, 97  
*Spirocnucleus barkhanus* 49, 52  
*Sporocystophaga* 29  
*Stephanostomum tenue* 72, 75  
 swimbladder sarcoma 112  
 systemic mycosis 48

**T**

tapeworms 68  
*Thalassiosira* 91, 97  
 toga-like virus 40  
*Trichodina* 49, 55

**V**

*Vibrio* 7, 14, 16, 17, 23, 24, 26, 30, 40, 58  
*V. anguillarum* 17, 23, 24, 57  
*V. ordalii* 17, 23, 24  
*V. salmonicida* 17, 23, 25  
*V. wodanis* 26  
*V. vulnificus* 26  
 vibriosis 14, 15, 16, 17, 23, 24, 25, 26, 28,  
 84, 86, 95  
 viral erythrocytic necrosis 42, 44  
 vitamin E - selenium deficiency 40

**W**

water belly 105

**Y**

*Yersinia ruckeri* 17, 28, 29  
 yersiniosis 17, 28, 29, 46





Dr. Michael Kent is the Head of the Fish Health, Parasitology and Genetics Section at the Pacific Biological Station in Nanaimo, British Columbia. His primary area of research is on the diseases of netpen reared salmonids, and over the past 10 years he has described many new diseases in salmonids reared in this important form of aquaculture. He is the author of over 100 primary publications on fish diseases.



Dr. Trygve Poppe was born in Oslo, Norway in 1949 and graduated from the Norwegian College of Veterinary Medicine in Oslo in 1976. After some years in large animal practice he started as a fish pathologist at the National Veterinary Institute in 1981. Since 1990, Dr. Poppe has been assistant professor at the Norwegian College of Veterinary Medicine with special responsibility for the fish health programme. He obtained his Dr. Scient. in 1986 with a thesis on cold-water vibriosis. Dr. Poppe is author of more than 50 publications on fish diseases and has edited and co-authored several books on fish diseases and fish histopathology.